

Introduction to Supply Chain Management

Edited by Dr. Iana Shaheen, PhD



ISBN 978-1-937249-11-1
ISBN 978-1-937249-12-8
ISBN 978-1-937249-13-5
ISBN 978-1-937249-14-2
ISBN 978-1-937249-15-9
ISBN 978-1-937249-16-6
ISBN 978-1-937249-17-3
ISBN 978-1-937249-18-0

University of Arkansas Edition

 UNIVERSITY OF
ARKANSAS

Introduction to Supply Chain Management

INTRODUCTION TO SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

ELIAS (LEE) KIRCHE; PIYUSH SHAH; AND IANA SHAHEEN

University of Arkansas Libraries
Fayetteville, Arkansas



Introduction to Supply Chain Management Copyright © 2025 by Iana Shabeen is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/), except where otherwise noted.

This textbook is a remixed, revised version of [Supply Chain Management – An Integrated Approach](#) by Piyush Shah; licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/), except where otherwise noted.

CONTENTS

Supply Chain Management - An Integrated Approach. Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	xvii
---	------

Part I. Chapter 1: Introduction to Supply Chain Management

1.1 Introduction Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	19
1.2 Entity View of Supply Chains Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	22
1.3 Supply Chain Management Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	24
1.4 Supply Chain Flows Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	27
1.5 Functional View of Supply Chain Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	29
1.6 Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) Model Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	33
1.7 Chapter 1 Assessment Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	38

Part II. Chapter 2: Logistics Management

2.1 Introduction	43
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2.2 Logistics Strategy	45
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2.3 Transportation Modes	49
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2.4 International Logistics	57
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2.5 Types of Warehousing	60
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2.6 Warehousing Process	65
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2.7 Chapter 2 Assessment	67
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	

Part III. Chapter 3: Supply Chain Planning

3.1 Introduction	71
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.2 Demand Forecasting Process	73
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

3.3 Qualitative Methods	79
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.4 Quantitative Methods	81
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.5 Methods of Forecasting Accuracy	88
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.6 Product Life Cycle View of Forecasting	91
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.7 Forecasting in the Supply Chain	92
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.8 Special Topics in Forecasting	96
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.9 Conclusion	99
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.10 Chapter 3 Assessment	100
Iana Shaheen	

Part IV. Chapter 4: Sourcing and Purchasing

4.1 Introduction	105
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

4.2 Purchase to Pay	107
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.3 Digitization of Procurement	116
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.4 Supplier Development	120
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.5 Procuring Services in Supply Chain Management	123
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.6 What to Buy? (Outsourcing Decisions)	127
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.7 How to Buy: Category Management and Kraljic's Matrix	131
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.8 Conclusion	135
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4.9 Chapter 4 Assessment	137
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	

Part V. Chapter 5: Making - Process Design

5.1 Introduction	141
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

5.2 Understanding "Process"	144
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5.3 Process Maps	148
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5.4 Measuring the Performance of a Process	151
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5.5 Process Analysis Example	153
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5.6 Product-Process Matrix	159
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5.7 Conclusion	163
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5.8 Chapter 5 Assessment	164
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	
 <u>Part VI. Chapter 6: System Thinking and Data Management</u>	
6.1 Why Inventory Management?	169
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6.2 Fundamentals of Inventory: Definition, Types, Purpose, and Costs	171
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

6.3 Economic Order Quantity (EOQ)	176
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6.4 Systems of How Much to Order and When to Order	182
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6.5 Special Topics in Inventory Management	191
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6.6 Traditional AI, Machine Learning, and Generative AI in Supply Chains	198
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6.7 Conclusion	207
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6.8 Chapter 6 Assessment	209
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	

Part VII. Chapter 7: Supply Chain Strategy

7.1 Introduction to Supply Chain Strategy	213
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
7.2 Designing Supply Chain Strategies	220
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
7.3 Models in Supply Chain Strategy	226
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

7.4 Supply Chain Strategy Review	229
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
7.5 Global Supply Chain Strategies	233
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
7.6 Conclusion	236
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
7.7 Chapter 7 Assessment	237
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	
Part VIII. <u>Chapter 8: Sustainable Supply Chains</u>	
8.1 Introduction to Sustainable Supply Chains	243
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
8.2 Sustainability Metrics	248
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
8.3 Supply Chain Practices	252
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
8.4 Government and NGO Influence on Supply Chain Sustainability	256
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
8.5 Special Topics in Sustainable Supply Chain Management	262
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

8.6 Chapter 8 Assessment	266
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	

Part IX. Chapter 9: Risk Management and Resilience

9.1 Introduction	271
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
9.2 The Concept of Risk	273
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
9.3 Balancing the Cost of Risk and the Cost of Managing Risk	277
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
9.4 Risk Management Process	281
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
9.5 Chapter 9 Assessment	289
Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen	
11.1 Introduction	291
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
Course Introduction & Overview	293
11.2 The Five Focusing Steps	294
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
What is Supply Chain Management?	296

11.3 The Drum-Buffer-Rope Method	297
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
Logistics Basics/Overview of Logistics	299
Dr. Kiranjot Kaur and Iuliia Kau	
11.4 Throughput Accounting	302
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
Planning & Forecasting	304
Sourcing & Procurement	305
Angela Reid-Regier and Bryan Snage	
11.5 Chapter 11 Assessment	317
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
Supply Chain Operations: Making	318
7.1 Introduction	319
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
1. Recap/Make Up & Exam Week	322
7.4 Where to Buy From: Evaluating Supply Location Strategy	323
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
2. Distribution	326
7.5 Conclusion	327
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
12.1 Introduction	328
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3. Technology & Data Management	330

12.2 Philosophy	331
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
4. Sustainable Supply Chain Management	335
12.3 Lean Techniques	340
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
5. Supply Chain Strategy	343
12.4 Seven Quality Tools	344
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
6. Supply Chain Coordination and Globalization	351
12.5 Lean Implications	354
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
7. Humanitarian and Disaster Relief Supply Chains	357
12.6 Conclusion	358
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
12.7 Chapter 12 Assessment	359
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
15.1 Introduction	361
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
15.2 Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP)	364
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
15.3 Identification Technologies	369
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	

15.5 Chapter 15 Assessment	372
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.1 Introduction to Quality	374
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.2 Dimensions of Quality	376
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.3 Cost of Quality	378
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.4 Quality Management Systems	381
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.5 Quality Assurance and Quality Control in SCM	383
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.6 Quality Management Principles	385
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.7 Quality Tools and Techniques in Supply Chain	387
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.8 Supplier Quality Management	401
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
3.6 Chapter 3 Assessment	403
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche	
Appendix	405

SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT - AN INTEGRATED APPROACH.

Welcome to “**Supply Chain Management – An Integrated Approach**,” a textbook that has been crafted in response to the critical role supply chain management plays in today’s world, a role that has been dramatically highlighted by the shortages and other problems during the pandemic. These challenges have revealed just how exciting and dynamic the field of supply chain management is. The ability to effectively manage supply chains can be the difference between success and failure in our interconnected global economy.

A crucial lesson from the pandemic is the realization that supply chain management is not just for logistics experts. Everyone in an organization, from marketing professionals to HR personnel and even top management, needs to understand the principles of supply chain management. This understanding is key to ensuring resilience and efficiency in operations, especially in times of crisis. Our textbook is written with this perspective in mind. While it won’t make you a supply chain expert, it aims to help you appreciate the importance of supply chains and apply its principles to excel in your role, regardless of the industry.

Our textbook’s chapter sequence logically progresses from foundational concepts to detailed operational strategies in supply chain management. It begins with an introduction to supply chain fundamentals, followed by strategic planning to align supply chain operations with business goals. Quality management and sustainable practices are discussed early to establish their importance across all supply chain activities. The focus then shifts to tactical aspects like risk management, purchasing, and strategic sourcing, setting the stage for effective supply chain execution. This is followed by inventory management and demand forecasting, which are crucial for operational efficiency. The book concludes with logistics management, covering transportation and warehousing, illustrating the practical application of earlier strategies and highlighting the importance of execution in successful supply chain management.

To facilitate this learning, we have used simple language, minimized jargon, and included real-life examples in all chapters. We have also provided links to online articles and YouTube videos to complement the text and offer broader insights. We urge you to use these resources diligently to succeed in this course. While we have strived to keep the material straightforward, supply chain management encompasses a variety of topics and can be overwhelming. Regular reading and engagement with the supplemental materials, coupled with imagining how you can apply what you learn in your future job roles, will foster true understanding and practical application in your profession.

Before diving into the academic content, we want to express our heartfelt thanks to Kathryn Griffiths. Her invaluable contribution in transforming the raw manuscript into this engaging and educational text cannot be overstated. Her work on the layout, images, and supplementary materials has been pivotal in bringing this book to life.

We hope you enjoy reading this book and find it enlightening. If you have any doubts, concerns, or suggestions, please feel free to talk to your instructor or email us. We are eager to learn from you and continually improve this resource for future learners. Let's embark on this exciting journey of understanding and applying the principles of supply chain management.

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the wake of the COVID-19 pandemic, the importance of robust supply chain management has been brought into sharp focus. Companies with well-managed supply chains were able to adapt and respond to the crisis more effectively, ensuring business continuity and even gaining a competitive advantage. The global nature of modern supply chains, with interconnected networks spanning multiple countries and continents, adds another layer of complexity but also presents opportunities for businesses to source materials, manufacture goods, and reach customers in different parts of the world. Furthermore, effective supply chain management can be a powerful tool for organizations to achieve their strategic objectives, whether it's expanding into new markets, improving customer service, reducing costs, or enhancing sustainability.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=169#oembed-1>

Consider the case of Kellogg's, a global food manufacturing company. When the pandemic hit, the company experienced a surge in demand for its products as consumers stocked up on non-perishable food items. Thanks to its strong supply chain practices, Kellogg's was able to ramp up production quickly, ensuring that its products remained available on supermarket shelves. The company's supply chain resilience played a crucial role in its ability to meet the increased demand and maintain customer satisfaction during a challenging period.



On the other hand, some companies struggled to cope with the disruptions caused by the pandemic. For instance, Primark, a fast-fashion retailer, had to close all its stores worldwide due to lockdown measures. With no e-commerce operations to fall back on, the company was left with a significant amount of unsold inventory. This example underscores the risks associated with a lack of supply chain flexibility and the importance of having contingency plans in place.

These examples underscore the critical role that supply chain management plays in today's business landscape. Whether it's a global pandemic, a natural disaster, or a sudden market shift, companies need to be prepared to navigate a variety of challenges and uncertainties. A well-managed supply chain can provide the agility and resilience needed to thrive in a dynamic and unpredictable business environment.

The importance of supply chain management extends beyond manufacturing companies like Kellogg's or retailers like Primark. In fact, every business sector, from banking to advertising, relies on effective supply chain management to some degree. This is because at its core, supply chain management is about creating value by ensuring the right products and services are delivered to the right place, at the right time, and at the right cost.

For instance, consider a service company like a bank. In this context, the 'product' is the financial service provided to the customer, such as a loan or a savings account. The 'supply chain' involves all the processes and activities required to deliver this service, from the initial customer inquiry to the final transaction. Effective supply chain management in a bank could involve optimizing these processes to reduce costs, improve service speed and quality, and enhance customer satisfaction.

In the following sections, we will delve deeper into the concept of supply chain management, exploring

its various dimensions and highlighting its relevance in different business contexts. Whether you're a business student, a budding entrepreneur, or a seasoned executive, this book will provide you with the insights and tools you need to understand and leverage the power of supply chain management.

– Pause and Think –

- What role did supply chain management play for companies like Kellogg's during the COVID-19 pandemic?
- Is Supply Chain Management applicable only for manufacturing companies? Why or why not?

1.2 ENTITY VIEW OF SUPPLY CHAINS

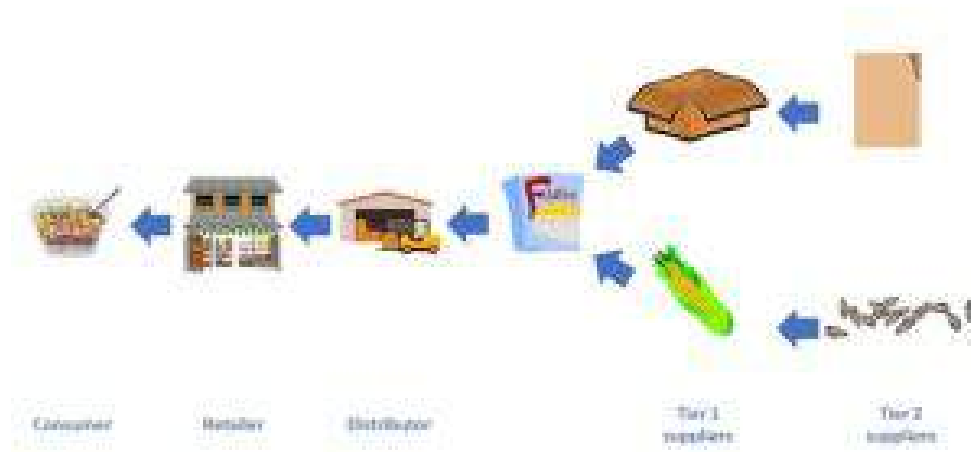
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Every company, regardless of its size or industry, is part of a supply chain. A supply chain exists wherever there is a flow of goods, information, and money between a company and its suppliers and customers. At its simplest, a supply chain can be viewed as a network of entities, with the nucleus company at the center, surrounded by multiple tiers of suppliers and customers.

Let's consider the example of Kellogg's, the food manufacturing company we discussed earlier. Kellogg's supply chain might include several tiers of suppliers. Tier 1 suppliers are those that directly provide materials and services to Kellogg's, such as grain farmers, packaging manufacturers and warehouse services providers. Tier 2 suppliers are those that supply to Tier 1 suppliers, such as companies providing seeds and fertilizers to the grain farmers or raw material providers for the packaging manufacturers. Similarly, there could be Tier 3 suppliers and so on.



On the distribution side, Kellogg's might sell its products to large retail chains or wholesalers (Tier 1 customers). These large retail chains sell directly to end consumers. The wholesalers, on the other hand, sell to smaller retail stores or convenience stores (Tier 2 customers), which in turn sell to the end consumers.



Now, let's consider a service company, for instance, a bank. The bank's Tier 1 suppliers could be software companies providing banking software solutions, while Tier 2 suppliers could be the companies providing hardware or cloud services to the software companies. On the customer side, the bank's Tier 1 customers could be individual account holders, while Tier 2 customers could be businesses to whom these individuals provide services or goods.

In both these examples, each entity in the supply chain operates independently, focusing on its own financial performance. However, this lack of collaboration can lead to inefficiencies and missed opportunities. For instance, a supplier might produce more than required due to lack of accurate demand information, leading to excess inventory. Or a customer might face stock-outs due to lack of timely supply. These problems highlight the need for better collaboration and integration among the entities in a supply chain.

While supply chains are a given, the management of these supply chains is a voluntary activity that requires strategic planning and coordination. This transition from simply having a supply chain to actively managing it is what we refer to as supply chain management. In the next section, we will delve deeper into this concept and explore the functional view of supply chains, which looks at the different activities or functions involved in managing a supply chain. This perspective will help us understand how these functions can be effectively coordinated to optimize the overall performance of the supply chains.

– Pause and Think –

- What is a Tier 1 supplier in a supply chain, and how does it relate to a nucleus company like Kellogg's?
- Members of the supply chain are financially separate companies. What could be the impact of these financially separate companies not adequately collaborating with each other?

1.3 SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

As we discussed in the previous section, supply chains are a natural occurrence in any business operation. However, while supply chains are a given, supply chain management is a conscious and strategic choice. It's a decision made by companies to improve efficiency, reduce costs, and gain a competitive advantage. We will understand this better through real-world examples.

Consider the case of Chase Bank and Frosch, a travel company. In the normal course of business, Chase purchased travel services for its customers from Frosch, a typical supply chain operation. However, Chase recognized that travel was a significant category of consumer spend. To better serve its customers and gain a competitive advantage, Chase made a strategic decision to acquire Frosch. This move is an example of proactive supply chain management, where Chase chose not to let the supply chain operate as it was, but to actively manage it to create more value.



Similarly, Boeing faced a critical shortage of airplane seats, a key component of its aircraft. Instead of relying on its existing supply chain, Boeing chose to form a strategic partnership with Adient, a leading provider of automotive seats. This collaboration allowed Boeing to ensure a steady supply of airplane seats without the need to invest in a new manufacturing facility or expertise. This is another example of active supply chain management, where Boeing chose to manage its supply chain strategically to overcome a critical challenge.



In the logistics sector, FedEx, a global courier delivery services company, has leveraged technology to optimize its supply chain. FedEx Dataworks, an organization within FedEx, uses data science and machine learning to make shipping more efficient. By enriching shipment data with weather and traffic data, FedEx has been able to improve the flow of goods through its network and enhance its reliability as a carrier. This is an example of how FedEx is actively managing its supply chain by using technology to gain a competitive advantage.

As we can see from these examples, supply chain management encompasses a variety of strategies to achieve organizational objectives. Chase used a make-or-buy analysis to reconfigure its supply chain network, Boeing reformulated supplier relationships, and FedEx leveraged technology. Supply chain management is about integrating these diverse approaches and skills. It's about bringing together different disciplines, from engineering and accounting to information technology, and harmonizing them to create a well-oiled supply chain machine.

This integration of diverse disciplines and strategies is what makes supply chain management a dynamic and exciting field. It offers endless opportunities for innovation and improvement. Whether it's finding new ways to collaborate with suppliers, leveraging technology to optimize logistics, or rethinking the entire supply chain network, there's always something to learn and explore. This dynamism, coupled with the significant impact that effective supply chain management can have on an organization's success, makes it a compelling choice for study and a rewarding career.

As students, it's important to know that there are several organizations dedicated to the advancement of the supply chain management profession. One such organization is the Association for Supply Chain Management (ASCM), which defines supply chain management as "the design and management of seamless, value-added processes across organizational boundaries to meet the real needs of the end customer." Another is the Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals (CSCMP), which defines it as "the integrated

planning and execution of processes required to optimize the flow of materials, information, and financial capital in the areas that broadly include demand planning, sourcing, production, inventory management, and storage, transportation, and return for excess or defective products.” The Institute for Supply Management (ISM) is another such organization that provides resources and standards for supply chain management.

In the following sections, we will extend this definition and delve deeper into the functional view of supply chain management and explore the various functions involved in managing a supply chain, from purchasing and planning to operations and distribution.

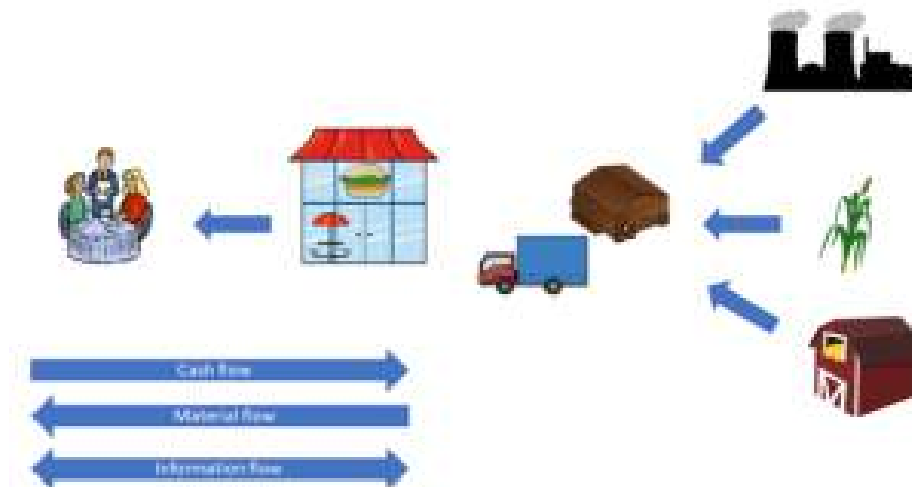
– Pause and Think –

- How did Boeing manage its supply chain to overcome the shortage of airplane seats?

1.4 SUPPLY CHAIN FLOWS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The definitions of supply chain management provided by ASCM, CSCMP, and ISM can be better understood when we consider supply chains as flows. In essence, supply chain management is about designing and managing three key flows: material, cash, and information. Typically, material flows downstream from suppliers to customers, cash flows upstream from customers to suppliers, and information flows in both directions.



The material flow involves the movement of goods and materials from suppliers to customers. In the case of Chase Bank, the material flow was the travel services provided by Frosch. For Boeing, it was the airplane seats supplied by Adient. And for FedEx, it was the packages and documents being delivered to customers.

The cash flow is the movement of funds, often in the opposite direction of the material flow. When Chase Bank acquired Frosch, it was a significant cash flow from Chase to Frosch. Boeing's strategic partnership with Adient involved a cash flow from Boeing to Adient for the supply of airplane seats. FedEx receives payment from its customers, which is a cash flow to FedEx.

The information flow involves the sharing and processing of information related to the material and cash flows. It includes order information, delivery schedules, and payment terms, among other things. FedEx, for instance, uses data science and machine learning to optimize its information flow, which in turn enhances its material and cash flows.

The advent of e-commerce has made these flows more efficient and faster. For instance, companies like Amazon have direct and immediate visibility of what their customers buy, unlike in traditional supply chains. This real-time information flow allows them to manage their material and cash flows more effectively.

However, despite these positives, e-commerce also presents a significant challenge in the form of reverse logistics, which involves the flow of goods from the customer back to the producer or distributor. This is particularly relevant in industries like e-commerce, where return rates can be as high as 30%. In these cases, the material flow is reversed, with goods moving from the customer back to the retailer or manufacturer. The cash flow can also be reversed, with refunds or credits being issued to the customer.



Managing these three flows – and in some cases, reversing them – is at the heart of supply chain management. Whether it's a bank acquiring a travel company, an aircraft manufacturer forming a strategic partnership with a seat supplier, or a courier company using technology to optimize its operations, effective supply chain management involves optimizing these flows to improve efficiency, reduce costs, and deliver value to the end customer.

– Pause and Think –

- What are the three key flows in a supply chain, and why are they important?
- How do the three flows change for the “return” process?

1.5 FUNCTIONAL VIEW OF SUPPLY CHAIN

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In a broad sense, everyone in a firm is involved in supply chain activities. They contribute, in one way or another, to the process of planning and executing the manufacturing and delivery of materials and services from suppliers to customers. However, within this broad scope, there are several key roles that are integral to the functioning of the supply chain. In this section, we will highlight a few of these roles.

Purchasing: This function is responsible for procuring the materials and services needed for the firm's operations. In a manufacturing company like Boeing, the purchasing department would be responsible for acquiring airplane seats from suppliers like Adient. In a service company like Chase Bank, the purchasing function might involve procuring travel services from companies like Frosch.

Operations: This function involves the transformation of inputs into outputs. In a manufacturing context, this could involve the assembly of airplane seats into an aircraft at Boeing. In a service context, it could involve the processing of a loan application at Chase Bank.

Marketing/Sales: This function is responsible for understanding customer needs and preferences, and for promoting and selling the firm's products or services. At FedEx, for instance, the marketing and sales function might involve identifying customer needs for courier services and promoting FedEx's offerings to meet those needs.

Accounting/Finance: This function manages the financial resources of the firm, including the cash flow that is a key part of the supply chain. At Amazon, for instance, the accounting and finance function would be responsible for managing the cash flow from customers and to suppliers.

Research and Development: This function is responsible for developing new products or services, or improving existing ones. At FedEx, the research and development function might involve developing new data science and machine learning techniques to optimize the company's logistics operations.

Human Resources: This function is responsible for managing the firm's human resources, including hiring, training, and managing personnel. At any of the companies we've discussed, the human resources function would play a key role in ensuring that the company has the skilled personnel needed to manage its supply chain effectively.

Engineering: This function is responsible for the design and development of the firm's products or services. In a manufacturing company like Boeing, the engineering function would be critical to the design and development of new aircraft.

Information Technology: This function supports the other functions by providing the necessary technology and systems. At FedEx, for instance, the IT function would be responsible for developing and

maintaining the data science and machine learning systems used to optimize the company's logistics operations.

Each of these functions plays a critical role in the supply chain, and effective supply chain management involves integrating these functions to optimize the flow of materials, cash, and information.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=185#oembed-1>

The importance of understanding supply chains extends beyond those who specialize in supply chain management. Marketing and sales students need to be aware of supply chains to ensure that the right products are available for customers when they need them. Finance and accounting students need to understand supply chains to accurately control costs and book revenues. Management students need to grasp supply chain concepts to ensure that firms can continue to be in business for a long time. In essence, a comprehensive understanding of supply chains is crucial for students from all majors. In the following chapters, we will delve deeper into each of these functions and explore how they contribute to effective supply chain management.

1.5.1 The Silo Effect

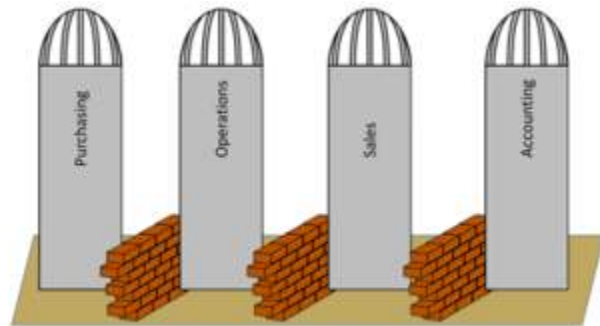
In many organizations, it's common to find that different functions or departments operate in isolation from each other. They focus on their own tasks and objectives, often without a clear understanding of how their actions might impact other parts of the organization. This lack of interdepartmental communication and coordination is referred to as the 'silo effect'.

For instance, consider a situation where the marketing department of a company launches a promotional campaign without coordinating with the operations department. The campaign is successful and leads to a surge in demand. However, the operations department, unaware of the campaign, is unprepared for this sudden increase in demand and struggles to meet it. This could result in delayed deliveries, dissatisfied customers, and potential loss of business. This is a classic example of the silo effect, where the lack of communication and coordination between departments leads to suboptimal outcomes.

The silo effect can also lead to 'turf wars' within organizations, where different departments or functions vie for resources and influence. These internal conflicts can be detrimental to the overall performance of the organization, as they divert attention and resources away from the primary goal of serving the customer.



Mitigating the silo effect requires a concerted effort to improve communication and coordination across different functions. This could involve regular interdepartmental meetings, cross-functional teams, or even job rotation programs that allow employees to gain a broader understanding of the organization. Technology can also play a crucial role in breaking down silos, by providing platforms for information sharing and collaboration.



In the age of supply chain management, it's essential for executives and managers to see their roles in the broader context of the entire supply chain, rather than just their specific function. They need to understand how their decisions and actions impact other parts of the supply chain and work collaboratively to optimize the entire chain, rather than just their piece of it. This shift in perspective from a functional focus to a supply chain focus is a key aspect of effective supply chain management.

– Pause and Think –

- How does the purchasing function contribute to the overall supply chain in a company?

- Why should students who seek careers in marketing and finance learn about supply chain management?

1.6 SUPPLY CHAIN OPERATIONS REFERENCE (SCOR) MODEL

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

As we have seen in the previous sections, supply chain management involves coordinating a diverse set of functions within an organization, as well as managing relationships with a variety of external entities. This can quickly become complex, and managing this complexity effectively requires a system of standards, metrics, and procedures. Recognizing this need, the Supply Chain Council developed the Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) model. This model has been updated as SCOR DS (Digital Standard).

The SCOR model is a process reference model that provides a framework for evaluating and comparing supply chain activities. It encompasses all customer interactions, from order entry through paid invoice, as well as all product transactions, from supplier's supplier to customer's customer. SCOR DS address the complexities of modern, digital supply chains. Unlike its predecessor, which followed a linear approach, SCOR DS presents a dynamic, networked framework that reflects the interconnected nature of today's supply chains. It includes the seven key components:



Image courtesy: https://www.ascm.org/globalassets/ascm_website_assets/docs/9.19.2022-scor-press-release.pdf

- **Orchestrate:** Orchestrate is about managing the big picture across the entire supply chain—setting goals, aligning teams, and making sure all the moving parts (planning, sourcing, delivering, etc.) are working toward the same strategy. It’s like the role of a coach who doesn’t play in the game but makes sure the team works together, follows the game plan, and adjusts when needed. For example, a smartphone company uses real-time data from suppliers, factories, and sales to shift production from one model to another if it sees higher demand or a delay in a specific component.
- **Plan:** Plan focuses on deciding how much of something to make, when to make it, and where to get the materials from, based on expected demand. It’s like planning your grocery shopping for the week—you check what you need, how many meals you’ll cook, and how much money you can spend. For instance, a bakery uses past sales data and seasonal trends to plan how many loaves of bread to bake each day and how much flour to order from suppliers.
- **Order:** Order covers the steps that happen once a customer places an order, including checking product availability, confirming payment, and preparing the item for delivery. It ensures that what the customer wants is delivered quickly and accurately. For example, when someone orders a hoodie online, the system

verifies that the size and color are in stock, confirms payment, and alerts the warehouse to pack and ship it.

- **Source:** Source is about finding and buying the materials or parts a company needs to make its product. This includes choosing suppliers, negotiating prices, placing orders, and making sure deliveries arrive on time. A good sourcing process keeps production running smoothly. For example, a chocolate company sources cocoa from farms in Africa and ensures it arrives in time to meet holiday production schedules.
- **Transform:** Transform is the stage where raw materials are turned into finished products, whether it's assembling, manufacturing, or packaging. It includes quality checks and making sure the product meets design standards. For example, at a toy factory, plastic parts are molded, painted, and assembled into action figures that are then packaged for stores.
- **Fulfill:** Fulfill is about getting the product into the customer's hands. It includes picking products from the warehouse, packing them, and coordinating shipping and delivery. For example, an online bookshop receives an order, picks the book off the shelf, wraps it, and hands it off to a courier service to deliver to your home.
- **Return:** Return deals with products that come back after being sold—maybe because they're broken, expired, or no longer needed. It includes inspecting the returned item, processing refunds or replacements, and deciding what to do with the product (repair, recycle, or restock). For example, if someone returns a blender that doesn't work, the company checks if it can be fixed and reused or must be discarded safely.

The SCOR DS model is useful for several reasons. It provides a standard description of supply chain processes, which facilitates communication and collaboration between different entities in the supply chain. It also provides a set of standard metrics for measuring supply chain performance, which allows organizations to benchmark their performance against industry standards and identify areas for improvement.

The SCOR DS model integrates both the entity view and the functional view of supply chains. From the entity view perspective, the SCOR DS model recognizes the importance of managing relationships with suppliers and customers, and it includes processes for sourcing materials from suppliers and delivering products to customers. From the functional view perspective, the SCOR model encompasses a range of internal functions, including planning, sourcing, making, delivering, and returning. By integrating these two views, the SCOR DS model provides a comprehensive framework for managing supply chains.

The SCOR DS model not only integrates the entity and functional views of supply chains, but it also emphasizes the importance of both internal and external alignment. Internal alignment refers to the coordination and collaboration among different functions within an organization, all working towards a common organizational goal. For instance, the marketing department must align with the operations

department to ensure that the products being promoted are available in the right quantities at the right time. Similarly, the finance or accounting department must align with the purchasing department to ensure that procurement activities are within budget and that the necessary funds are available to pay suppliers on time. Conversely, the purchasing department must ensure that their purchases are within the budget set by the finance department. This alignment of functions towards a shared objective is crucial for the overall success of the organization.

External alignment, on the other hand, refers to the coordination and collaboration among different entities in the supply chain, such as suppliers, manufacturers, distributors, and retailers. Achieving external alignment can be challenging, as it often requires convincing external partners to align their strategies with the needs of the supply chain. For example, a clothing retailer may need to work closely with its suppliers to ensure they adopt sustainable practices, aligning with the retailer's commitment to sustainability. If a supplier is unwilling or unable to adopt such practices, the retailer may need to seek out other suppliers who are better aligned with its supply chain needs.

The SCOR DS model provides a framework for achieving both internal and external alignment by standardizing processes, defining clear roles and responsibilities, and establishing performance metrics. This alignment is crucial for the smooth functioning of the supply chain and for achieving the ultimate goal of supply chain management: to deliver the right product, at the right time, at the right place, and at the right cost.

The structure of this textbook is designed around the SCOR model. The initial chapters will focus on strategy, quality, and sustainability, which are integral parts of the 'Orchestrate' and 'Plan' processes in the SCOR DS model. We will then move on to chapters dedicated to 'Source', where we will discuss various aspects of sourcing, including supplier selection, order management, and supplier performance monitoring.

Following this, we will delve into the 'Transform' process, discussing the transformation of products or services to meet demand. This will include topics such as production execution, quality assurance, and production scheduling. The subsequent chapters will focus on 'Fulfillment' and 'Return', covering topics such as order management, transportation management, distribution management, and the management of product returns. Throughout all these chapters, we will integrate the concept of 'Enable' by discussing relevant metrics and performance measures. This will provide you with a comprehensive understanding of how to manage and develop the business rules, performance metrics, data models, and practices that govern the operation of the supply chain.

As we embark on this journey together, we want to emphasize the importance and excitement of studying supply chain management. Regardless of your major or your future career path, understanding supply chains is crucial. Whether you're a marketing major needing to ensure the right products are available for customers, a finance student wanting to control costs and book revenues, or a management student aiming to ensure the long-term success of a firm, supply chain knowledge is indispensable. So, let's dive in and explore the fascinating world of supply chain management!

– Pause and Think –

- What is the purpose of the SCOR DS model in supply chain management?

1.7 CHAPTER 1 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section 1.1: Introduction

- What role did supply chain management play for companies like Kellogg's during the COVID-19 pandemic?
- Is Supply Chain Management applicable only for manufacturing companies? Why or why not?

2. Section 1.2: Entity View of Supply Chains

- What is a Tier 1 supplier in a supply chain, and how does it relate to a nucleus company like Kellogg's?
- Members of the supply chain are financially separate companies. What could be the impact of these financially separate companies not adequately collaborating with each other?

3. Section 1.3: Supply Chain Management

- How did Boeing manage its supply chain to overcome the shortage of airplane seats?

4. Section 1.4: Supply Chain Flows

- What are the three key flows in a supply chain, and why are they important?
- How do the three flows change for the "return" process?

5. Section 1.5: Functional View of Supply Chain

- How does the purchasing function contribute to the overall supply chain in a company?
- Why should students who seek careers in marketing and finance learn about supply chain management?

6. Section 1.6: Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) Model

- What is the purpose of the SCOR model in supply chain management?

Situational Questions:

1. Situation 1:

- Question: Imagine you are the supply chain manager for a global retailer that has been heavily affected by the COVID-19 pandemic. You need to ensure that your supply chain can adapt to sudden demand changes and potential disruptions in the future. Based on the strategies discussed in Chapter 1, what steps would you take to improve your supply chain's resilience?

2. Situation 2:

- Question: As the new head of operations at a manufacturing company, you notice that different departments work in silos, leading to inefficiencies and delays in production. How would you address the silo effect and improve interdepartmental coordination to optimize the company's supply chain?

Chapter 1 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=190#h5p-6>

PART II

CHAPTER 2: LOGISTICS MANAGEMENT

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Logistics, encompassing the art and science of moving products from their production sites to where they are required, has become a critical facet of contemporary business strategy. Once a peripheral function, logistics now commands the attention of top management, evolving into a strategic focal point that can confer significant competitive advantages.

This strategic shift is vividly illustrated by major corporations. Amazon, initially reliant on leasing aircraft for logistics, has now acquired over ten aircrafts, indicating a substantial investment in controlling its logistics chain. Walmart, a retail titan, showcases the significance of logistics through its leadership; two of its former CEOs, Lee Scott and Mike Duke, both emerged from the company's Transportation and Logistics division, signaling the division's integral role in corporate strategy. Similarly, Kraft Heinz's investment of over \$400 million in an advanced automated distribution center in DeKalb, Illinois, reflects a strategic move to enhance supply chain efficiencies and distribution capabilities.



These instances from Amazon, Walmart, and Kraft Heinz underscore a broader trend where logistics is no longer seen merely as a support function but as a crucial component of business strategy. These examples

demonstrate how logistics capabilities can directly impact a company's ability to serve its customers efficiently and effectively, thereby playing a pivotal role in the overall success of the business.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=459#oembed-1>

The Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals (CSCMP) defines **logistics management** as “that part of supply chain management that plans, implements, and controls the efficient, effective forward and reverse flow and storage of goods, services, and related information between the point of origin and the point of consumption in order to meet customers’ requirements.” This definition highlights the two primary components of logistics: transportation and warehousing. In this chapter, we will delve into the transportation aspect, examining its critical role and best practices in logistics management. The subsequent chapter will focus on warehousing, exploring its significance and strategies within the broader context of logistics.

2.2 LOGISTICS STRATEGY

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The importance of logistics in business, as demonstrated through the examples of Amazon, Walmart, and Kraft Heinz, cannot be overstated. However, it's crucial to acknowledge that logistics involves significant capital costs. These costs necessitate a comprehensive, long-term strategic approach, aligning logistics with broader business objectives.

Strategies involving substantial cost implications and direct impact on achieving business objectives fall under the umbrella of strategic decisions. In the realm of logistics, these strategic decisions encompass various critical components, ensuring that logistics operations not only support but also enhance business goals.

Key components of strategic decision-making in logistics include:

1. **Ownership vs. Outsourcing:** A fundamental decision is whether to own logistics infrastructure (like fleets and warehouses) or to outsource these services to specialized providers. This decision impacts not only cost structures but also the control over logistics operations.
2. **Mode of Transport Selection:** Choosing the right mode of transport (air, sea, road, rail) is crucial, as each mode has its own cost, speed, and capacity characteristics. The decision should align with the company's delivery speed requirements, cargo volume, and geographical coverage.
3. **Distribution Network Design:** The structure of the distribution network, including the number and location of distribution centers, directly affects delivery efficiency and customer satisfaction.
4. **Type of Warehousing:** Decisions about warehousing involve determining the right mix of storage facilities, including traditional warehouses, distribution centers, and automated storage systems, considering factors like inventory turnover, product type, and accessibility.

In this chapter, we will explore the first two components: the decision between owning and outsourcing logistics operations and the selection of transportation modes. These choices lay the foundation for a company's logistics strategy, influencing cost, efficiency, and the overall effectiveness of the supply chain.

The following chapter will delve into the remaining components: the design of the distribution network and the types of warehousing facilities. These areas are critical for ensuring that the physical movement of goods aligns with the strategic objectives of the business, enabling effective and efficient delivery to end customers.

2.2.1 Ownership vs. Outsourcing

Businesses must consider costs and control when deciding how to operate.



Outsourcing



Ownership

The decision to own or outsource logistics operations, particularly in terms of transportation like truck fleets, is a pivotal one for businesses. Giants like Walmart and Amazon exemplify the approach of owning a substantial part of their truck fleets. Owning a private fleet offers greater control over logistics operations, and for companies with significant freight movement, it can be more cost-effective than outsourcing.

However, managing a private fleet comes with its own set of challenges:

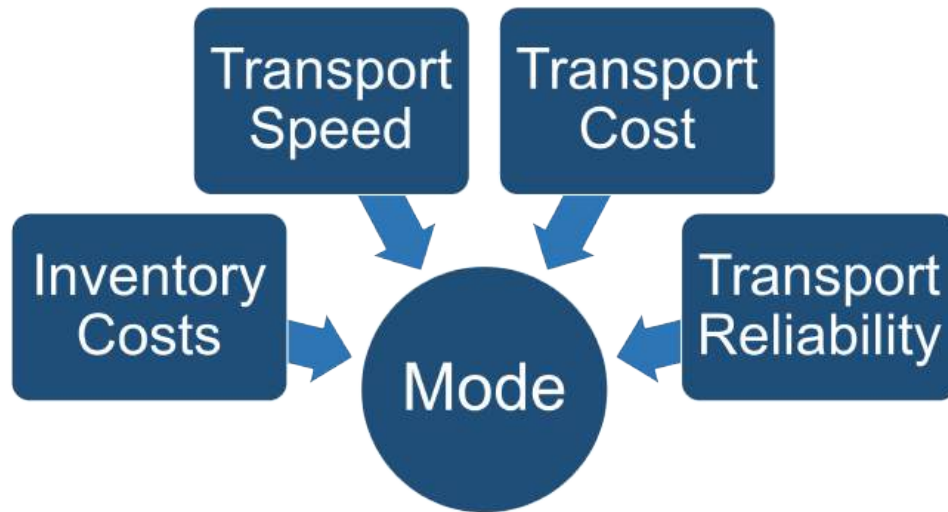
Backhauls and Deadheads: One major concern is the issue of empty backhauls, or ‘deadheads.’ A backhaul refers to the return journey of a truck from its destination back to its point of origin. For instance, in a retail scenario, the journey of a truck returning from the retail store to the warehouse is a backhaul. While logistics companies can often find alternate loads for these return trips, private fleets usually return to their distribution centers, often without cargo. This empty return trip is known as a deadhead. Deadheads represent a loss of efficiency and an increase in operational costs, as the truck is not generating revenue on its return journey.

Technical Expertise in Fleet Management: Another significant challenge is the technical expertise required for managing fleet maintenance and operations. Retail and other non-logistics businesses may not possess this specialized knowledge, making private fleet management an expensive and complex endeavor. In addition to maintenance and operations, the perennial shortage of truck drivers further complicates this scenario. Ensuring consistent driver availability poses a challenge, potentially disrupting logistics operations and adding to the costs and complexities of running a private fleet.

Given these considerations, businesses must weigh the benefits of having direct control and potentially

lower costs (in high-volume freight movement scenarios) against the complexities and expertise required in managing a private fleet. This strategic decision should align with the company's overall logistics strategy, considering factors like cost, control, efficiency, and the nature of the business's supply chain requirements.

2.2.2 Mode of Transport Selection



The strategic decision regarding the mode of transport is a critical component of logistics planning. This decision often balances two key factors: cost and service level, which includes speed and reliability. Generally, there is a direct relationship between the cost of transportation and its speed and reliability. Cheaper modes like ocean transport typically offer longer lead times, whereas more expensive options like air transport are faster and more reliable.

The impact of this decision extends to inventory management, as we explored in the chapter on inventory. The level of inventory and safety stock a company holds is directly influenced by the lead time of its chosen transportation mode.

Consider a product with a daily demand of 20 units and a 30-day lead time when delivered by ocean carrier. Using a reorder point (ROP) inventory system, the ROP would be set at $20 \text{ units} \times 30 \text{ days} = 600 \text{ units}$. The safety stock, in this case, needs to cover the variability over these 30 days. Conversely, if the same product is shipped by air, with a lead time of only 3 days, the ROP significantly reduces to $20 \text{ units} \times 3 \text{ days} = 60 \text{ units}$. The safety stock for this scenario would only need to cover a 3-day period.

This relationship between inventory costs, transport speed, and cost has substantial strategic implications. Generally, items with high inventory costs are better suited for faster and more expensive modes of transport to minimize holding costs. Conversely, items with lower inventory holding costs can be shipped using slower, more economical modes of transport.

This decision also influences other aspects of the supply chain, such as packaging design. Products intended

for ocean transport, which may face rough handling and long storage periods, require robust packaging. In contrast, products shipped by air, where weight is a crucial factor, necessitate lightweight packaging designs.

Thus, the selection of transport mode is not merely a logistic decision but a strategic one that affects various aspects of supply chain management, from inventory levels and safety stock to packaging design and overall supply chain efficiency.

2.3 TRANSPORTATION MODES

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Building on our previous discussion on the strategic aspects of transportation modes, this section delves into the operational aspects of different modes of transport. We will explore surface transport (trucking and rail), international transportation (ocean and air), and pipelines.

2.3.1 Trucking



In 2022, the trucking industry was responsible for moving over 11.4 billion tons of freight, generating more than \$940 billion in revenue. This mode of transportation played a pivotal role in international trade, particularly in North America, where trucks transported 61.9% of the value of surface trade between the U.S. and Canada and 83.5% with Mexico, totaling \$947.92 billion worth of goods. In Europe, the road freight market size reached 324.5 billion euros in 2020.

Trucking is not a monolithic industry but is segmented into various categories. These can be broadly defined as Parcel, Less than Truckload (LTL), and Full Truckload (FTL):

- **Parcel:** Involves the transportation of small, individual packages. This segment is often characterized by a high volume of shipments and is dominated by companies that specialize in parcel delivery.
- **Less than Truckload (LTL):** This category includes shipments that are larger than parcel but do not fill

an entire truck. LTL carriers typically consolidate freight from multiple shippers into a single truckload.

- **Full Truckload (FTL):** As the name suggests, FTL shipments occupy the full capacity of a truck. This segment is ideal for large shipments that need to be transported over long distances.

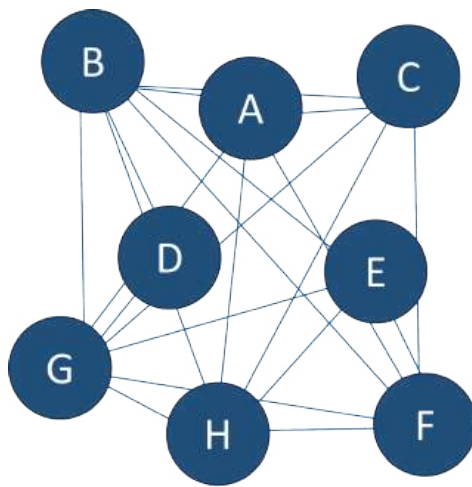
Each of these trucking segments operates within distinct network structures, influencing their cost and efficiency. The two primary models are the hub-and-spoke network, commonly used in parcel and LTL (Less than Truckload) services, and the point-to-point network, typically employed for FTL (Full Truckload) shipments.

Hub-and-Spoke Network:

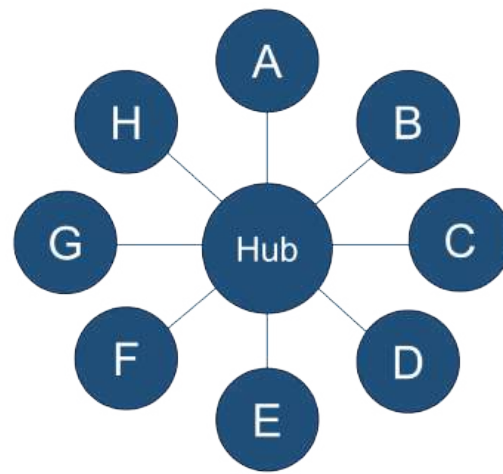
In the hub-and-spoke model, shipments are first transported to a central hub, which acts as a sorting and consolidation center. This model is particularly effective for parcel and LTL services, where numerous small shipments from various origins are aggregated. At the hub, these shipments are sorted according to their destinations and then dispatched accordingly. This structure allows for significant economies of scale by consolidating shipments, leading to reduced transportation costs. However, it may result in longer delivery times due to the additional handling and detour through the hub.

Point-to-Point Network:

Conversely, the point-to-point network entails direct transportation from the shipment's origin to its destination, bypassing any intermediate hubs. This approach is most efficient for FTL shipments, where an entire truck is filled with goods from a single origin heading to a single destination. The absence of intermediate stops for sorting or consolidation makes this network faster than the hub-and-spoke model, offering quicker delivery times. While it eliminates the need for additional handling, it may not be as cost-effective for smaller loads due to the lack of consolidation benefits.



Point-to-Point



Hub-and-Spoke

In summary, while the hub-and-spoke network is optimized for managing a large volume of small, diverse shipments, the point-to-point network is tailored for larger, uniform shipments requiring direct transit. These network structures significantly influence the operational efficiency and cost-effectiveness of trucking services.

Interestingly, the cost of trucking does not increase linearly with distance. For example, if the distance doubles, the increase in freight charges is less than double. This is due to the fixed costs associated with each shipment, such as loading and unloading, which do not change significantly with distance. This principle generally applies to all modes of transportation.

2.3.2 Rail Transport



Rail transport is a significant contributor to both the U.S. and European economies. In the U.S., the rail industry adds over \$250 billion annually and supports more than 1.1 million jobs. Railroads move over 1.4 trillion ton-miles of freight each year, more than any other mode in the country. The European rail industry is similarly impactful, contributing over €400 billion to the economy and supporting over 2.5 million jobs.

Rail transport is a highly efficient and reliable mode of surface transport, though it is limited by the necessity for rail connections at both the source and destination. It is more environmentally friendly than road transport, using less fuel per ton of material moved, and is generally cheaper and more reliable.

However, rail transport often involves multiple loadings and unloadings of goods. For instance, goods are loaded onto a road vehicle and transported to the source rail yard, where they are then transferred to a train. This process is repeated at the destination. Due to the costs and risks associated with these multiple handlings, rail transport is typically preferred for longer distances where its cost and efficiency advantages can be fully realized.

2.3.3 Ocean Freight



Ocean freight is a cornerstone of global trade, commanding more than 99% of the world's total tonnage in goods shipped. Its dominance is rooted in its capacity to transport large volumes over long distances efficiently and cost-effectively. The types of vessels used in ocean freight are specialized for different kinds of materials, each designed to optimize the transport of specific goods.

- **Bulk Vessels:** Bulk vessels are designed to carry dry, unpackaged goods such as cement, iron ore, and grains. These goods are loaded directly into the ship's hold, and unloading is typically done using conveyors and pumps. The design and structure of bulk vessels are optimized for the efficient and safe

transport of these materials in large quantities.

- **General Cargo Vessels:** General cargo vessels handle packaged merchandise. This category includes a specialized sub-type: container ships. Container ships are equipped to carry goods that are packaged in standard-sized shipping containers, facilitating easy handling and efficient space utilization. The containers used on these ships have standardized dimensions, with the most common sizes being 20 feet and 40 feet in length. The shipping load and capacity are measured in terms of Twenty-foot Equivalent Units (TEUs). For instance, a 20-foot container equals 1 TEU, while a 40-foot container equals 2 TEUs. Therefore, a shipment comprising 5 twenty-foot containers and 3 forty-foot containers would total 11 TEUs ($5 + 3 \times 2$).
- **Tankers:** Tankers are ships specially designed for transporting liquids or gases, such as chemicals, petroleum, and liquefied natural gas. These vessels are equipped with specialized tanks and safety features to handle the unique requirements and risks associated with transporting these types of cargo.
- **Inland Waterways:** Inland waterways, encompassing rivers, canals, and lakes, form a crucial link in the global logistics network, supplementing ocean freight. These waterways are particularly effective for transporting bulk commodities and oversized cargo over shorter distances or to areas not accessible by sea. The Mississippi River system in the United States, for example, is a vital conduit for agricultural and industrial products, exemplifying the importance of inland waterways in national and regional trade. While inherently more sustainable and often more economical than road transport, inland waterways transport is subject to geographical constraints and seasonal water level variations, requiring careful planning and integration with other transport modes for effective supply chain management.

2.3.4 Air Freight



Air freight, while often significantly more expensive than ocean cargo — sometimes up to ten times more — offers unique advantages that make it an ideal choice for certain types of cargo.

Key Advantages of Air Freight:

1. **Speed:** The most significant advantage of air freight is its speed. This is particularly beneficial for perishable goods or items with high inventory holding or stock-out costs. The rapid transit time of air freight means goods can be moved across vast distances in a fraction of the time it would take by sea, reducing the need for extensive warehousing and enabling just-in-time delivery models.
2. **Security:** Air freight also offers enhanced security. The shorter lead times and the controlled nature of airport operations contribute to a lower risk of theft and damage. This high-security environment is crucial for valuable or sensitive items.
3. **Temperature Control:** For cargo that requires strict temperature regulation, air freight provides an advantage. The shorter duration of air journeys allows for more precise control of environmental conditions, reducing the risk of spoilage or damage due to temperature fluctuations.

Types of Air Freight: Air freight primarily utilizes two methods of transportation: the cargo hold (or belly) of passenger aircraft and dedicated cargo freighters.

- **Passenger Aircraft Belly:** Many commercial flights carry cargo in addition to passengers' luggage. This space is particularly valuable for shipping goods due to its widespread availability and frequency of flights.
- **Dedicated Freighters:** Dedicated cargo planes are used exclusively for transporting goods. These aircraft are designed to handle larger or irregularly shaped cargo that might not fit in the belly of a passenger plane, offering more flexibility in terms of cargo size and weight.

2.3.5 Pipelines



Pipelines represent a unique and specialized mode of transportation, primarily used for the continuous flow of liquids and gases such as oil, natural gas, and chemicals. This mode of transport is integral to the energy sector and plays a vital role in the global supply chain.

Advantages of Pipeline Transportation:

1. **Continuity and Efficiency:** Pipelines provide a continuous flow of materials, making them highly efficient for transporting large volumes over long distances.
2. **Safety and Reliability:** They are generally safer and more reliable than other modes of transport, especially for hazardous materials, as they reduce the risk of spills and accidents during transit.
3. **Cost-Effectiveness:** For long-term operations, pipelines can be more cost-effective compared to other modes of transport due to lower operational costs and minimal maintenance requirements.

Disadvantages of Pipeline Transportation:

1. **High Initial Investment:** The construction of pipelines requires a significant initial investment, making them less flexible and more capital-intensive than other modes of transport.
2. **Geographical Limitations:** Pipelines are limited to fixed routes and require a substantial infrastructure network, limiting their flexibility to adapt to changing supply chain needs.
3. **Environmental Concerns:** Pipeline leaks or ruptures can have severe environmental impacts, and their construction can disrupt local ecosystems.

The key to effective logistics planning lies in understanding these options and their operational nuances.

Whether it's the extensive use of trucking and rail for surface transport, the global scale of ocean freight, the rapid delivery capability of air freight, or the specialized nature of pipelines, the choice of transportation mode should be a strategic decision. This decision should consider the nature of the goods, cost factors, speed requirements, and logistical challenges specific to each mode. The insights provided here aim to guide you in selecting the most appropriate mode of transport, ensuring that your logistical strategy is efficient, cost-effective, and aligned with your broader business objectives.

2.4 INTERNATIONAL LOGISTICS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

International transport plays a pivotal role in global trade, marked by its intricate processes and involvement of numerous entities. This complexity is largely rooted in the differing priorities and concerns of the involved parties. From the buyer's side, a primary concern is quality assurance, ensuring that the goods received meet specified standards and expectations. This entails rigorous scrutiny of product quality, adherence to agreed-upon specifications, and compliance with regulatory standards. Conversely, sellers are primarily concerned with payment security. They need assurance that once the goods are shipped, they will receive timely and complete payment as per the agreed terms. Addressing these dual concerns necessitates a comprehensive understanding of the various roles played by different entities in international transport and the key documents that govern and facilitate these complex processes. This section aims to demystify these aspects, providing insights into the intricate workings of international transport.

2.4.1 International Trade Entities

1. **Shipping Companies/Airlines (Carriers):** These entities provide the actual service of moving consignments from one country to another. They are responsible for the physical transportation of goods.
2. **Non-Vessel Owner Common Carriers (NVOCCs):** NVOCCs purchase space in bulk from shipping companies and resell it to exporters. They function as intermediaries, providing shipping services without owning the vessels.
3. **Ship Agents:** These agents represent the shipping companies at ports, handling documentation and other formalities on behalf of the carriers. Each agent typically represents a single shipping company.
4. **Freight Forwarders:** Often referred to as 'travel agents for cargo,' freight forwarders advise exporters on the best transportation methods for their goods. They are responsible for planning and overseeing the journey of the cargo.
5. **Custom House Agents (CHAs):** CHAs assist importers with the necessary paperwork and customs duties to clear imported shipments at the destination port.

2.4.2 International Trade Documents

Several key documents are integral to international shipping:

1. **Proforma Invoice:** Used during the buying/negotiation process, this document outlines the price and quality descriptions of the consignment. It's similar to the commercial invoice and can be used for securing credit or planning customs duties.
2. **Commercial Invoice:** This document provides the final value and description of the goods and is used by customs to assess the value for duty purposes.
3. **Packing List:** This document details the contents of the shipping package.
4. **Letter of Credit:** A payment guarantee from the importer's bank, promising to pay the exporter upon meeting certain conditions.
5. **Bill of Lading (B/L):** Issued by the ship captain, it serves as proof of loading and an ownership document for the goods in transit. Airlines issue an airway bill, which is not an ownership document.
6. **Certificate of Origin:** Issued by authorized bodies like local chambers of commerce, it certifies the location where the majority of the product's value was added.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=469#oembed-1>

2.4.3 Incoterms



The International Chamber of Commerce has established predefined commercial terms, known as

Incoterms, to streamline international trade across different countries with varying regulations. These terms detail the ownership and risk responsibilities for goods in transit. Three key Incoterms include:

1. **Ex Works (EXW):** The exporter makes the goods available at their premises. The importer is responsible for all transportation and risks from the exporter's warehouse to the final destination.
2. **Free on Board (FOB):** The exporter is responsible for loading the goods onto the ship at the port of origin. Beyond this point, all risks and responsibilities transfer to the importer.
3. **Delivered Duty Paid (DDP):** The exporter assumes full responsibility for delivering the goods to the customer's location, including all transportation risks and costs.

This overview of entities, documents, and terms in international logistics underscores the complexity and interconnectivity of global trade, emphasizing the need for careful planning and coordination across various stages of the international shipping process.

2.5 TYPES OF WAREHOUSING

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Understanding the different types of warehouses is essential for designing an effective warehouse network. The classification of warehouses varies based on several factors, including their purpose and position in the supply chain. Each type of warehouse serves distinct functions and requires specific design elements to meet its operational needs.

2.5.1 Position-Based Classification



One common way to classify warehouses is by their position in the supply chain:

1. **Central Distribution Centers (CDCs):** CDCs are large facilities that act as the primary hubs in the supply chain. They play a critical role in receiving and redistributing materials. Typically, inbound materials arrive at CDCs in bulk, often on pallets, and are redistributed in a similar manner. For instance, a CDC might receive 20 pallets from a supplier and then allocate these pallets across various Regional Distribution Centers (RDCs). The design of CDCs usually facilitates handling large volumes of goods with efficiency.
2. **Regional Distribution Centers (RDCs):** RDCs are positioned to serve specific geographic areas. They receive products from CDCs, typically on pallets, and are responsible for further distribution within their region. RDCs often break down these bulk shipments into smaller units, such as cartons, to

cater to the needs of local retailers or other downstream entities. For example, an RDC might receive 30 pallets, each containing different stock keeping units (SKUs), and reorganize them into assorted pallets to be sent to retailers.

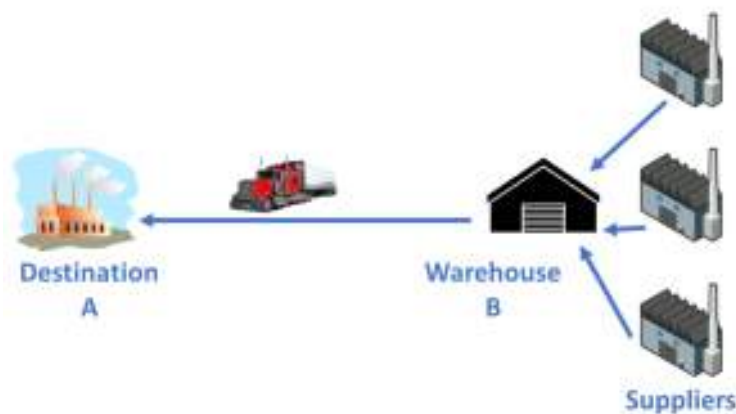
3. **Fulfillment Centers:** These are integral to e-commerce operations, handling the distribution of goods directly to the end consumers within a specific region. Fulfillment centers receive products in various forms, such as pallets or cartons, and redistribute them as individual items or 'eaches.' The high number of individual transactions in these centers typically necessitates advanced levels of automation to maintain efficiency and accuracy in order processing.

The movement of products in this network follows a distinct pattern: the journey from the supplier to the CDC is known as the 'first mile,' the transit from the CDC to RDCs or fulfillment centers is the 'middle mile,' and the delivery from fulfillment centers to the final consumer is referred to as the 'last mile.' Each of these stages has unique logistical requirements and challenges, influencing the design and operation of the respective warehouse types.

2.5.2 Task-Based Classification

Warehouses can also be classified based on the dominant tasks they perform, which are defined by the flow of products through the warehouse. This task-based approach categorizes warehouses into several types, each designed to streamline specific logistical processes.

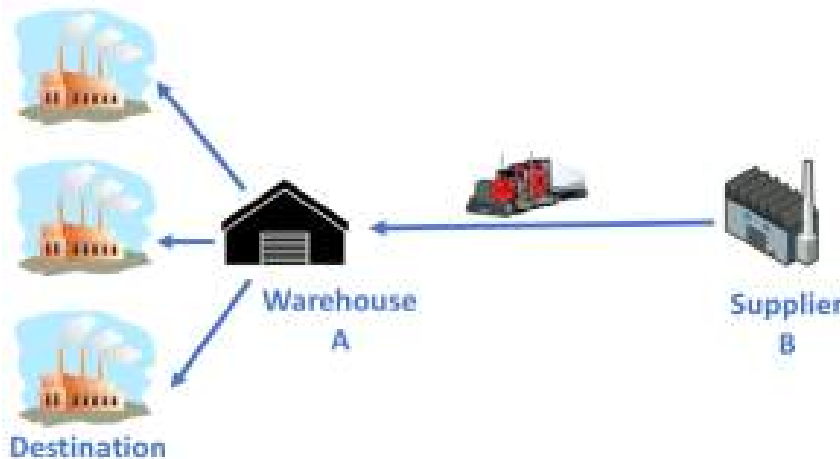
1. **Consolidation Warehouse:** These warehouses are set up to collect materials from multiple suppliers, consolidate these loads, and then dispatch them as a single delivery to a specific location. For example, if a business located in City A sources materials from various suppliers in a distant City B, a consolidation warehouse in City B can be advantageous. Suppliers send goods to this local warehouse in small trucks, where the loads are consolidated and then shipped in larger trailers to the business in City A. This consolidation leads to reduced transportation costs and lower inventory levels compared to each supplier



sending individual deliveries.

2. **Break Bulk Warehouse:** The function of a break bulk warehouse is to divide large shipments from one

or a few suppliers into smaller loads for delivery to multiple customers. If a supplier in City B has many customers in distant City A, a break bulk warehouse in City A is beneficial. The supplier can use larger, more economical trucks for the journey between Cities B and A, and smaller vehicles for the final delivery from the warehouse to individual customers in City A. This system optimizes transportation efficiency by reducing the need for multiple long-haul trips.



3. **Mixing Warehouse:** Mixing warehouses handle goods from multiple suppliers and redistribute them to various customers. A typical example is the warehouse of a large retailer. For instance, a single warehouse in Southern Florida could supply all Walmart stores in that region. This warehouse receives materials from different suppliers and then redistributes them to the stores. Without a mixing center, direct supply from each of the three suppliers to each of the three retailers would require nine truck routes. The introduction of a mixing center reduces this to six routes, thereby optimizing



transportation.

4. **Cross Dock Warehouse:** A specialized form of a mixing center, cross dock warehouses are characterized by their use of advanced technology and automation. These warehouses rapidly redistribute merchandise from multiple suppliers to multiple customer destinations. In a cross-dock warehouse, the time between receiving materials from suppliers and dispatching them to customers can

be as short as 3 to 6 hours. This rapid processing minimizes storage time and accelerates the supply chain flow, making it highly efficient for certain types of products and markets.

These task-based warehouse classifications highlight the diverse strategies employed in warehousing to optimize supply chain operations. Each type addresses specific logistical challenges and plays a distinct role in ensuring the efficient movement of goods from suppliers to end consumers.

Consider this problem:

Imagine your manufacturing facility is located in Minneapolis. You have several customers near Columbus, Dayton, and Cincinnati OH. The good news: Dayton is located about halfway between Columbus and Cincinnati, making Dayton an ideal location for your breakbulk facility. You currently ship eight LTL shipments (each weighs about 5,000 pounds) into the region at \$500 per shipment. You identify a third-party warehouse operation that is able to unload (and reload) a full truckload for \$400. You check with your carrier and discover that the truckload from Minneapolis to Dayton is \$1,800. LTL delivery from the breakbulk facility to each customer is \$200. Your question: Should you change your delivery model?

2.5.3 Function-Based Classification

Warehouses can also be categorized based on the specific functions they are designed to perform. This function-based classification helps in understanding the specialized requirements and operational nuances of different types of warehouses, each catering to particular storage needs.

1. **Temperature-Controlled Warehouse:** Crucial for storing temperature-sensitive products such as food items, certain chemicals, and pharmaceuticals, these warehouses are equipped with facilities to maintain different temperature zones. Each zone within the warehouse can be set to a specific temperature level to preserve the integrity and quality of the stored goods. This type of warehouse is essential for products that require a controlled environment to prevent spoilage or degradation.
2. **Tool Rooms:** These warehouses are dedicated to storing tools and equipment. Given that the frequency of transactions in tool rooms is typically not high, these facilities often employ high-density racking systems to maximize space utilization. Some tool rooms also incorporate advanced systems like Automated Storage and Retrieval Systems (ASRS) to enhance efficiency and accuracy in storing and retrieving tools.
3. **Dangerous Goods Warehouse:** Specifically designed for the safe storage of hazardous materials, these warehouses cater to items like flammable liquids, explosives, and toxic chemicals. They are equipped with specialized safety features such as fire suppression systems, adequate ventilation, and containment measures for potential leaks or spills. The design and operation of these warehouses adhere to strict safety standards and regulatory requirements.
4. **Bonded Warehouses:** These warehouses are used for the duty-free storage of imported goods pending

customs clearance or re-exportation. Bonded warehouses are secured facilities that must comply with specific customs regulations. They are equipped with security measures and procedures to ensure that the stored goods remain under customs control and are not illegally diverted.

As we can see, there is substantial diversity in the types of warehouses, characterized by differences in construction, storage equipment, handling equipment, and more, depending on their position, task, and purpose within the supply chain. It's crucial to recognize that constructing a warehouse represents a significant investment, and once a facility is designed for a specific function, such as a consolidation center, repurposing it for a different role, like a fulfillment center, can be both challenging and expensive. This underlines the importance of this section: having a thorough understanding of the various types of warehouses and their distinct functionalities is vital.

2.6 WAREHOUSING PROCESS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Despite the considerable diversity in types of warehouses, the core processes within these facilities tend to be similar. These processes are essential for the efficient operation of any warehouse, regardless of its specific role or function in the supply chain.

A typical warehouse encompasses five primary processes, four of which are directly related to material flow:

1. **Receive:** This is the initial stage where goods arrive at the warehouse. The receiving process involves verification, unloading, and documentation to ensure that the correct items and quantities have been received. This step is critical for maintaining inventory accuracy and preparing goods for subsequent storage.
2. **Put:** After receiving, the goods are placed or ‘put’ in their designated storage locations within the warehouse. This process requires careful planning to optimize space utilization and accessibility, which is crucial for efficient picking and handling.
3. **Pick:** The picking process involves retrieving goods from their storage locations based on specific pick lists. These lists may represent single or multiple customer orders. The complexity of the picking process can vary depending on the variety and quantity of items being handled.
4. **Dispatch:** This final step in the material flow involves assembling the picked goods into a complete customer shipment. The goods are then loaded onto the transportation vehicle, accompanied by the necessary invoices and shipping documents. Dispatching must be coordinated effectively to ensure timely and accurate deliveries.

The complexity of these four processes can vary significantly based on factors such as the nature of the goods handled and the frequency of transactions. For instance, warehouses handling small electronic components often face more complex receiving, putting, picking, and dispatching processes than those dealing with pallet-level loads. Similarly, mixing centers with higher transaction frequencies typically have more intricate processes compared to consolidation or break-bulk warehouses.

The fifth crucial process in warehousing is **Inventory Counting**. Regular inventory counts are vital for ensuring that the physical inventory matches the recorded inventory. Inaccuracies in inventory records can lead to major operational issues, such as customer shortages if the physical inventory is less than recorded, or excess inventory if it is more. Effective inventory management is key to preventing these problems and maintaining the reliability of the warehouse’s operations.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=496#oembed-1>

In warehouses, which can store thousands of items, the imperative for soundly designed and diligently followed processes is paramount. Small discrepancies in process design or even minor lapses in adherence can lead to significant repercussions, such as excess inventory, product shortages, or extensive time spent locating items. While there are numerous intricate details involved in each of these processes, the overview provided here lays a solid foundation for understanding. This knowledge equips one with a fundamental perspective on warehousing operations, ensuring a strong footing in the field.

2.7 CHAPTER 2 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Situational Questions

Situation: A company with several customers in the same region is considering using a break-bulk warehouse to optimize transportation costs. Currently, it ships individual LTL shipments to each customer. How would using a break-bulk warehouse in a central location reduce costs, and what are the potential benefits?

Situation: A retailer is deciding whether to use a 3PL or a 4PL provider to manage its logistics operations. The retailer values control over logistics providers but is also looking for convenience and streamlined operations. What would you recommend, and why?

Situation: You are a logistics manager for a company that manufactures high-end electronics. The products are sensitive to temperature fluctuations and have high inventory holding costs. Which mode of transportation would you choose, and why?

Situation: Your company is considering whether to outsource its logistics operations or invest in its own fleet of trucks. You know that your company frequently experiences empty backhauls when transporting goods. What would be your recommendation, and what factors would you consider?

Chapter 2 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=473#h5p-7>

PART III

CHAPTER 3: SUPPLY CHAIN PLANNING

3.1 INTRODUCTION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Every business, regardless of its size or industry, engages in the crucial activity of forecasting. This practice of looking ahead is not just a mere exercise but a fundamental pillar upon which successful strategies are built. For instance, in the financial sector, investment banks and financial institutions often forecast economic indicators such as GDP growth, inflation rates, or currency exchange rates that span several years. These predictions guide investment strategies, shape policy recommendations, and influence global economic dynamics.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=360#oembed-1>

The technology sector, with its rapid pace of innovation, also leans heavily on forecasting. Tech giants like Apple or Microsoft, when peering into the future, try to gauge the potential market size and growth for emerging technologies. Consider the realms of augmented reality or quantum computing; the forecasts related to these areas significantly influence companies' R&D investments and product development pipelines. The service industry offers a rich tapestry of forecasting examples. Airlines, for instance, might forecast passenger traffic for the upcoming season, determining flight schedules, pricing strategies, and promotional campaigns. Such predictions are vital, especially in industries with razor-thin margins where overestimating or underestimating demand can have significant financial implications.



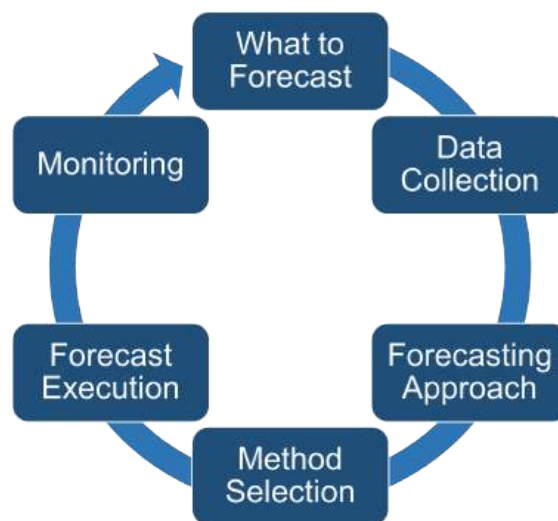
However, forecasting is not without its challenges. Real-life examples abound where businesses have made erroneous forecasts, leading to substantial repercussions. For instance, in the early 2000s, Cisco Systems, a leader in networking hardware, faced a significant setback when they had to write off billions in inventory due to overestimation of demand. Another example is the former CEO of Microsoft, who, in 2007, predicted that Apple's iPhone wouldn't gain significant market share, a forecast that was proven wrong as Apple became one of the top smartphone vendors in the world. Similarly, an early radio and film pioneer in 1926 wrote off the potential of television, which later became a staple in households worldwide.

Such instances underscore the importance of accurate forecasting and the potential pitfalls of getting it wrong. As we delve deeper into this chapter, we'll explore the intricacies of demand forecasting, its methodologies, and its undeniable significance in the world of business.

3.2 DEMAND FORECASTING PROCESS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Building on our understanding of the significance of forecasting, it becomes evident that a structured approach is essential to ensure accuracy and relevance. Forecasting is not just about predicting numbers; it's about making informed decisions that can shape the future of a business. Having a systematic process for forecasting not only provides a clear roadmap but also ensures consistency, reduces errors, and allows for continuous improvement.



Step 1: What to Forecast

The nature of what we forecast is primarily determined by the specific needs and objectives of the business. Forecasts can be categorized into:

- **Long-term forecasts:** These are typically for a period beyond three years and are used for strategic planning, such as entering a new market or launching a revolutionary product. For instance, a tech company might forecast the adoption rate of a new technology over the next decade.
- **Medium-term forecasts:** Spanning from one to three years, these forecasts often guide budgeting decisions or expansion plans. An airline might use medium-term forecasts to decide on adding new routes or purchasing new aircraft.
- **Short-term forecasts:** These are for periods less than a year and are crucial for operational decisions like inventory management or staffing. Retailers, for example, would use short-term forecasts to determine stock levels for the upcoming holiday season.

Different forecasting methods are suited for these varying time horizons, and it's crucial to match the method with the forecast's purpose. For example, in sales, we can apply the time horizon as:

Horizon	Long-Term	Medium-Term	Short-Term
Forecast Quantity	Total Sales	Sales of Product or Service Families	Sales of Individual Services or Products

Step 2: Data Collection

The foundation of any good forecast is reliable data. The types of data required include:

- **Historical Data:** This encompasses past demand data and factors that influence demand, such as advertising campaigns, promotions, or price changes.
- **Economic Indicators:** Both historical and prospective data on GDP growth, money supply, inflation rates, and other economic factors can influence demand patterns.
- **Demographic and Trends Data:** Information on population growth, age distribution, urbanization trends, and other societal patterns can be pivotal, especially for consumer goods and services.
- **Expert Knowledge:** Sometimes, the best insights come from individuals with deep industry knowledge or those who have a pulse on market sentiments.

Step 3: Forecasting Approach

Broadly, there are two primary approaches to forecasting: qualitative and quantitative.



Qualitative / Judgmental
Forecasting



Quantitative
Forecasting

- **Qualitative or Judgmental Forecasting:** This is often employed when historical data is either

unavailable or deemed irrelevant. It's especially useful for long-term forecasts where past patterns might not provide clear insights into future trends.

- **Quantitative Forecasting:** This approach is rooted in the belief that past patterns will reoccur. It's particularly effective for short and medium-term forecasts where historical data can provide a clear picture of future demand.

Step 4: Method Selection

Once the broader approach is chosen, the next step is to select a specific forecasting method.

- For qualitative forecasting, the choice hinges on the nature of the decision, the available expertise, and the forecast's horizon. Each qualitative method has its strengths and weaknesses, which we'll delve into later.
- For quantitative forecasting, the method is often chosen based on its fit with historical data. The ideal method would be the one that most accurately predicts past demand patterns.

Step 5: Forecast Execution

With the method in hand, the actual forecasting can commence. However, forecasting is not a one-time activity. It's vital to continuously measure forecast accuracy, comparing predictions with actual outcomes. This ongoing evaluation ensures that the chosen method remains relevant and effective, prompting changes when necessary.

Step 6: Monitoring

Merely selecting a model and generating forecasts is not enough. A model that was once suitable within an organization may become inadequate over time due to evolving conditions. Hence, continuous monitoring of forecasts is essential to implement necessary adjustments as circumstances change.

To maintain accuracy, monitoring tools like the tracking signal are employed. These tools can indicate the necessity to either alter the method itself or revise model parameters.

To truly grasp the intricacies of the demand forecasting process, it's beneficial to delve into real-world scenarios. Let's explore three distinct case studies that span different industries and time horizons, each illustrating the application of the five-step process we've outlined.

Case Study 1: Long-Term Forecasting in Banking



Imagine a leading bank looking a decade into the future. Recognizing the impending demographic shifts, the bank anticipates a younger, more tech-savvy customer base. This demographic, accustomed to digital interfaces and instant services, will have different banking needs. The bank also acknowledges the rapid technological advancements, from blockchain to artificial intelligence, that could redefine banking operations. Following our five-step process:

1. The bank determines its need to forecast the potential demand for innovative banking products and services.
2. It gathers data on demographic trends, technological advancements, and evolving customer preferences.
3. Given the long-term nature and the lack of exact historical parallels, a qualitative approach is chosen.
4. Expert panels, including tech experts and market researchers, are convened to select the best forecasting method.
5. The bank then forecasts the potential demand for new banking products, continuously revisiting and refining these predictions as more data becomes available.

Case Study 2: Medium-Term Forecasting in Retail



Consider a major retailer preparing for the upcoming year. The retailer recognizes the seasonality in demand, with peaks during holiday seasons and lulls in between.

1. The primary forecast is the demand for various products throughout the year.
2. Historical sales data, promotional calendars, and market trends are collected.
3. Given the medium-term horizon and available historical data, a quantitative approach is deemed suitable.
4. Time series analysis, which considers seasonality, is chosen as the forecasting method.
5. The retailer then predicts product demand for each month, adjusting inventory and marketing strategies accordingly, while continuously monitoring forecast accuracy.

Case Study 3: Short-Term Forecasting in Call Centers



A bustling call center aims to optimize its operations for the upcoming week. The center knows that call volumes can fluctuate hourly, influenced by factors like marketing campaigns or service outages.

1. The center decides to forecast hourly call volumes.
 2. Data on past call volumes, scheduled marketing activities, and potential service disruptions are gathered.
 3. Given the short-term nature and ample historical data, a quantitative approach is selected.
 4. Methods that can capture short-term fluctuations, like exponential smoothing, are employed.
 5. The call center then predicts hourly call volumes, adjusting staffing levels to ensure optimal service.
- Regular accuracy checks are conducted to refine the forecasting method.

Through these case studies, we see the versatility and applicability of the demand forecasting process across varied scenarios. Each business, while unique in its challenges and context, follows a structured approach to make informed predictions, ensuring they're well-prepared for the future.

3.3 QUALITATIVE METHODS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Building on our earlier discussion, qualitative or judgmental forecasting methods are particularly useful when historical data is either unavailable or deemed irrelevant. For instance, a startup launching a groundbreaking product might not have past sales data to rely on, or a company entering an entirely new market might find that previous patterns in their established markets don't apply. Similarly, in situations like predicting the impact of unprecedented global events or gauging consumer reactions to a novel technology, past trends might offer limited insights. These methods are especially pertinent for long-term forecasts where past patterns might not provide clear insights into future trends or when the situation is so novel that there's no precedent. Let's delve deeper into the various qualitative methods available:

Expert Judgment: At its core, this method involves soliciting forecasts from individuals who possess deep knowledge in the field being forecasted. These experts could range from company executives who have a pulse on organizational strategies to industry analysts who monitor market dynamics or research scientists who are at the forefront of technological advancements.

Delphi Method: A more structured approach to harnessing expert opinion is the Delphi method. It involves a series of surveys conducted among a panel of experts. After each round, the responses are shared anonymously with the panelists, allowing them to refine their forecasts based on the feedback of their peers. This iterative process aims to converge towards a consensus forecast.

Market Research: This method dives into understanding customer needs, preferences, and behaviors. By collecting and analyzing data about potential or existing customers, businesses can forecast demand for new offerings or anticipate shifts in demand for their current products or services.

Consumer Surveys: A subset of market research, consumer surveys directly engage with consumers, asking them about their spending habits, product preferences, and future intentions. These surveys can be tailored to forecast demand for specific items or to identify broader market trends.

Sales Force Polling: Often, those on the front lines of sales have invaluable insights. By polling salespeople about their expectations for sales in their territories or product lines, organizations can tap into this ground-level intelligence. Salespeople's direct interactions with customers give them a unique perspective, allowing them to offer forecasts that might be more attuned to real-time market conditions than historical data alone.

Brainstorming: This method involves gathering a diverse group of individuals to generate a wide array of ideas and predictions about future demand. The collective intelligence and varied perspectives can lead to innovative forecasting insights, especially in rapidly changing industries or markets.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=369#oembed-1>

While all the qualitative methods described above offer invaluable insights and can be instrumental in various forecasting scenarios, firms need to exercise some caution. A word of warning is in order. Qualitative methods, despite their strengths, come with certain limitations and drawbacks:

- **Subjectivity:** Since these methods often rely on human judgment, they can be influenced by personal biases, emotions, or perceptions.
- **Lack of Replicability:** Different experts or groups might arrive at different forecasts given the same information, making it challenging to consistently replicate results.
- **Vulnerability to Groupthink:** In methods like brainstorming or the Delphi method, there's a risk that participants might conform to a dominant view, suppressing dissenting opinions.
- **Potential for Overconfidence:** Experts, while knowledgeable, might overestimate the accuracy of their forecasts, leading to potential pitfalls.

Given these limitations, forecasters must be wary of over-relying on intuition. There's a potential pitfall where forecasters might eschew quantitative methods even when relevant data is available. It's essential to strike a balance. Even when using qualitative methods, it's imperative to continuously assess forecast accuracy, ensuring that predictions remain grounded in reality and are adjusted as new information becomes available.

3.4 QUANTITATIVE METHODS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

At the heart of quantitative forecasting lies a fundamental assumption: the patterns observed in historical data will, to some extent, repeat in the future. To illustrate, consider the sales of winter coats. While the exact number of coats sold each winter may vary, the general pattern of increased sales during colder months and decreased sales during warmer months is likely to persist year after year. Similarly, a theme park might observe higher visitor numbers during school holidays compared to school terms. This doesn't imply that the exact number of visitors will be the same every holiday, but the trend of increased visitors during holidays is expected to continue. This foundational principle doesn't suggest that the future will mirror the past exactly. Instead, it posits that the variability and inherent patterns seen in historical data will be reflected in future forecasts.

Time Series Analysis: This technique revolves around dissecting historical data to discern discernible patterns and trends. Once identified, these patterns can be extrapolated to predict future values. For instance, a retailer might analyze monthly sales data over several years to identify seasonal peaks and troughs. By recognizing these recurring patterns, the retailer can better anticipate sales for the upcoming months. While this chapter will introduce a few basic time series methods, it's worth noting that the realm of time series analysis is vast and continually evolving.

Causal Modeling: Rather than solely relying on past data of the variable being forecasted, causal modeling seeks to understand the relationships between that variable and other influencing factors. For example, a car manufacturer might develop a model that considers factors like GDP growth, fuel prices, and interest rates to forecast car sales. By simulating how changes in these factors might impact sales, the manufacturer can make more informed production and marketing decisions.

Machine Learning: Emerging from the expansive field of computer science, machine learning focuses on crafting algorithms that can learn from and make predictions based on data. These algorithms, once trained on historical data, can forecast a myriad of variables. A tech company, for instance, might employ machine learning to predict user engagement based on past user behavior, platform changes, and external events. Such forecasts can guide feature development, marketing strategies, and user support initiatives.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=376#oembed-1>

Each of these method classes offers unique advantages and is suited for specific scenarios. By understanding

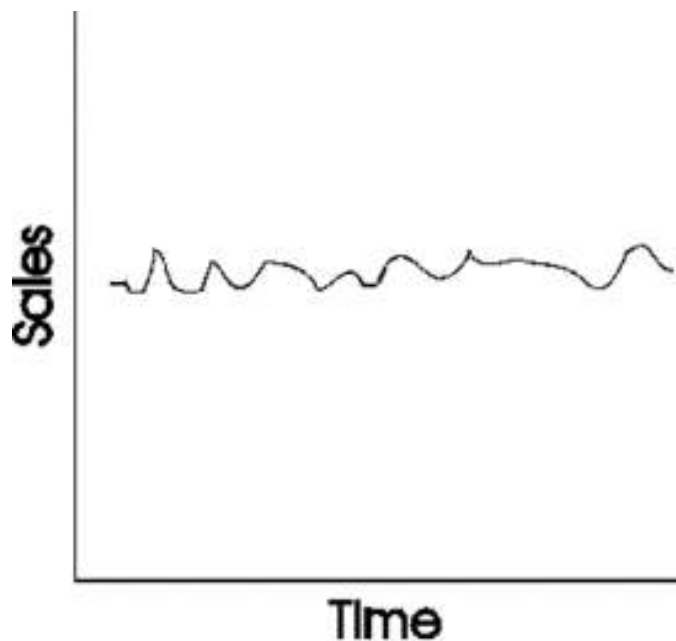
their underlying principles and applications, businesses can select the most appropriate technique for their forecasting needs, ensuring more accurate and actionable predictions.

3.4.1 Time Series Methods

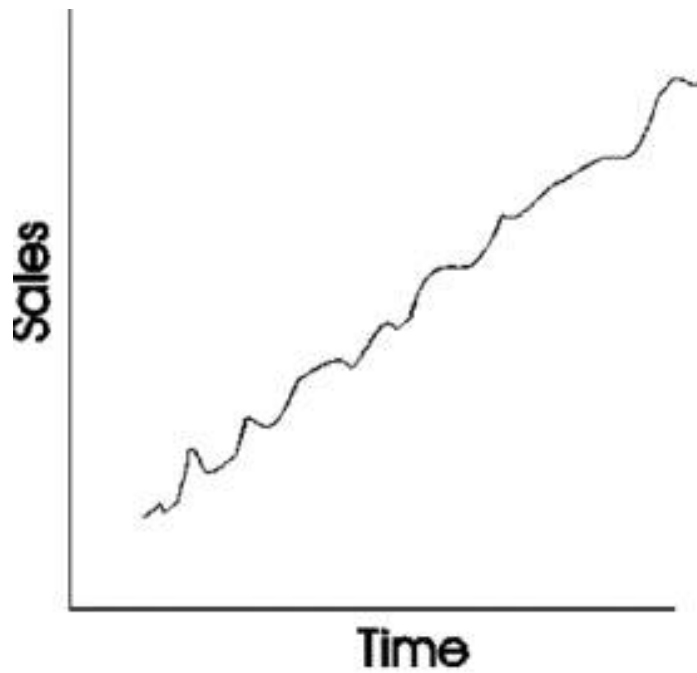
Time series methods are a cornerstone of quantitative forecasting, particularly favored for their applicability in medium-term and short-term predictions. At their core, these methods revolve around the analysis of data points collected or recorded at specific time intervals. Whether it's a retailer predicting monthly sales or a utility company forecasting daily electricity consumption, time series methods offer a structured approach to understanding past patterns and predicting future value.

A key strength of time series analysis is its ability to decompose demand data into distinct components, each representing different patterns or influences on the data:

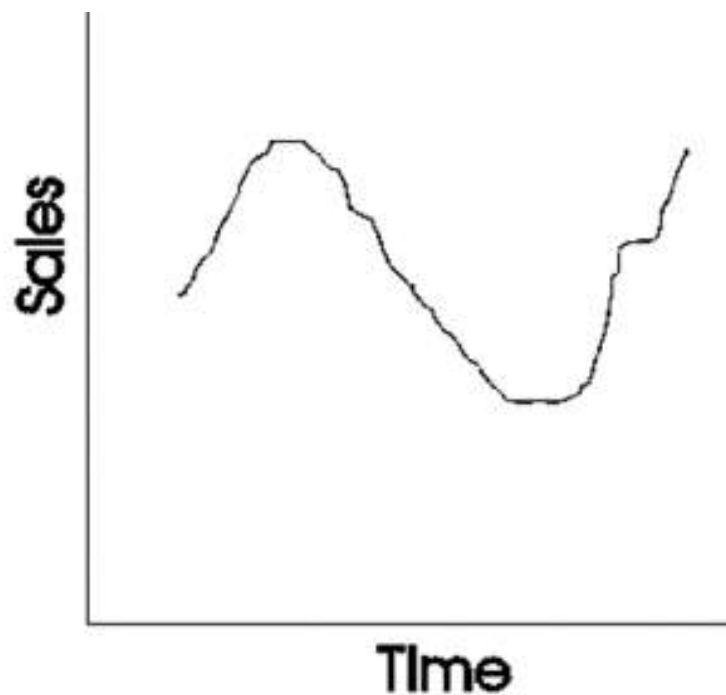
Level: This represents the average value in the series. For instance, if we're looking at monthly sales of a product, the level would be the average monthly sales over a given period.



Trend: This captures any consistent upward or downward movement in the data over time. For a burgeoning product, this might represent a steady increase in sales month over month. Alternatively, a product nearing the end of its life cycle might exhibit a consistent downward trend.

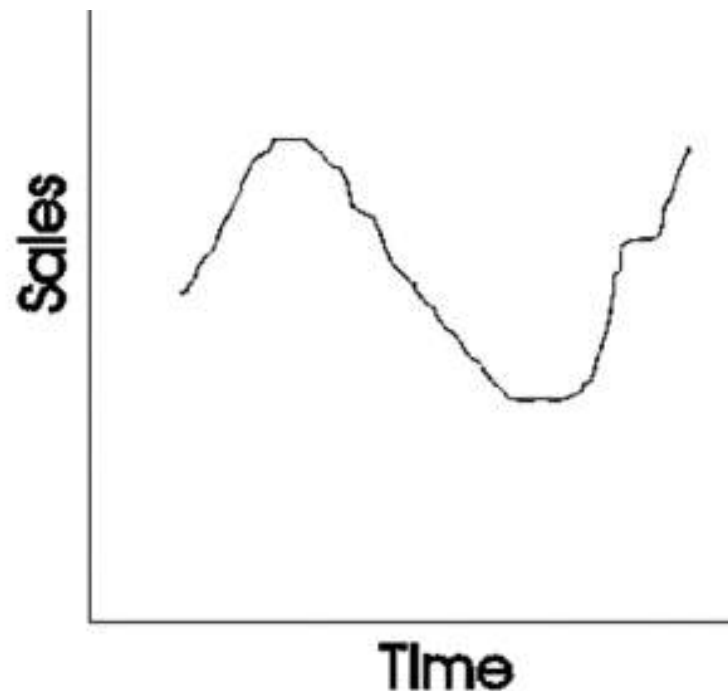


Season: Seasonal components capture regular patterns that repeat over specific intervals. A retailer might observe higher sales every weekend, indicating a weekly seasonal pattern. Ice cream sales might show a seasonal spike every summer, representing an annual seasonality. Electricity utilities might notice a peak in consumption around 2 pm every day, pointing to a daily seasonal pattern.

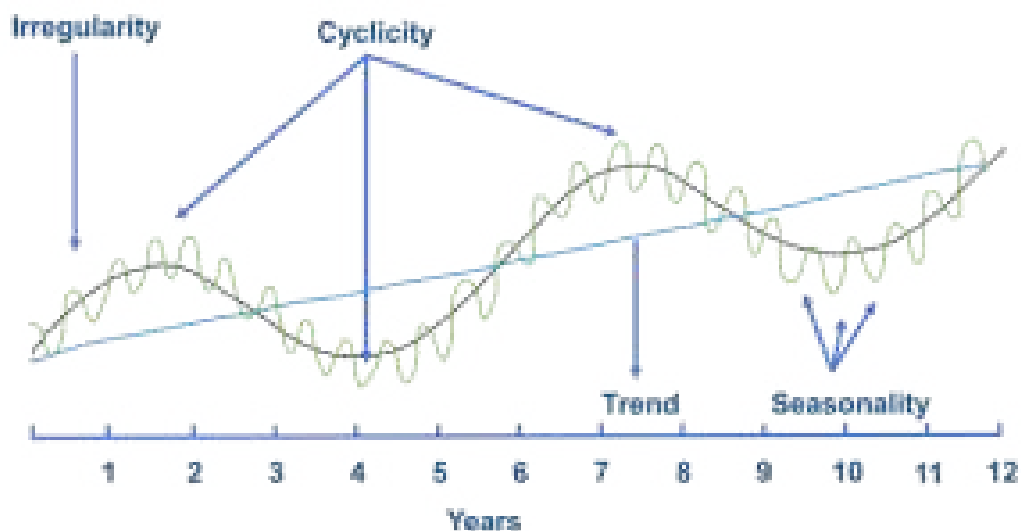


Cycle: Cycles are long-term patterns driven by economic or other broad factors. They don't have a fixed

repetition like seasons but show up as extended periods of rises and falls. For instance, the real estate market might go through cycles of boom and bust over decades, influenced by broader economic conditions.



Time series methods work by first decomposing historical demand into these components. Each component is then forecasted independently, leveraging the inherent patterns and characteristics it exhibits. Once individual forecasts for the level, trend, season, and cycle are generated, they are combined to produce the final forecast.



A few prominent time series methods include:

The Naive Forecast Method: The simplest and most straightforward methods for making predictions or

forecasts. This method is often used as a baseline or reference point in forecasting to evaluate the performance of more complex forecasting models.

The Naive Forecast Method involves making a forecast for a future period based solely on the observed value of the most recent period. In other words, it assumes that future values will be the same as the most recent historical value. Mathematically, the Naive Forecast is represented as:

Naive Forecast for period $t+1$ = Value observed in period t

Example, if the observed sales value (actual) for January is 120 units, then the forecast for February is 120 units.

Moving Averages: This method calculates the average of a set number of past periods to produce the forecast for the next period. It's especially useful for data with no clear trend or seasonal pattern.

Exponential Smoothing: This technique gives different weights to past observations, with more recent data typically receiving more weight. It's adaptable and can handle data with trends and seasonality.

ARIMA (AutoRegressive Integrated Moving Average): A more advanced method, ARIMA models the relationships between an observation and a number of lagged observations.

Each of these methods offers unique advantages and is suited for specific scenarios. The choice of method often hinges on the nature of the data, the forecasting horizon, and the specific challenges posed by the demand pattern.

In the subsequent section, we will delve deeper into two of these methods, specifically focusing on simple moving averages and exponential smoothing, to provide a more detailed understanding of their applications and nuances.

3.4.1.1 Simple Moving Average

The Simple Moving Average (SMA) is a straightforward yet effective time series forecasting method. At its core, the SMA for a given period is calculated by taking the average of the previous 'n' periods. This approach ensures that fluctuations in individual periods are smoothed out, providing a clearer view of underlying trends.

For instance:

- **3-Month Moving Average:** If a retailer recorded sales of 100, 110, and 90 units for January, February, and March respectively, the 3-month moving average forecast for April would be the average of these three months:

$$\frac{(100 + 110 + 90)}{3} = 100 \text{ units}$$
- **4-Month Moving Average:** Using the same example, if we also had a sales figure of 105 units for April, the 4-month moving average forecast for May would be:

$$\frac{(100 + 110 + 90 + 105)}{4} = 101.25 \text{ units}$$
- **5-Month Moving Average:** If May had sales of 95 units, then the 5-month moving average forecast for

June would be:

$$\frac{(100 + 110 + 90 + 105 + 95)}{5} = 100 \text{ units}$$

One of the key considerations when using the SMA method is selecting the appropriate length for the moving average. A longer period, such as a 12-month moving average, will produce a smoother forecast, less sensitive to short-term fluctuations or extreme demand values. This can be particularly beneficial when trying to identify longer-term trends or when the data has occasional outliers. However, it's essential to note that while longer moving averages provide stability, they might be slower to respond to genuine shifts in demand patterns.

In essence, the Simple Moving Average method offers a balance between capturing the inherent variability in data and providing stable forecasts, making it a versatile tool in a forecaster's toolkit.

3.4.1.2 Simple Exponential Smoothing

Simple Exponential Smoothing (SES) is a favored method for time series forecasting, especially when data exhibits no clear trend or seasonality. The essence of SES is to assign exponentially decreasing weights to past observations, ensuring that more recent data points have a more significant influence on the forecast, while older data points have a diminishing impact.

The formula for Simple Exponential Smoothing is given by:

$$F_{t+1} = \alpha \times D_t + (1-\alpha) \times F_t$$

Where:

- F_{t+1} is the forecast for the next period.
- D_t is the actual demand in the current period.
- F_t is the forecast for the current period.
- α is the smoothing factor, a value between 0 and 1.

Example 1:

Suppose a product had a forecasted demand of 100 units for January (F_t). The actual demand for January (D_t) turned out to be 110 units. Using a smoothing factor α of 0.2, the forecast for February (F_{t+1}) would be:

$$F_{t+1} = 0.2 \times 110 + (1-0.2) \times 100$$

$$F_{t+1} = 22 + 80 = 102$$

So, the forecast for February would be 102 units.

Example 2:

Continuing from the previous example, let's say the actual demand for February was 105 units. To forecast the demand for March using the same smoothing factor:

$$F_{t+1} = 0.2 \times 105 + (1-0.2) \times 102$$

$$F_{t+1} = 21 + 81.6 = 102.6$$

Thus, the forecast for March would be approximately 102.6 units.

The key parameter in SES is the smoothing factor, often denoted as α (alpha). This factor determines the sensitivity of the forecast to changes in historical demand:

- When α is 0, the forecast becomes entirely insensitive to historical demand variations. In essence, it becomes a flat line, only considering the initial forecast and ignoring all subsequent data.
- Conversely, when α is 1, the forecast becomes extremely sensitive, relying solely on the most recent demand observation. The forecast will adjust immediately to the last observed value, making it highly reactive to any changes.

For a practical understanding, consider a scenario where a product's demand has been relatively stable but recently started to increase. A higher alpha would quickly adjust the forecast upwards to match this new trend, while a lower alpha would be slower to recognize and adapt to this change.

Selecting the right value for α is crucial. A value too close to 0 might make the forecast too sluggish to adapt to genuine changes in demand, while a value too close to 1 might make it overly reactive to random fluctuations, potentially leading to overcorrections.

In summary, Simple Exponential Smoothing offers a dynamic approach to forecasting, allowing forecasters to control the sensitivity of their predictions to historical data. By tuning the smoothing factor, forecasters can strike a balance between stability and reactivity, ensuring that their forecasts are both accurate and robust.

3.5 METHODS OF FORECASTING ACCURACY

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Accurate forecasting is crucial for effective decision-making in various business contexts. To ensure the reliability of forecasts, it's essential to measure their accuracy against actual outcomes. Several metrics can be employed to gauge the precision of forecasts, each with its own strengths and limitations. In this section, we'll delve into three commonly used accuracy metrics: Bias, Mean Absolute Deviation (MAD), Mean Absolute Percent Error (MAPE) and Mean square error (MSE).

1. **Bias:** Bias measures the average forecast error and indicates whether the forecast is consistently overestimating (positive bias) or underestimating (negative bias) the actual demand.

$$\text{Bias} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{t=1}^n (A_t - F_t)$$

Where:

- F_t is the forecast for period t .
- A_t is the actual demand for period t .
- n is the number of periods.

Example: For three months, the forecasts were 100, 110, and 105 units, and the actual demands were 105, 108, and 104 units, respectively. The bias is calculated as:

$$\text{Bias} = \frac{(105 - 100) + (108 - 110) + (104 - 105)}{3} = \frac{5 - 2 - 1}{3} = \frac{2}{3}$$

This positive bias indicates that, on average, the forecast is slightly underestimating the demand.

Advantages:

- Simple to calculate.
- Provides a clear indication of systematic over or under forecasting.

Disadvantages:

- Doesn't provide insights into the magnitude of errors.

- Positive and negative errors can offset each other, leading to a misleadingly low bias.

2. **Mean Absolute Deviation (MAD):** MAD measures the average magnitude of forecast errors, regardless of their direction.

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{t=1}^n |A_t - F_t|$$

Example: Using the same data as above, the MAD is:

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{|105 - 100| + |108 - 110| + |104 - 105|}{3} = \frac{5 + 2 + 1}{3} = 2.67$$

Advantages:

- Provides a clear measure of the average error magnitude.
- Insensitive to the direction of errors.

Disadvantages:

- Doesn't provide insights into over or under forecasting.
- Can be sensitive to outliers.

3. **Mean Absolute Percent Error (MAPE):** MAPE expresses the forecast errors as a percentage of actual values, providing a relative measure of accuracy.

$$\text{MAPE} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{t=1}^n \left| \frac{A_t - F_t}{A_t} \right| * 100$$

Example: Using the same data, the MAPE is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{MAPE} &= \left(\left| \frac{100 - 105}{105} \right| + \left| \frac{110 - 108}{108} \right| + \left| \frac{105 - 104}{104} \right| \right) \div 3 \times 100\% \\ &= \left(\frac{0.0476 + 0.0185 + 0.0096}{3} \right) \times 100\% = 2.86\% \end{aligned}$$

Advantages:

- Provides a relative measure of error, making it easier to compare across different scales or products.
- Useful for benchmarking and performance tracking.

Disadvantages:

- Can be skewed by periods with very low actual values.

- Not always suitable for situations where actual demand can be zero.

4. Mean Squared error (MSE):

$$MSE = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{t=1}^n (A_t - F_t)^2$$

Where:

- MSE is the Mean squared error
- F_t is the forecast for period t .
- A_t is the actual demand for period t .
- n is the number of periods.

The Mean Squared Error (MSE) is a widely used metric in various fields, including statistics, machine learning, and forecasting, due to several advantages:

Emphasis on Larger Errors: Squaring the errors gives more weight to larger errors, which can be advantageous when you want to penalize significant deviations from the true values. This aligns with the intuition that large errors are often more costly or important in many applications.

Statistical Properties: MSE is related to various statistical concepts, such as variance and bias. This makes it interpretable from a statistical perspective, which is important in many scientific and research applications.

Universality: MSE can be used in a wide range of applications, from simple linear regression to complex machine learning models. Its universality makes it a versatile metric for evaluating forecasting accuracy.

While MSE is suitable for measuring accuracy, it does not provide information about the bias in forecasts, which is why it is often used in conjunction with other metrics for a more comprehensive evaluation.

Example: For three months, the forecasts were 100, 110, and 105 units, and the actual demands were 105, 108, and 104 units, respectively. The MSE is calculated as:

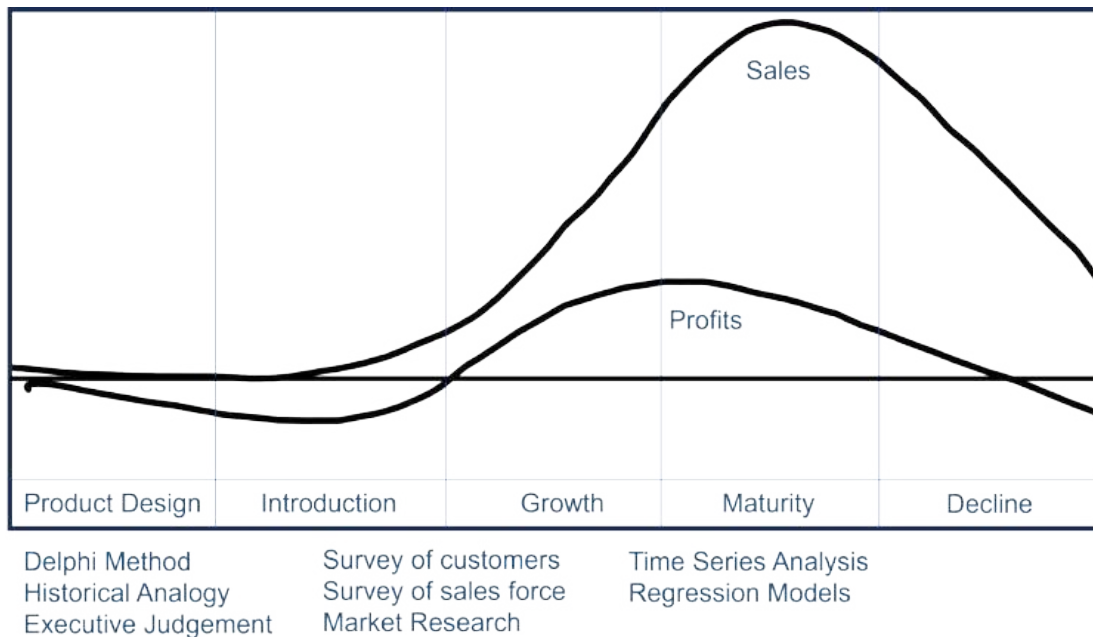
$$\begin{aligned} MSE &= \frac{(100 - 105)^2 + (110 - 108)^2 + (105 - 104)^2}{3} \\ &= \frac{25 + 4 + 1}{3} = 10 \end{aligned}$$

In conclusion, while each of these metrics offers valuable insights into forecast accuracy, it's essential to consider their individual strengths and limitations. Often, a combination of these metrics provides the most comprehensive view of forecast performance.

3.6 PRODUCT LIFE CYCLE VIEW OF FORECASTING

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The forecasting graph depicts the general life cycle of a product through its various phases and an appropriate forecasting method.



3.7 FORECASTING IN THE SUPPLY CHAIN

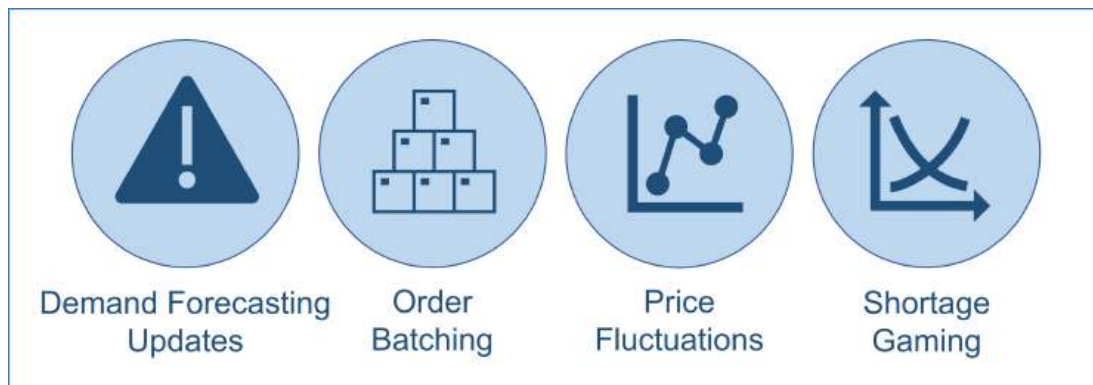
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Having delved into the intricacies of forecasting methods and their accuracy measures, it's evident that when firms diligently adhere to the forecasting process and employ the right methods, they stand to benefit from higher product availability and optimized inventory levels. This balance is the hallmark of efficient operations. Yet, when we zoom out and consider the broader supply chain, a paradox emerges. Even if every entity within the supply chain forecasts independently and accurately, the system as a whole can still encounter significant disruptions. One such notorious disruption is the 'Bullwhip Effect'. In this section, we'll unravel the Bullwhip Effect, understand its origins, and explore strategies to mitigate its impact.

3.7.1 The Bullwhip Effect and Its Causes

The Bullwhip Effect is a phenomenon in supply chain management where order variances amplify as one moves upstream in the supply chain. Despite the average demand remaining consistent, the variability in demand escalates as we traverse from downstream to upstream entities. This means that while the end customer might experience the least variation in demand, the upstream suppliers face the most significant fluctuations. These amplified variations make forecasting increasingly challenging and inaccurate for entities farther from the end consumer.

Several factors contribute to the emergence of the Bullwhip Effect:



1. **Demand Forecasting Updates:** Each entity in the supply chain makes forecasts based on the demand from its immediate downstream partner. Small errors or changes at the customer level can get magnified as they propagate upstream, leading to larger discrepancies in forecasts for suppliers.
2. **Order Batching:** Companies might not order products continuously but in batches. This practice can

introduce variations in order sizes and frequencies, further distorting the perceived demand.

3. **Price Fluctuations:** Promotional discounts and other pricing strategies can lead to a surge in demand during the sale period and a subsequent drop afterward. These oscillations in ordering patterns can exacerbate the Bullwhip Effect.
4. **Shortage Gaming:** In anticipation of stock shortages, retailers might order more than needed, expecting only partial fulfillment. This behavior sends inflated demand signals to the manufacturer.

The consequences of the Bullwhip Effect are multifaceted. The increased variability in demand, coupled with inaccurate forecasting, often results in reduced product availability for the end consumer. Simultaneously, upstream suppliers, grappling with these amplified fluctuations, might hold excessive inventory, leading to increased holding costs. The combined effect is a supply chain that's both cost-inefficient and less responsive to the actual needs of the market.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=386#oembed-1>

Recognizing and understanding the causes and implications of the Bullwhip Effect is crucial for supply chain entities aiming to enhance coordination, reduce costs, and improve service levels.

3.7.2 Collaborative Planning, Forecasting, and Replenishment (CPFR)

CPFR is a collaborative approach where manufacturers and retailers work together to forecast and replenish inventory. In the retail industry, CPFR has been transformative. Instead of working in isolation, the manufacturer and retailer share tasks and responsibilities:

- **Joint Business Planning:** Both parties discuss and set mutual business goals and strategies.
- **Sales Forecasting:** Based on shared data, a joint sales forecast is developed.
- **Order Forecasting:** Predictions are made about upcoming orders based on the sales forecast.
- **Inventory Replenishment:** Inventory levels are adjusted based on the order forecast.

By sharing data and responsibilities, CPFR reduces the layers of distortion in demand information, minimizing the Bullwhip Effect. The result is a more synchronized supply chain, with better product availability and optimized inventory levels.

3.7.3 Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP)

Relating back to the silo effect discussed in Chapter 1, organizations often face challenges when different departments operate in isolation, not sharing crucial data. This lack of inter-departmental communication can severely hamper forecasting and planning. For instance, if the marketing department launches a promotion without informing the supply chain department, it can lead to stockouts.

S&OP is a coordinated approach to business planning that integrates sales, marketing, and supply chain functions. The process typically involves several phases:

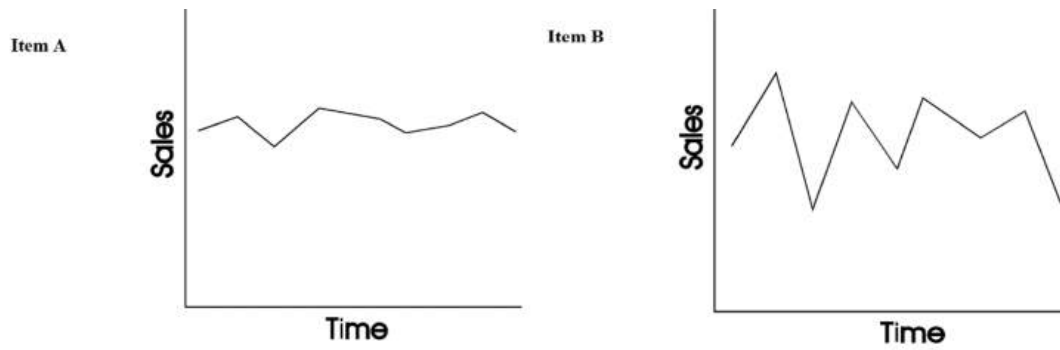


- **Demand Planning:** Sales and marketing teams forecast demand based on historical data, market trends, and promotional activities.
- **Supply Planning:** The supply chain team assesses the resources (like materials and production capacity) needed to meet the forecasted demand.
- **Pre S&OP:** Cross-functional teams review and adjust the demand and supply plans, ensuring alignment.
- **S&OP Meeting:** Senior management reviews the consolidated plan, making final decisions on production, inventory, and procurement.

By fostering collaboration between departments, S&OP ensures that the entire organization is aligned in its objectives, leading to more accurate forecasts, better resource allocation, and improved customer service.

An example: Implementation of Forecasting in Inventory Management

Consider only two items A and B whose demand are shown below; note both items have random fluctuations only around more or less the same average.



- If you had a choice between managing items A and B which one would you choose? and why?
- Which of these two items will have a small MAD?
- For which item should we keep a high level of “safety stock” ?
- Is there a relationship between MAD and Safety Stock?

3.8 SPECIAL TOPICS IN FORECASTING

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

As we journey through the intricacies of forecasting, we've explored a plethora of methods and collaborative techniques. However, to truly excel as forecasters, there are two pivotal areas that warrant our attention: understanding modern forecasting methods and mastering the art of forecasting new products.

3.8.1 Modern Forecasting Methods

In the dynamic intersection of business and technology, forecasting methods have seen remarkable advancements. Traditional methods, while still prevalent and valuable, are being complemented by cutting-edge techniques rooted in neural networks, machine learning (ML), and artificial intelligence (AI). These modern methods harness vast data and sophisticated algorithms to offer potentially more accurate predictions.



Neural
Networks



Machine
Learning (ML)



Artificial
Intelligence (AI)

Neural Networks: Neural networks are computing systems inspired by the human brain's structure, consisting of layers of interconnected nodes (or “neurons”) that process information. They excel at recognizing patterns in large datasets, making them invaluable for complex forecasting tasks.

Example: Consider a global fashion retailer trying to predict the demand for a new line of clothing. A neural network could analyze not just previous sales data, but also patterns in online search trends, social media

mentions of related fashion terms, and even images from fashion shows. By training on this diverse set of data, the neural network can identify nuanced patterns and trends that might be missed by traditional methods.

Machine Learning (ML): ML, a subset of AI, enables computers to learn from data. Instead of explicit programming, an ML model trains itself using data to make predictions. In forecasting, ML can sift through historical data, pinpoint patterns, and refine its predictions as more data is fed into it.

Example: An e-commerce platform might use ML to forecast sales of a particular product. The model could consider past sales, user reviews, website traffic, and even the time users spend on a particular product page. Over time, as it gathers more data points like seasonal shopping trends or promotional events, the ML model refines its predictions.

Artificial Intelligence (AI): AI, a broader concept encompassing ML, aims to create machines mimicking human intelligence. In forecasting, AI can amalgamate various data sources, analyze them, and even adapt its forecasting strategy based on changing variables.

Example: A supermarket chain could use AI to forecast the demand for perishable goods. The AI system might factor in past sales data, weather forecasts (as people might buy more ice cream on hot days), local events, and even data from news sources (like a health scare related to a product).

The primary advantage of these modern methods is their capacity to process vast data and intricate interrelationships, which might be overwhelming for traditional methods. However, they also demand more sophisticated infrastructure and expertise. And, crucially, their predictions hinge on the quality of the data they're trained on. Overall, the realms of neural networks, ML, and AI might seem intricate, but their potential in forecasting is vast. As technology continues its rapid evolution, these methods will likely become indispensable in the forecaster's toolkit, driving more nuanced and informed business decisions.

3.8.2 New Product Forecasting

A common assumption in forecasting is that new products, by virtue of being “new”, lack historical data, pushing us towards qualitative forecasting methods. However, this isn't always the case. New products can be categorized into four distinct types:

1. **Extension:** Refers to a new product or service based on an existing one. An example would be a tech company releasing an upgraded version of its flagship smartphone.
2. **New Geography:** Pertains to a product or service launched in a new market. A food company introducing a product line tailored for the Chinese market exemplifies this.
3. **New to the Company:** Denotes a product or service that a company introduces for the first time. A software firm venturing into cloud computing services would fall under this category.
4. **New to the World:** Represents truly innovative products or services that are unprecedented. The debut of the first smartphone is a classic example of a new-to-the-world product.

It's crucial to note that it's primarily the "new to the world" products that genuinely lack historical data. For the other categories, while the product might be "new" in some sense, there's often related data that can be leveraged for forecasting.

3.9 CONCLUSION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Forecasting, as we've journeyed through this chapter, emerges as a dynamic and evolving field. With the advent of technology and the increasing complexity of global supply chains, the tools and techniques available for forecasting are rapidly advancing. From traditional methods to cutting-edge neural networks and machine learning models, the arsenal for a forecaster is richer than ever.

However, as we've seen, the essence of good forecasting isn't just about employing sophisticated models. It's about understanding the context, ensuring the quality of data, and collaborating effectively across the supply chain. The bullwhip effect, for instance, underscores the importance of collaboration and the pitfalls of isolated decision-making. The chapter has also highlighted the significance of continuous learning and adaptation. As businesses evolve and markets change, the assumptions underpinning our forecasts might need revisiting. This is where the importance of measuring forecast accuracy and being open to feedback comes into play.

Moreover, the chapter has emphasized the importance of collaboration, both within an organization and with external partners. The silo effect, as discussed in Chapter 1, can be a significant impediment to effective forecasting. Techniques like Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP) offer a structured approach to break down these silos and ensure that all departments are aligned in their objectives and strategies.

In conclusion, forecasting is not just a technical exercise but a blend of art and science. It requires a deep understanding of the business context, a keen sense of the market dynamics, and a willingness to learn and adapt. For students embarking on a career in supply chain management or any business-related field, mastering the art and science of forecasting will undoubtedly be a valuable asset. As the future unfolds, with its myriad uncertainties and opportunities, being able to anticipate and prepare for it will be the hallmark of successful businesses and professionals. So, as you step into the world of business, carry forward the insights and knowledge from this chapter, and embrace the exciting challenges and opportunities that forecasting presents!

3.10 CHAPTER 3 ASSESSMENT

Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section 3.1: Introduction

- What

2. Section 3.2: Demand Forecasting Process

- What is a

3. Section 3.3: Qualitative Methods

- How

4. Section 3.4: Quantitative Methods

- What

5. Section 3.5: Methods of Forecasting Accuracy

- How

6. Section 3.6: Product Life Cycle View of Forecasting

- What is a

7. Section 3.7: Forecasting in the Supply Chain

- What is a

8. Section 7.8: Special Topics in Forecasting

- What is a

9. Section 7.9: Conclusion

What is a

Situational Questions:

1. Situation 1:

- Question:

2. Situation 2:

- Question:

Chapter 3 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=771#h5p-8>

PART IV

CHAPTER 4: SOURCING AND PURCHASING

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the realm of supply chain management, purchasing stands as a cornerstone that can significantly influence a company's bottom line and its competitive positioning in the market. Effective purchasing strategies are not just about acquiring goods or services at the lowest possible cost; they encompass a broader spectrum, including building strong supplier relationships, ensuring timely deliveries, and optimizing inventory levels. When executed correctly, these strategies can lead to substantial cost savings, increased operational efficiency, and a sustainable competitive advantage.



Consider the case of **Walmart**, one of the world's largest retailers. Walmart's meteoric rise in the retail sector can be attributed, in part, to its adept purchasing strategies. By harnessing its immense buying power, Walmart has consistently negotiated lower prices with its suppliers. This not only translates to significant savings for the company but also allows it to pass on these savings to customers through its "Everyday Low Prices" promise. Such a strategy has not only bolstered Walmart's profitability but has also cemented its position as a market leader, offering value to its customers.



On a different continent, **Toyota**, the Japanese automotive giant, showcases the power of innovative purchasing through its Just-In-Time (JIT) approach. Instead of stockpiling vast amounts of inventory, Toyota's JIT strategy ensures that parts are delivered precisely when needed for production. This minimizes inventory costs, reduces waste, and allows for a more agile response to market fluctuations. By fostering robust relationships with its suppliers and ensuring the timely delivery of parts, Toyota has set industry benchmarks in operational efficiency and cost management.

In this and the subsequent chapter, we will delve deep into the nuances of purchasing. In this chapter, our focus will be on the routine and transactional aspects of purchasing. This encompasses the placing of orders, ensuring the receipt of materials that meet the required quality standards, timely payments to suppliers, and other day-to-day operations integral to the purchasing function.

In the next chapter, we will shift our lens to strategic sourcing. This involves making pivotal decisions such as determining which components to manufacture in-house versus what to procure externally, identifying the characteristics of ideal suppliers, and deciding on the optimal locations and countries from which to source. Strategic sourcing is about making long-term decisions that align with a company's broader business goals and competitive strategy.

4.2 PURCHASE TO PAY

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Purchasing operations and the manner in which purchasing transactions are executed play a pivotal role in all organizations. The significance of this process is underscored when we consider the potential vulnerabilities that can arise if not managed meticulously. For instance, between 2013 and 2015, tech giants Meta (formerly Facebook) and Google fell victim to a sophisticated invoice fraud, losing more than \$100 million combined. The fraud involved impersonation of a known hardware manufacturer, leading to the companies being deceived with fake invoices and making substantial erroneous payments.

Such incidents involving Meta and Google are not isolated cases. The FBI's Internet Crime Complaint Center has issued advisories indicating a staggering 1,300 percent increase in such Business Email Compromise frauds since January 2015, estimating that companies have been defrauded of more than \$3 billion in recent years.

These incidents underscore the importance of a robust purchasing operations process. At the heart of these operations lies the **Purchase to Pay** (P2P) process. Typical concerns associated with an ineffective P2P process include:

- **Incorrect orders:** Companies may buy too much of components that they do not need and also not buy what they need.
- **Late or Incorrect Payments:** Invoices might be paid late or inaccurately, potentially damaging relationships with suppliers and incurring late fees or penalties.
- **Duplicate Payments:** There's a risk of making duplicate payments, which not only wastes money but can also tarnish the company's reputation.
- **Fraudulent Invoices:** Companies might end up paying fraudulent invoices, leading to financial losses and reputational damage.
- **Lack of Spending Insight:** Without a streamlined P2P process, a company might lack a clear understanding of its spending patterns, making it challenging to control costs and formulate informed budgeting decisions.
- **Supply Chain Vulnerabilities:** A poor grasp of the P2P process can make a company more susceptible to supply chain disruptions due to a lack of understanding of its supplier relationships and the associated risks.

This process is not just a series of transactional steps but is a critical operational flow that involves multiple organizational functions. For the P2P process to function effectively, there needs to be a seamless data flow

between departments. This ensures that every stakeholder, from the procurement team to the finance department, has access to accurate and timely information. Such inter-departmental coordination is vital for avoiding discrepancies, ensuring timely payments, and maintaining healthy supplier relationships.

Given its significance, it's imperative to delve deep into the intricacies of the P2P process, understanding each step, the challenges that might arise, and the best practices to ensure its smooth functioning. In the following sections, we will explore these details, providing a comprehensive overview of the Purchase to Pay process.

4.2.1 Step 1: Generation of Purchase Requisition

The **Purchase to Pay** (P2P) process commences with the generation of a purchase requisition. A **purchase requisition** is typically generated by the user department that identifies a need for specific goods or services. For instance, the IT department might generate a requisition for new computer systems, or the marketing team might request promotional materials for an upcoming campaign. In a manufacturing setup, the production department might raise a requisition for specific parts or raw materials that are running low or are required for a new production batch.

In scenarios involving raw materials, the generation of the requisition might not always be manual. Automated material planning systems, equipped with algorithms that monitor stock levels and forecast demand, can trigger the generation of purchase requisitions when stock levels dip below a certain threshold. We will delve deeper into these automated systems in Chapter 8, which focuses on inventory management, and in subsequent chapters that explore the integration of technology in supply chain management.



Before a purchase requisition is forwarded to the purchasing department, it undergoes an approval process.

This approval is not merely a formality; it's a critical checkpoint that ensures alignment with organizational budgets. The approval process ensures that the requested purchase is within the budgetary constraints set for the department or the specific project. In this way, the P2P process is intricately linked to the organization's budgeting system, ensuring fiscal discipline and preventing potential overspend.

Purchase requisitions also play a pivotal role in spend analysis. By consistently initiating purchases with requisitions, organizations can track and categorize their spending. This data can be invaluable for identifying spending patterns of departments and making informed budgetary decisions in the future. For instance, if an organization notices a recurring monthly requisition for office supplies from one department, they can investigate the cause. This is why it's imperative that all purchase orders, regardless of their size or frequency, initiate with a well-documented requisition.

4.2.2 Supplier Selection

Once a purchase requisition receives approval, it is forwarded to the purchasing department. In contemporary firms, this transfer of documents predominantly occurs electronically, ensuring speed and accuracy. However, in many small and medium-sized businesses, especially those without advanced IT infrastructure, the transfer might still involve physical documents, requiring manual handling and verification.

For standard items or recurring purchases, the purchasing department typically consults an **Approved Supplier List (ASL)**. The ASL, as the name suggests, is a curated list of suppliers who have been vetted and approved to supply specific materials or services to the organization. In the past, this might have been a physical ledger or file, but in today's digital age, most firms maintain this list electronically, allowing for easier updates, searches, and integrations with other systems.



The existence of an Approved Supplier List is crucial for several reasons:

- **Quality Assurance:** Suppliers on this list have been pre-evaluated for their ability to meet the company's quality standards.
- **Efficiency:** It speeds up the purchasing process as the purchasing department doesn't have to vet suppliers from scratch for every purchase.
- **Risk Mitigation:** By dealing with approved suppliers, companies can reduce risks related to fraud, supply chain disruptions, or subpar goods and services.

Once the appropriate suppliers are identified from the ASL, the purchasing department sends out a Request for Quotation (RFQ). It's worth noting the distinction between different types of requests:

- **RFQ** (Request for Quotation): This is a formal request for suppliers to submit a price quote for specific goods or services. It's typically used when the needs are clearly defined.
- **RFP** (Request for Proposal): Used when the solution to a business problem is not clear-cut. Suppliers propose their solutions, along with pricing.
- **RFI** (Request for Information): This is a preliminary step used when a company is exploring potential suppliers or services. It's more about gathering information than seeking specific quotes. **short this

Suppliers respond to the RFQ by submitting their quotes. The purchasing department then undertakes the crucial task of comparing these quotes. At a foundational level, quotes are compared based on landed costs—the comprehensive cost of receiving the goods at the buyer's facility. This encompasses the base price of the goods, transportation charges, taxes, duties, and any other associated costs. However, a more holistic approach involves considering the life-cycle cost, which accounts for the total expenditure associated with a product or service over its entire life span, from acquisition to disposal. While landed costs provide an immediate picture, life-cycle costs offer a long-term perspective, factoring in maintenance, operational costs, and even disposal or resale value. We will delve deeper into the intricacies of landed and life-cycle costs in subsequent sections.

After a thorough comparison and evaluation, the purchasing department finalizes its decision and places an order with the chosen supplier, marking the next step in the P2P process.

4.2.3 Purchase Order

Once the supplier selection process is complete, the purchasing department proceeds to create a **Purchase Order** (PO). A Purchase Order is a formal document issued by the buyer to the supplier, indicating types, quantities, and agreed prices for products or services. It serves as a legally binding contract, authorizing the supplier to deliver the specified products or services and the buyer to pay for them.

Major Entries in a Purchase Order:

- **PO Number:** A unique identification number assigned to each purchase order, facilitating tracking and reference.
- **Supplier Details:** Information about the supplier, including name, address, contact details, and any other relevant identification.
- **Buyer Details:** Information about the purchasing company or department, including billing and shipping addresses.
- **Date of Issue:** The date on which the PO is issued.
- **Delivery Date:** The agreed-upon date by which the products or services should be delivered.
- **Item Details:** A detailed list of the products or services being purchased, including descriptions, quantities, unit prices, and total prices.
- **Terms and Conditions:** Any specific terms and conditions related to the purchase, such as payment terms, delivery terms (e.g., FOB, CIF), warranties, or penalties for late delivery.
- **Authorized Signatory:** The signature or digital authorization of the person in the purchasing department who has the authority to commit to the purchase.

Types of Purchase Orders:

- **Standard Purchase Order:** This is the most common type of PO and is used for routine, one-time purchases. It details the specific items, quantities, and prices agreed upon. *Example: A company orders 50 office chairs for a new branch they are setting up. The order is specific with a one-time requirement, detailing the model, color, and price of the chairs.*
- **Blanket Purchase Order:** Used for repeat orders or when there's an ongoing relationship with a supplier. It sets the terms and conditions for multiple deliveries over a period of time but might not specify exact item quantities or delivery dates upfront. *Example: An automobile manufacturer anticipates the need for 300 tons of steel over the next quarter for car production. While the exact quantities and delivery dates will be determined based on production schedules, the blanket order sets the terms, pricing, and overall quantity for the entire quarter.*
- **Contract Purchase Order:** This type of PO is tied to a larger contract agreement and is used for complex purchases, often involving multiple stakeholders, detailed specifications, or phased deliveries. *Example: A city's municipal corporation enters into a contract with a technology firm to upgrade its IT infrastructure over two years. The contract purchase order outlines the specifications, milestones, and payment terms, with deliveries and installations phased over the contract duration.*

Once the appropriate type of Purchase Order is created, it is essential to send it to the selected supplier promptly. However, the process doesn't end with merely issuing the PO. It's crucial for the buyer to receive a

confirmation from the supplier, signaling their acceptance of the terms outlined in the Purchase Order. This step is not just a procedural formality; in many legal systems, the purchase contract is not deemed to be finalized until the supplier explicitly acknowledges and accepts the PO. This acceptance ensures that both parties are on the same page regarding the terms, quantities, prices, and delivery schedules, minimizing potential disputes or misunderstandings down the line. It's a testament to the importance of clear communication and mutual agreement in the procurement process.

4.2.4 Material Delivery

Material delivery is a pivotal phase in the Purchase to Pay process. While the creation of a Purchase Order sets the expectations for the transaction, the material delivery phase ensures that these expectations are met in practice. For a Standard Purchase Order, the delivery schedule is typically outlined within the PO itself, specifying when the buyer expects to receive the goods or services. In the case of a Blanket Purchase Order, while the overarching terms and conditions are set, a separate material delivery schedule is often established, detailing specific delivery dates based on evolving needs and production schedules.

However, the buyer's responsibility doesn't conclude with merely setting these delivery dates. Proactive follow-up with suppliers is essential to ensure adherence to the agreed-upon delivery timelines. Delays or inconsistencies in delivery can have cascading effects on production schedules, inventory management, and overall operational efficiency.

Upon dispatch of the goods, the supplier generates an **invoice**, which typically accompanies the material during delivery. This invoice is a detailed document capturing essential information such as:

- Description of the material or service
- Quantity delivered
- Cost of the material or service
- Applicable taxes and other charges
- Reference to the associated Purchase Order

Accuracy in the invoice is paramount. As we will explore in the subsequent sections on the three-way match process, any discrepancies between the PO, the invoice, and the actual goods received can lead to complications, delays, and potential financial discrepancies.

Upon the arrival of the material and the associated invoice at the buyer's facility, the material stores or the inward administration department undertakes an initial inspection. This visual check serves to verify the quantity and condition of the goods. Following this inspection, a **Goods Receipt Note (GRN)** is generated. The GRN serves multiple purposes:

- It confirms that the quantity of the material received aligns with the quantity mentioned in the invoice.

- It provides a record of the physical condition of the goods, noting any damages, discrepancies, or potential quality issues.

Once the GRN is generated and the material is deemed satisfactory, the next steps involve inventorying the material in the material stores, delivering it immediately to the production line if required, or sending the material for further inspection. Assuming the material meets the required quality standards, it is now available for use in the organization's operations.

4.2.5 Making Payment

In the realm of business transactions, there are various mechanisms through which payments can be made, each tailored to the specific dynamics of the buyer-supplier relationship and the nature of the transaction.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=292#oembed-1>

Some dominant suppliers, especially those with a unique product or significant market power, might demand an advance payment before delivering goods or services. In other scenarios, especially for international transactions or when dealing with new business partners, a Letter of Credit (LC) might be required. An LC is a bank guarantee that ensures a buyer's payment will be made to the seller, provided that the terms of the sales contract are met. Other payment mechanisms include bank transfers, electronic funds transfers, and even digital or cryptocurrency payments in some modern contexts.

However, the most prevalent form of payment in business-to-business transactions is trade credit. Under this arrangement, suppliers allow buying businesses a specified period, post-delivery, to make the payment. For instance, terms like "Net 30" or "Net 60" indicate that the buyer has 30 or 60 days, respectively, from the invoice date to make the payment. Such arrangements benefit buyers by providing them with flexibility in managing their cash flows.

Upon receipt of goods or services, buying businesses record an "accounts payable" entry, signifying an obligation to pay the supplier. The payment is then planned to align with the trade credit due date. This payment process is often facilitated through a procedure known as the three-way match. This involves verifying and matching three essential documents:

- The Purchase Order (PO) – which outlines what was ordered.

Purchase Order		BUSINESS NAME
		STREET ADDRESS CITY, ST ZIP CODE PHONE NUMBER
INVOICE TO: Recipient Name Company Name Street Address City, ST ZIP Code Phone: Phone		DELIVER TO: Recipient Name Company Name Street Address City, ST ZIP Code Phone: Phone

+

PRODUCT CODE	QUANTITY	DESCRIPTION	UNIT COST	TOTAL COST
1112	1	Hennat	99.99	99.99

SUBTOTAL	99.99	
SALES TAX	4.99	
SHIPPING & HANDLING	0.00	
TOTAL DUE	104.98	

Credit Card Details
 Card Number: _____
 Expiration Date: _____

THANK YOU FOR YOUR BUSINESS!

- The Goods Receipt Note (GRN) – which confirms what was received.

Goods Received Note						
Supplier: _____			Date: _____			
Order #: _____			Delivery Location: _____			
	Items	Size	Price	Order Quantity	Delivered Quantity	Comments
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						

Order Received By: _____
 Order Checked By: _____

- The Invoice – which details what is being charged.

Company Name		INVOICE	
Street Address: City, ST ZIP Code Phone: Phone Fax: Fax		INVOICE # 100 DATE: DATE	
TO: Recipient Name Company Name Street Address: City, ST ZIP Code Phone: Phone		SHIP TO: Recipient Name Company Name Street Address: City, ST ZIP Code Phone: Phone	
COMMENTS OR SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS			

DATE ORDERED	P.O. NUMBER	REQUISITION#	SHIPPED VIA	P.O.B. POINT	TERMS
					Due on receipt

QUANTITY	DESCRIPTION	UNIT PRICE	TOTAL
1 Unit	Widget	88.00	88.00
SUBTOTAL			88.00
SALES TAX			4.00
SHIPPING & HANDLING			2.00
TOTAL DUE			94.00

Checks payable to Company Name
 Contact Name, Phone, Email with questions

THANK YOU FOR YOUR BUSINESS!

A robust three-way match process offers several advantages:

- **Minimization of Invoice Frauds:** By ensuring that the invoice matches both the PO and the GRN, businesses can significantly reduce the risk of paying for goods not ordered or received.
- **Accurate Financial Reporting:** Ensures that financial obligations are correctly recorded and settled.
- **Enhanced Supplier Relationships:** Timely and accurate payments foster trust and can lead to better terms in future transactions.

However, the accuracy of these three documents is paramount. Even minor discrepancies between them can complicate the payment process, leading to delays, disputes, and potential financial implications. Ensuring precision in each document and during the matching process is crucial. Typically, the responsibility of conducting the three-way match and processing payments falls on the accounts payable department, underscoring their critical role in the procurement process.

4.3 DIGITIZATION OF PROCUREMENT

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The traditional Purchase to Pay (P2P) process, foundational to many businesses, is fraught with challenges:

- Manual Processes: Traditional P2P often involves manual data entry, leading to potential errors and inefficiencies. Such errors can result in wrong materials being ordered or even the right materials but in incorrect quantities.
- Delayed Transactions: Physical document exchanges can cause delays in order processing and payments. These delays can lead to materials arriving late, disrupting production schedules and potentially leading to missed market opportunities or contractual penalties.
- Limited Visibility: It's challenging to have real-time visibility into the status of orders, deliveries, and payments. This lack of transparency can result in stockouts, overstocking, or even ordering materials that are already in inventory.
- Data Analysis Difficulties: With data scattered across various physical documents, deriving insights from purchasing data is cumbersome and often inaccurate. This can lead to decisions being made without a clear understanding of the data, resulting in missed savings opportunities, excessive dependence on a particular region or supplier, or even breaches in compliance with regulatory or contractual obligations.
- Increased Overheads: The manual nature of traditional P2P means that companies often need to employ a larger workforce in departments like accounts payable, leading to higher operational costs.

Digitization offers a solution to most of these challenges, streamlining processes, enhancing visibility, and enabling data-driven decision-making.

The digitization of procurement primarily encompasses two areas:

1. E-procurement
2. Spend analytics

4.3.1 E-Procurement



E-procurement refers to the electronic management and conduct of procurement activities over the internet. By leveraging technology, e-procurement transforms the traditional P2P process, making it more efficient, transparent, and accurate. Here's how:

Automated Purchase Requisitions: Instead of manually filling out forms, users can submit requisitions electronically, reducing errors and speeding up approvals.

Electronic Document Exchanges: Purchase orders, invoices, and other essential documents are exchanged electronically, ensuring faster transactions and real-time tracking.

Supplier Portals: Suppliers can update their product catalogs, provide real-time stock availability, and even confirm order receipts through dedicated portals, enhancing communication and collaboration.

Integrated Systems: E-procurement solutions can integrate with other enterprise systems like ERP or inventory management, ensuring seamless data flow and reducing data redundancies.

One standout feature of e-procurement is **Catalogue Purchasing**. For frequently ordered standard items, digital catalogues are created. These catalogues list items with pre-negotiated rates. Users can directly order from these catalogues, bypassing the detailed P2P process, ensuring adherence to negotiated rates, and speeding up procurement. Initiatives like cataloguing empower purchasing professionals to concentrate on key, expensive, and strategic items, liberating them from the task of managing low-cost and non-strategic items. For procurement professionals to truly excel, driving such automation initiatives and maintaining a high level of focus on strategic items is paramount.

4.3.2 Spend Analytics



Spend analytics involves collecting, cleansing, classifying, and analyzing expenditure data to reduce costs, improve efficiency, and monitor compliance. With digitized procurement data, businesses can derive actionable insights from their spending patterns, driving strategic decisions and fostering continuous improvement in procurement operations. Possible applications for e-procurement include:

- **Identify Savings Opportunities:** By analyzing purchase data, companies can identify suppliers with whom they have significant leverage and can negotiate better terms or bulk discounts.
- **Monitor Supplier Performance:** Data can reveal suppliers who frequently delay deliveries or whose products have higher defect rates.
- **Forecast Spend:** By analyzing past spending patterns, businesses can forecast future expenditure, aiding in budgeting and financial planning.
- **Ensure Compliance:** Ensure that purchases adhere to company policies and negotiated contract terms.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=294#oembed-1>

In essence, while e-procurement streamlines and optimizes the procurement process, spend analytics ensures

that the data generated from these processes is put to use, driving strategic decisions and fostering continuous improvement in procurement operations.

4.4 SUPPLIER DEVELOPMENT

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the realm of procurement, ensuring timely and cost-effective material acquisition is just one side of the coin. The flip side, equally crucial, is fostering a long-term relationship with suppliers that emphasizes continuous improvement in both quality and cost. This dual approach is encapsulated in the concept of supplier development.

Supplier development encompasses a range of activities aimed at improving supplier performance and capabilities to meet the buying company's short-term and long-term supply needs. Some of the key components of supplier development include:

- **Supplier Evaluation:** Regularly assessing supplier performance to identify areas of improvement.
- **Supplier Training:** Offering training programs to suppliers to enhance their capabilities.
- **Joint Business Plans:** Collaborating with suppliers to create mutual growth strategies.
- **Cost Management Initiatives:** Working with suppliers to identify cost-saving opportunities.
- **Technology Exchange:** Sharing technological advancements with suppliers to improve product quality or reduce costs.
- **Performance Feedback:** Providing regular feedback to suppliers on their performance to drive improvements.

Of these components, we'll delve deeper into supplier rating and supplier certification.

4.4.1 Supplier Rating



Think of supplier rating as a report card for suppliers. It's an essential tool that provides a quantitative and qualitative assessment of a supplier's performance over a specific period, typically quarterly. The rating process involves evaluating suppliers on various facets:

- Price: Are the supplier's prices competitive? Do they offer value for money?
- Quality: Does the supplier consistently meet or exceed quality standards?
- Delivery: How reliable is the supplier in delivering on time?
- Flexibility: Can the supplier adapt to changes in demand or specifications?
- Service: How responsive and supportive is the supplier in addressing concerns or issues?

To ensure a comprehensive evaluation, buying firms often assign weights to these facets based on their importance. For instance, a firm might prioritize quality over price for critical components. After evaluating each facet, a composite score is calculated for the supplier. This score is then shared with the supplier, offering them insights into their performance and areas they need to focus on for improvement. Such a transparent feedback mechanism not only helps suppliers enhance their offerings but also strengthens the buyer-supplier relationship.

4.4.2 Supplier Certification



Supplier certification is a rigorous process where key suppliers undergo thorough audits, facility inspections, and process evaluations. Once a supplier successfully clears these assessments, they are deemed 'certified'. Being a certified supplier comes with a plethora of benefits:

- **Assured Business:** Certified suppliers often receive consistent orders, ensuring a stable business relationship.
- **Bypassed Inspections:** Their products are deemed of high quality and might not require regular inspections, allowing for faster processing and integration into the buyer's production.
- **Reputation Boost:** Being certified by a renowned buying firm can enhance a supplier's market reputation, potentially attracting more business.
- **Operational Efficiency:** The certification process often identifies areas of improvement, helping suppliers optimize their operations.

From the buying company's perspective, the certification process offers several advantages. It ensures a consistent quality of products, reduces the time and resources spent on inspecting goods, and fosters a deeper, more collaborative relationship with suppliers. By investing in supplier certification, buying companies not only ensure a high standard of products but also drive continuous improvement in their supply chain.

4.5 PROCURING SERVICES IN SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

4.5.1 Differences Between Purchasing Products and Services

Purchasing within supply chain management traditionally focuses on tangible products, but the procurement of services presents unique challenges and opportunities. Unlike products, services are intangible, often making their quality and performance harder to evaluate prior to purchase. Services are typically more closely linked to the provider's expertise and are consumed at the time of production, which underscores the importance of timely delivery and reliability. This inherent intangibility and inseparability require a different approach in the procurement process, emphasizing the provider's credentials, the establishment of clear service expectations, and a robust evaluation mechanism.

4.5.2 Procuring Specific Types of Services

The process of procuring services can vary significantly depending on the type of service being acquired. Here are some examples:

- **Health Services:** Procuring health services may involve engaging with clinics, hospitals, or individual healthcare professionals. Factors such as the provider's accreditation, patient satisfaction rates, and treatment success rates become crucial in the RFP process.
- **Administrative Services:** When outsourcing administrative tasks, such as payroll or data entry, the focus is on the provider's efficiency, accuracy, and ability to handle confidential information securely.
- **Social Services:** Procuring social services, such as community development or counseling services, requires an evaluation of the provider's experience, approach to service delivery, and outcomes from previous engagements.
- **Consulting Services:** In procuring consulting services, the emphasis is on the consultant's expertise, previous work, and the ability to deliver actionable and valuable insights within the specified timeframe.
- **Travel Arrangements:** For travel services, factors like cost, flexibility, and the quality of the arrangements (e.g., accommodation, transportation) are critical. It's also essential to assess the provider's ability to handle last-minute changes and provide support during the travel.

4.5.3 Procuring Services: RFI and Request for Bid

The procurement of services begins with understanding the organization's needs. The **Request for Information** (RFI) is a preliminary step in which potential suppliers are asked to provide information about their capabilities and experience. This aids in shortlisting candidates who can meet the service requirements.

Following the RFI, a **Request for Bid** (RFB) or **Request for Proposal** (RFP) is issued to the shortlisted candidates. This document is more detailed, asking suppliers to submit a formal bid, including their approach to providing the service, timelines, costs, and compliance with specific requirements. Unlike product procurement, where specifications are often rigid and quantifiable, service bids may include qualitative assessments of the provider's methodology, staff qualifications, and innovative solutions.

4.5.4 Reverse Auctions in Service Procurement

Reverse auctions represent a dynamic and competitive approach to procuring services. In this process, service providers bid against each other to win the contract, typically with price being a significant factor. This method can drive down costs but must be approached with caution. It's essential to ensure that the quality of service is not compromised in the pursuit of lower prices. Properly structured, reverse auctions can lead to cost-effective and efficient procurement, but they require clear specifications and criteria to judge the qualitative aspects of the services offered.

4.5.5 Structuring Service Level Agreements (SLAs)



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=298#oembed-1>

An essential element in service procurement is the Service Level Agreement (SLA). SLAs formalize the expectations between the buyer and the service provider, outlining performance metrics, delivery timelines, quality standards, and penalties for non-compliance. A well-structured SLA ensures clarity and understanding, providing a framework for accountability and performance evaluation.

Example: A company procuring IT support services may include in the SLA response times for different types of issues, system uptime guarantees, and protocols for emergency situations. Regular performance reviews and a clear escalation matrix are also integral to such SLAs.

4.5.6 Ethical and Sustainable Service Procurement

In service procurement, it's imperative to integrate ethical considerations and sustainability into the decision-making process. This means evaluating potential service providers not only on their ability to deliver the desired service but also on their **corporate social responsibility** (CSR) practices. For instance, when procuring health services, it's crucial to consider the provider's commitment to ethical medical practices and patient confidentiality. Similarly, for social services, the provider's track record in promoting social equity and supporting vulnerable populations should be assessed.

Incorporating sustainability criteria involves ensuring that service providers adhere to environmental best practices, such as minimizing waste, reducing carbon footprint, and using sustainable resources. This approach not only aligns with global sustainability goals but also enhances the organization's reputation and fulfills its CSR obligations.

Ethical and sustainable procurement goes beyond evaluating the immediate capabilities of a service provider. It involves a holistic assessment of the provider's practices and their alignment with broader societal values and environmental stewardship. This approach is crucial in building a resilient and responsible supply chain. We can define key factors to guide in the procurement process:

- **Transparency:** Ensuring that service providers operate transparently, particularly in their labor practices and sourcing methods. This includes fair labor practices, equitable wages, and safe working conditions.
- **Environmental Impact:** Evaluating the environmental footprint of service providers. For health services, this might involve assessing waste management practices, for travel services, it could be their carbon offset programs, and for administrative services, the sustainability of their office practices and resource utilization.
- **Community Engagement and Social Impact:** Assessing the provider's involvement in community development and their impact on local communities. For social services, this includes their contribution to social equity, and for consulting services, their approach to incorporating local knowledge and resources.

On the practical side, the buyer can implement strategies to align with key factor in the procurement process such as:

- **Supplier Audits and Certifications:** Conduct regular audits of service providers or require specific certifications (e.g., ISO 26000 for social responsibility, ISO 14001 for environmental management) to ensure compliance with ethical and sustainability standards.
- **Sustainability Scorecards:** Implement scorecards that evaluate potential suppliers based on various sustainability metrics. This can be integrated into the RFP process to guide decision-making.

- **Collaboration for Continuous Improvement:** Work collaboratively with suppliers to improve their ethical and sustainable practices. This can involve training, sharing best practices, or jointly developing new sustainability initiatives.
- **Incorporating Local and Minority Suppliers:** Prioritize service providers that are local or from minority groups, promoting economic inclusiveness and diversity in the supply chain.

As an example, an organization procuring IT consulting services might choose a provider who not only offers expertise in the required technical domain but also demonstrates a strong commitment to ethical labor practices, uses green data centers to minimize environmental impact, and actively participates in community-based IT education programs.

4.6 WHAT TO BUY? (OUTSOURCING DECISIONS)

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the realm of strategic sourcing, one of the critical decisions a business faces is determining what tasks to perform in-house and what to outsource to suppliers. This decision, often referred to as the make-or-buy decision, hinges on assessing core competencies and managing dependence risks. For instance, most automobile companies today act primarily as assemblers, outsourcing the manufacturing of components to suppliers. Similarly, many consumer product companies focus on product design and marketing, entrusting distribution and transportation to logistics partners.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=312#oembed-1>

In the automotive industry, companies like Ford and Honda exemplify this strategic approach. Ford, for example, outsources the production of many components such as electronic modules, transmissions, and even complete engines to specialized suppliers, while focusing its in-house efforts on assembly, design, and innovation. Honda, similarly, outsources the manufacturing of various parts but retains core processes like engine assembly and key research and development activities in-house. In the realm of consumer electronics, Apple stands out for its strategic outsourcing decisions. While Apple outsources the manufacturing of hardware components to companies like Foxconn and Pegatron, it retains tight control over product design, software development, and the overall user experience. This allows Apple to maintain its brand identity and innovation edge while leveraging the cost and scale efficiencies of its suppliers. In the fashion industry, brands like Zara and H&M outsource most of their manufacturing to a network of suppliers globally, focusing their internal resources on design, marketing, and fast supply chain management to stay ahead in the fast fashion market. These examples demonstrate the nuanced decision-making involved in the make-or-buy dilemma, balancing the need for control and innovation with the efficiencies and specializations offered by suppliers.



Advantages of Outsourcing:

1. **Focus and Scale:** Concentrating on a few select tasks allows businesses to excel in those areas, benefiting from the economies of scale due to large-scale operations.
2. **Lower Costs:** Outsourcing can be more cost-effective, especially when suppliers operate in different geographies and can leverage larger scales of operation.
3. **Access to Expertise:** Suppliers, focusing solely on specific tasks, often develop greater expertise and advanced technology in those areas compared to the buying company.

Risks of Outsourcing:

1. **Supplier Dependence:** Over-reliance on a particular supplier can lead to increased vulnerability, where the supplier might exploit its dominant position to demand higher prices.
2. **Loss of Skill:** Outsourcing certain tasks can lead to a permanent erosion of specific skills and knowledge within the company, making it challenging to bring those tasks back in-house in the future.
3. **Knowledge Leakage:** There's a risk that suppliers might misuse the company's intellectual property, potentially becoming direct competitors.
4. **Loss of Control:** Managing and controlling external processes is more challenging than overseeing internal ones.
5. **Reputational Risks:** Unethical practices by suppliers can tarnish the company's image and lead to legal and public relations issues.

4.2.1 Making the Outsourcing Decision:

The decision to outsource hinges on two pivotal factors:



Core Competence



Dependence Risk

1. **Core Competence:** Core competencies are unique skills that give a business its competitive edge. Tasks linked to these competencies should ideally be kept in-house to maintain control and superiority in those areas. Conversely, non-core tasks might be better managed through outsourcing, allowing the company to concentrate on its strengths.
 - Apple Inc. is a classic example of a company leveraging its core competencies. Apple's strengths lie in product design, software development, and creating an integrated ecosystem of products and services. These are the areas they focus on in-house. On the other hand, Apple outsources the manufacturing of hardware components to suppliers like Foxconn, as this manufacturing process is not considered their core competency. This strategy allows Apple to focus on innovation and design, which are key drivers of their competitive advantage.
2. **Dependence Risk:** Outsourcing should be approached cautiously to avoid over-dependence on suppliers, which can lead to increased costs and reduced bargaining power.
 - Apple's relationship with Foxconn illustrates the concept of dependence risk in outsourcing. While Apple benefits from Foxconn's manufacturing capabilities, about 80% of Apple products are currently manufactured by Foxconn. This heavy reliance presents a significant dependence risk. Recognizing this, Apple has started diversifying its manufacturing base. One major step in this direction is setting up manufacturing units in India and developing relationships with new partners. This strategic move is aimed at mitigating the risk associated with over-reliance on a single supplier. By diversifying its supplier base, Apple aims to reduce potential vulnerabilities, such as

supply chain disruptions or increased bargaining power by Foxconn, ensuring greater stability and resilience in its operations.

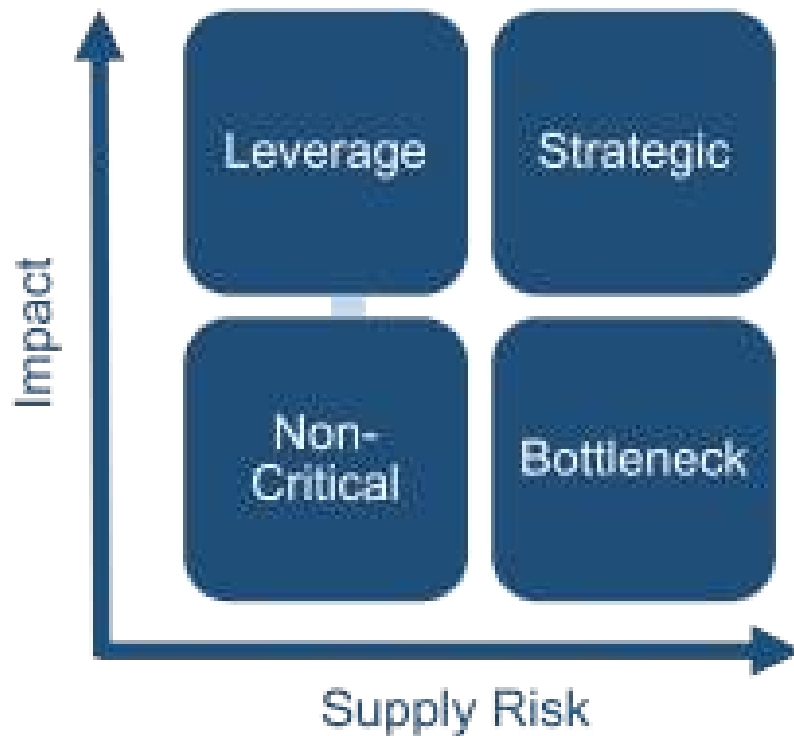
It's crucial to note that what constitutes a core competence, or a significant dependence risk varies from one business to another, even within the same industry. Thus, while one company might outsource a particular task, another might keep it in-house. Additionally, these perceptions of core competencies and risks are dynamic and must be continually reassessed to ensure that the make-or-buy decisions align with the evolving business landscape and strategic objectives.

4.7 HOW TO BUY: CATEGORY MANAGEMENT AND KRALJIC'S MATRIX

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the diverse and complex world of business procurement, companies typically purchase thousands of distinct products and services. It is impractical, if not impossible, to devise unique buying strategies for each item. To manage this complexity, businesses often resort to creating product categories, grouping similar items together and developing strategies for these categories. Examples of such categories might include office supplies (like stationery and furniture), IT equipment (computers, servers, software), raw materials (steel, plastics, chemicals), and professional services (consulting, legal services).

A widely recognized tool for shaping category strategies is Kraljic's Purchasing Matrix. Developed by Peter Kraljic in 1983, this matrix helps businesses classify their purchases based on two key dimensions: supply risk and the importance of purchasing. Understanding these two dimensions is crucial for applying the matrix effectively.



Supply Risk Dimension:

- **Low Supply Risk:** This category includes standard components and services with many alternative vendors available in the market. The risk of supply interruption is low because these items are commonly produced and readily available. In this scenario, the buyer often holds a dominant position, as they have multiple sourcing options and can easily switch suppliers if necessary. Examples include standard office supplies or generic electronic components.
- **High Supply Risk:** This pertains to non-standardized components and services that are unique or have few suppliers. The risk of supply interruption is high due to the limited availability of these items. In such cases, the buyer needs to be more strategic and cautious, as their bargaining power may be lower. Examples can include specialized machinery parts or proprietary software services. The buyer's strategy here should focus on securing supply and developing strong relationships with suppliers.

Importance to Purchasing Dimension:

- **Low Importance and Value:** These are items that, while necessary, do not significantly impact the company's financials or operations. Due to their low purchasing value, suppliers might be less interested in maintaining these business relationships, as they contribute minimally to their revenue. An example could be minor office accessories.

- **High Importance and Value:** Items that have a substantial impact on the business's operations or financial performance fall into this category. These are typically high-value purchases that are critical to the company's success. Suppliers are usually more invested in these relationships due to the significance of the business. For these items, the suppliers are likely to be more responsive and offer better service, recognizing the mutual value of the relationship. Examples include key raw materials for manufacturing companies or large-scale IT infrastructure for tech firms.

Based on the two dimensions of supply risk and importance to purchasing, Kraljic's Purchasing Matrix delineates four distinct quadrants of buying strategies. Each quadrant represents a different combination of supply risk and purchasing importance, guiding businesses in tailoring their procurement strategies accordingly.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=315#oembed-1>

1. **Non-Critical Items (Low Supply Risk, Low Importance):** In this quadrant, items are easily replaceable and do not significantly impact the company's operations or financial health. Businesses often consolidate such purchases, buying multiple non-critical items from a single supplier to create reasonable purchase value and streamline procurement processes. Since these items are standard and widely available, companies have the flexibility to switch suppliers without major disruptions. This approach not only simplifies the procurement process but also potentially leverages better pricing due to bulk buying. For example, a company might source all its basic office supplies like stationery, cleaning products, and generic electronic peripherals from one supplier to capitalize on volume discounts and minimize administrative costs.
2. **Leverage Items (Low Supply Risk, High Importance):** Items in this category are crucial for business operations but are readily available in the market from several suppliers. The strategy here focuses on leveraging the company's buying power to negotiate better prices and terms. Businesses can take advantage of the competitive market for these items to drive down costs while ensuring supply reliability. For instance, for IT equipment like laptops and servers, a company could negotiate favorable terms based on its large procurement volume, ensuring both cost efficiency and the availability of essential technology.
3. **Bottleneck Items (High Supply Risk, Low Importance):** These items pose a high risk of supply interruption but are not vital to the company's core operations. The strategy involves managing this risk by not overly pressuring suppliers, and actively working to develop alternative sources. Companies need to maintain good relationships with current suppliers while also identifying and nurturing relationships

with potential new suppliers. For example, a specialized lubricant used in machinery might be sourced from a single supplier. The buying company would work to find alternate sources for this lubricant to mitigate the risk of supply disruption, while maintaining a positive relationship with the current supplier.

4. **Strategic Items (High Supply Risk, High Importance):** This quadrant includes items that are critical to the business and have limited supply options. The focus here is on building strong, collaborative relationships with suppliers, often involving long-term contracts and joint development initiatives. Companies invest in understanding and improving these suppliers' capabilities, thereby ensuring a stable supply of these crucial items. For instance, in the case of custom-made electronic components, a company might engage in long-term partnerships with suppliers, involving them in product development and quality assurance processes. This collaboration ensures a consistent supply of high-quality components, which are essential for the company's products.

By categorizing procurement items into these quadrants, businesses can adopt a more nuanced and strategic approach to purchasing, aligning their procurement strategies with broader business objectives and effectively managing supplier relationships.

4.8 CONCLUSION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Purchasing, as we've explored in this chapter, is a multifaceted function that goes beyond mere transactional activities. At its core, it's about ensuring that firms have robust transactional processes in place. A strong transactional foundation ensures timely material availability, cost efficiencies, and fosters healthy supplier relationships. These elements are crucial as they directly impact a company's bottom line, operational efficiency, and market competitiveness.



In today's digital age, technology plays an indispensable role in enhancing the efficiency and effectiveness of purchasing activities. Modern purchasing professionals are equipped with an array of technology tools

that streamline processes, provide real-time insights, and facilitate better decision-making. However, the rapid evolution of technology means that these tools are continually evolving. As a result, today's purchasing professionals must not only be adept at their core functions but also have a firm grasp of the technological landscape. Embracing and integrating these technological advancements is no longer a luxury but a necessity.

Yet, while transactions form the bedrock of purchasing, they are just one part of the broader narrative. A significant portion of purchasing efficiency and effectiveness is determined by strategic decisions. These decisions encompass supplier selection, sourcing strategies, global procurement considerations, and more. They dictate long-term supplier relationships, cost structures, and risk management approaches. In our subsequent chapter, we will delve deeper into these strategic aspects of purchasing, exploring how they shape and are shaped by the broader business and market dynamics.

As we transition to this next phase, it's essential to remember that purchasing, in its entirety, is a blend of both transactional efficiency and strategic foresight. Both elements, working in tandem, ensure that firms not only meet their immediate operational needs but are also poised for long-term success and competitiveness in an ever-evolving marketplace.

4.9 CHAPTER 4 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section 4.1: Introduction

- **Question:** Why are effective purchasing strategies important for a company's success?

2. Section 4.2: Purchase to Pay

- **Question:** What is the Purchase to Pay (P2P) process, and why is it important?

3. Section 4.2.2: Supplier Selection

- **Question:** What role does an Approved Supplier List (ASL) play in the supplier selection process?

4. Section 4.3: Digitization of Procurement

- **Question:** How does e-procurement improve the traditional purchasing process?

5. Section 4.4: Supplier Development

- **Question:** What is the purpose of supplier rating in the context of supplier development?

Situational Questions:

Situation 1: Imagine you are responsible for purchasing at a mid-sized manufacturing company. You've noticed that one of your regular suppliers has been consistently late with deliveries, causing production delays. How would you apply the concepts of supplier rating and supplier development to address this issue? What steps would you take to ensure that future deliveries are on time?

Situation 2: Your company is transitioning to a fully digitized procurement system. As a procurement manager, you are tasked with ensuring a smooth transition. Using the knowledge from this chapter, outline a plan to implement e-procurement in your organization. How would you convince your team of the benefits, and what challenges might you anticipate?

Chapter 4 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=303#h5p-9>

PART V

CHAPTER 5: MAKING - PROCESS DESIGN

5.1 INTRODUCTION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Imagine a scenario where business operations resemble a well-conducted symphony. In such service facilities, customers adhere to their appointments, receive satisfying services, and leave pleased. Here, the staff remains actively engaged, seemingly content in their customer interactions. On the other end of the spectrum, some establishments mimic a discordant tune. Prolonged customer wait times, dissatisfaction with services, and disengaged employees paint a starkly different picture. This contrast is not exclusive to service industries; manufacturing sectors exhibit similar variances.

The root cause of these divergent experiences often lies in the **process design** of the service or manufacturing facilities. Effective process design necessitates a thorough consideration of several factors: the volume of customers, their arrival patterns, the variety of products offered, and more. The reason for this careful planning is clear and significant. The way a process is designed can directly influence the revenue, costs, and overall viability of a business. A well-designed process optimizes resource utilization and customer satisfaction, directly impacting the bottom line, while a poorly designed process can lead to inefficiencies, increased costs, and lost customers.

Understanding Process Design Through a Call Center Example

Consider the simple process of a call center, where the initial task involves matching the number of employees with the number of incoming calls. If there are too few employees, customers may face excessive waiting times, leading to poor customer satisfaction and possibly a loss of future business. On the other hand, if there are too many employees, the cost of operating the call center would be too high, thus negatively impacting the profit of the firm. This shows that designing the call center processes is extremely important.



However, this presents a very simplified picture. Since call volume can vary significantly throughout the day or week, setting up the number of employees and their shift times becomes a complex task. Moreover, customers could call for a variety of reasons, necessitating the need to plan for employees with different skills and expertise levels. Here, this is mostly a one-step process where customers call a call center executive, have their query resolved, and leave. Yet, most business processes are multi-step, involving several stages before reaching completion.

For example, in a manufacturing setting, a product might go through stages such as raw material procurement, processing, assembly, quality checking, and finally packaging. Each of these steps is interconnected, and inefficiencies in one stage can ripple through the entire process, impacting overall performance and customer satisfaction. Similarly, in service industries, a customer's experience might involve multiple touchpoints with

different departments or personnel, each needing to be carefully designed and managed to ensure a seamless and satisfying end-to-end experience.

Through these examples, it's clear that effective process design is crucial for achieving operational excellence, whether in a simple setup like a call center or in more complex multi-step processes. By understanding and optimizing each step and interaction within a process, businesses can enhance efficiency, reduce costs, and improve customer satisfaction, ultimately contributing to their success.

In this chapter, we aim to unravel the intricacies of process design in supply chain management. We will investigate how variations in product volume and diversity affect process design, scrutinize product delivery strategies, and introduce fundamental calculations for flow rate and capacity. Our objective is to provide students with a solid foundation in process design principles. Armed with this knowledge, they will be able to identify inefficiencies and areas for improvement in existing processes, thereby enhancing their effectiveness and contributing to the success of the business.

5.2 UNDERSTANDING "PROCESS"

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

A **process**, in its most fundamental form, is a series of actions or steps taken to achieve a particular end. It's a dynamic sequence of events or operations that produce a specific outcome, encompassing various activities including processing tasks, waiting periods, decision points, and the utilization of resources. These resources can range from machines and technology to human effort, each with their own processing time and capacity. Importantly, the elements that constitute a process can be scattered across various departments within an organization, making the orchestration of these elements critical to the process's success.

To understand the intricate nature of business processes, let's delve into the **"Purchase to Pay" (P2P)** process, a comprehensive workflow that many of you have studied in previous chapters on purchasing. The P2P process serves as an exemplary model demonstrating how processes span across multiple departments and involve a wide array of activities and resources.

The "Purchase to Pay" process begins with the user department identifying a need for goods or services and initiating a purchase request. This simple starting point quickly evolves into a complex process involving several departments and key steps: the finance department must approve the budget; the purchasing department is responsible for selecting suppliers and placing orders; the materials department receives and stores the inventory upon delivery; and the quality control department ensures the goods meet specified standards before they are finally used. Throughout this process, various decision points dictate the flow of activities based on criteria such as cost, supplier reliability, and product quality.

This process is not just a linear sequence of tasks but a complex interplay of decisions, resources, and collaborations that span across the organization. It underscores the reality that processes are not confined to single departments but are the connective tissue that links various parts of an organization, driving it towards its operational goals.

5.2.1 Input-Output process model

Mapping complex processes like "Purchase to Pay" can initially seem daunting for beginners. A practical starting point to understand and visualize how processes function is the simple input-output process model. This model breaks down a process into its fundamental components, making it easier to grasp the basic structure and flow of any process before tackling more intricate details.

This input-conversion-output model serves as a fundamental framework for understanding and analyzing processes in any business domain. It emphasizes the importance of each phase and how they interconnect to produce the final outcome, which is vital for any business operation.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=400#oembed-1>

The input-output process model is a straightforward framework that outlines how resources are transformed into valuable outputs through a series of actions or operations. It comprises three primary components:

- **Input:** Inputs are the resources required to carry out a process. These can include materials, human efforts, and information. For example, in a marketing process, inputs might consist of market data for analysis, creative content for campaign materials, and advertising budgets to execute promotions.
- **Conversion:** At the heart of the process, conversion involves transforming inputs into outputs. This transformation process can be tangible, as seen in manufacturing where raw materials are turned into finished products, or intangible, such as in finance where data analysis leads to actionable reports. The conversion phase is where value is added, enhancing the inputs to produce a desired outcome.
- **Output:** The outputs are the end results of the process. They represent the goal of the process, manifesting as products, services, decisions, or any deliverable that meets a need. An example can be seen in HR recruitment, where the process output is the successful hiring and onboarding of a new employee.

Crucially, this model incorporates a feedback loop or ‘controls’, which are mechanisms for monitoring and refining the process. Controls assess the process’s efficiency and effectiveness, providing insights that guide adjustments for continuous improvement.

To further clarify the input-output process model, let’s illustrate its application with two examples. The first example delves into the manufacturing sector, showcasing the transformation of raw materials into a tangible product. The second example explores the service industry, highlighting how intangible inputs like information and expertise can produce valuable services. These examples aim to demonstrate the model’s versatility and its ability to capture the essence of process transformation across different industry landscapes.

Manufacturing a Bicycle:

In this first example, the process begins with the inputs—raw materials such as metal for the frame, rubber for the tires, plastic for the gears, along with the skilled labor of workers and the specialized manufacturing

equipment. The design specifications serve as a blueprint for the final product. During the conversion phase, these inputs are taken through the assembly line where each part of the bicycle is meticulously crafted, shaped, and assembled. This stage is critical as it transforms the separate, raw inputs into a cohesive, functional product. The output of this process is the finished bicycle, ready for distribution and sale to consumers. Additionally, the feedback loop plays a crucial role here, with quality control checks and customer feedback informing potential adjustments in the design and manufacturing processes to improve future output quality and efficiency.

Creating a Software Application:

Our second example shifts focus to the tech industry, where the initial inputs include software requirements that outline the application's intended functions, the coding expertise of the development team, development tools and software, and initial feedback from potential users or stakeholders. The conversion process in this context involves the intricate tasks of writing, testing, and refining code, ensuring that the application not only meets its requirements but also provides a user-friendly experience. The output is the launch of a functional software application, made available to users. Following release, the feedback loop becomes particularly significant, as user feedback and performance analytics are collected to identify areas for improvement, guiding updates and refinements to the application to better meet user needs over time.

5.2.2 Fundamental Concepts of Business Processes

Building on the detailed exploration of the input-output process model and its practical examples in both the manufacturing and service industries, it's clear that processes are central to the functioning of any organization. Drawing from this foundation, we can distill some core aspects that highlight the significance and complexity of processes and process design. These elements underscore why understanding processes goes beyond just mapping actions from start to finish; it involves appreciating the intricate dynamics that make processes the backbone of any successful organization.

1. **Processes are ubiquitous:** Processes are not limited to specific departments like marketing or finance; they permeate every aspect of a business. From answering customer calls to developing new products, every activity can be broken down into a series of interconnected steps. Recognizing these processes helps in streamlining operations and ensuring consistency.
2. **They create value:** The essence of a process lies in its ability to transform inputs (resources) into outputs (valuable deliverables). This transformation adds value, whether tangible or intangible. For example, a manufacturing process transforms raw materials into finished products, while a customer service process transforms a customer inquiry into a resolution, improving customer satisfaction.
3. **They involve decision points:** Processes are not always linear sequences of steps. Often, there are decision points where the flow of the process can change based on specific criteria. This can involve

evaluating options, approving requests, or adapting to unexpected situations. Effective processes incorporate clear guidelines and decision-making frameworks to ensure consistent and optimal outcomes.

4. **They are dynamic and adaptable:** The business landscape is constantly evolving, and processes need to adapt to remain effective. Feedback loops, also referred to as controls, are crucial in this regard. By monitoring and measuring the performance of a process, organizations can identify bottlenecks, inefficiencies, and opportunities for improvement. This allows for continuous refinement and adaptation of the process to keep up with changing needs and circumstances.
5. **They foster collaboration:** Many processes involve the interaction of various individuals and departments. Defining clear roles, responsibilities, and communication channels within a process ensures that everyone involved is working towards the same goal and understands their contribution to the overall outcome.

5.3 PROCESS MAPS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

While the input-output model provides a high-level explanation of processes and their design, delving deeper into the specifics of process design necessitates a more detailed approach. Process maps serve as an invaluable tool in this endeavor, offering a comprehensive way to chart out the minutiae of any process. By transitioning from the abstract to the concrete, process maps enable organizations to visualize the flow of tasks and resources in a tangible manner, making it easier to identify areas for optimization and enhancement.

What is a Process Map?



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=403#oembed-1>

A process map is a graphical representation of a process. It outlines every step in a process, displaying the sequence of tasks, decision points, inputs, and outputs. Process maps go beyond mere descriptions by visually documenting the flow of information and materials through various stages. This detailed visualization helps in identifying inefficiencies, redundancies, and opportunities for improvement, making process maps a critical tool in process management and business process reengineering.

Characteristics of Process Maps

- **Purpose:** The primary aim of a process map is to provide a clear and detailed view of a process. This aids in understanding the process flow and identifying inefficiencies or unnecessary complexities that may hinder performance. By laying out the entire process visually, stakeholders can pinpoint areas where changes can lead to significant improvements in efficiency, quality, and overall process performance.
- **Content:** A process map meticulously documents all components of a process, including every step, decision point, input, and output. It often details who is responsible for each step, offering clarity on roles and responsibilities. This comprehensive coverage ensures that every aspect of the process is accounted for, from start to finish.
- **Detail Level:** The level of detail in a process map can vary significantly based on its intended use. Some

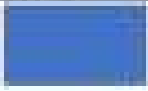
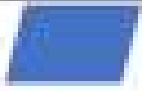
process maps are high-level overviews, akin to flowcharts, that provide a broad perspective of the process. Others, like swimlane diagrams, delve into granular details, showing task-level information and how tasks move between different people or departments. The choice of detail level depends on the objectives of the process analysis and the specific insights sought.

Process maps are more than just tools for visualization; they are instrumental in driving process improvement. By offering a detailed perspective on how processes are currently executed, they lay the groundwork for rethinking and redesigning these processes for enhanced efficiency and effectiveness. Whether used for analyzing a single department's workflow or reengineering an entire organization's operational procedures, process maps are indispensable for any entity seeking to optimize its processes and achieve operational excellence.

5.3.1 Process Map Symbols

In the realm of process maps, we employ standard symbols to pictorially represent the various elements of a process. These symbols facilitate a universal understanding of process designs, allowing individuals to interpret and analyze process charts across different contexts. Although there might be minor variations in symbol representation among companies, the core symbols are globally recognized. Familiarity with these symbols equips students with the ability to understand process charts anywhere.

Key Process Design Symbols and Their Applications

Process Start/End	Process Step	Decision	Connector	Connector Line	Delay	Transport	Input
							

1. **Process Start/End (Oval):** The oval symbol is used to denote the beginning or end of a process, serving as a clear marker for where the process flow initiates or concludes. For instance, an oval with the label “Start” signifies the start of a customer service process, while one marked “End” indicates the process’s completion.
2. **Process Step/Task (Rectangle):** The rectangle represents individual tasks or steps within the process. These actions drive the process forward. A rectangle stating “Assess Customer Request,” for example, denotes a specific action where the customer’s request is evaluated as part of the service process.
3. **Decision (Diamond):** Diamonds are employed to illustrate decision points within a process. At these

junctures, a question is posed, leading to different outcomes based on the response. A diamond labeled “Is Inventory Available?” may direct the process along one path if the answer is yes and another if no, illustrating the critical role of decisions in determining the process flow.

4. **Process Connector (Circle):** Circles, often used as connector symbols, indicate jumps or links in the process flow, especially in complex diagrams where lines cross or the process continues on another page. For example, a circle can link two separate sections of a large process map, ensuring clarity and continuity in the representation.
5. **Connector Line (Arrow):** Arrows illustrate the flow direction from one step or decision point to the next, guiding the viewer through the process sequence. An arrow leading from the “Assess Customer Request” rectangle to the “Is Inventory Available?” diamond shows the process moving from task assessment to decision-making.
6. **Delay (D-shaped Symbol):** The D-shaped symbol signifies waiting periods or delays within the process. It highlights where bottlenecks might occur or where additional time is required. For example, a delay symbol following a decision point might indicate a waiting period for customer approval before proceeding.
7. **Transport (Solid Line Arrow):** This symbol represents the movement of materials or information from one location to another within the process. A solid line arrow pointing from “Warehouse” to “Shipping Department” indicates the physical movement of goods as part of the distribution process.
8. **Inputs/Outputs (Parallelogram):** The parallelogram symbol is used to represent inputs to a process. It indicates the resources needed to execute a task. For example, a parallelogram labeled “Customer Inquiry” at the start of a process highlights the input that initiates the customer service operation.

Understanding these symbols and their applications provides a foundational skill set for interpreting and constructing process maps. Highlighting the potential for slight variations in symbol usage underscores the importance of adaptability and the need to focus on the underlying principles that these symbols convey. With this knowledge, students are well-prepared to navigate and contribute to process improvements in any organizational setting.

5.4 MEASURING THE PERFORMANCE OF A PROCESS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Processes are deeply integrated into the operational fabric of any business, influenced by economic conditions, technology advancements, and the specific context in which they operate. To ensure processes are performing optimally, it's essential to measure their performance accurately. This measurement not only identifies areas for improvement but also helps in aligning process capabilities with business goals.

Capacity and Its Types

- **Capacity:** Defined as the maximum rate at which a process can produce output, it is typically measured in units of output per unit of time, such as 10 orders per hour in a bakery setting.
- **Theoretical Capacity:** Represents the ideal output rate under perfect conditions, where all operations run continuously without any interruptions. While this provides a benchmark for production capabilities, it's important to remember that theoretical capacity is an aspirational figure rather than a reflection of real-world conditions.
- **Effective Capacity:** This is a more realistic measure of a process's output, taking into account various constraints like quality issues and delays. For instance, a bakery's effective capacity might be influenced by the quality of flour, the expertise of the bakers, and operational hours. Effective capacity adapts to changes in these factors and managerial decisions, offering a practical perspective on a process's output capabilities.

Key Performance Metrics

1. **Efficiency:** Efficiency compares the actual output to the standard or expected output. If a bakery expected to produce 200 loaves per batch but only managed 190, analyzing this variance can highlight efficiency issues. Standard output might be set based on historical data or industry benchmarks, providing a basis for assessing current performance.
2. **Productivity:** Represented as the ratio of output to input, productivity measures how effectively resources are being utilized. For example, if a bakery uses 100 kilograms of flour to produce 200 loaves, its productivity can be assessed against industry norms or past performance to identify improvements or declines.
3. **Utilization:** This metric focuses on how much of the available resources are actually being used in the

production process. In a manual bakery, labor utilization might be the key measure, whereas, in an automated setup, machine utilization becomes more relevant. For instance, if a bakery employs 100 workers for an 8-hour shift but only uses 700 hours, the labor utilization rate is calculated as 700 hours divided by the maximum possible 800 hours, resulting in an 87.5% utilization rate. This indicates how effectively the bakery's human resources are being employed.

4. **Cycle Time:** Cycle time is a critical metric that denotes the total time required to complete one cycle of an operation or process, from the start of one batch to the start of the next. This metric is not only a measure of the duration of a single process cycle but also indicates the minimum time interval between consecutive batches. In a bakery context, if it takes 1 hours from the beginning of mixing dough for one batch of bread until the mixing begins for the next batch, the cycle time would be 1 hours.

Flexibility and Quality in Process Performance

- **Flexibility:** This aspect measures a process's ability to adapt to changes, such as varying product demands or modifications in production techniques. A bakery's flexibility can be assessed by its capability to produce a range of bread types and pastries on the same production line, as well as the speed at which it can switch from one product to another.
- **Process Quality:** Quality metrics evaluate whether the process meets certain standards and the consistency of output quality. Internal metrics might include the rate of scrap or the need for rework, which can highlight inefficiencies like lost capacity or increased operational costs. Externally, process quality affects customer satisfaction and brand reputation, influenced by the frequency of complaints or the need for product returns.

By understanding and applying these measures, businesses can effectively monitor and improve their processes. For a bakery, or any other business, leveraging these metrics allows for the identification of bottlenecks, inefficiencies, and opportunities for improvement, ensuring the process remains dynamic, adaptable, and aligned with overall business objectives.

5.5 PROCESS ANALYSIS EXAMPLE

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In this section, we delve into numerical problems related to process design, illustrating how to evaluate and optimize operations through quantitative analysis. We'll start with a practical example from a bakery to understand the dynamics of process flow, capacity, and utilization.

Problem 1: Three-Step Bread Making Operation

Consider a bakery with a bread-making operation divided into three sequential steps. The first step is mixing, requiring 45 minutes per batch. The second step is baking, taking 1 hour (60 minutes) per batch. The final step is packaging, which takes 30 minutes per batch. Given a single 8-hour shift, our task is to calculate the maximum number of batches that can be processed, the cycle time for the operation, and the utilization rates for the mixing, baking, and packaging stages when operating at full capacity.



Solution:

To solve this, let's break down the requirements:

Maximum Number of Batches in an 8-hour Shift:

- Since each step of the process must be completed for a batch before moving to the next, the bottleneck (the slowest step) determines the maximum number of batches. In this case, the baking step is the bottleneck, as it takes the longest time (1 hour per batch).
- An 8-hour shift contains 480 minutes (8 hours * 60 minutes/hour).
- Dividing the total available time by the bottleneck step's duration gives the maximum number of batches: 480 minutes / 60 minutes per batch = 8 batches.

Cycle Time:

- The cycle time is defined by the bottleneck step since it's the longest duration in the process sequence, which is 1 hour or 60 minutes in this scenario.

Utilization of Each Stage:

- **Mixing Stage Utilization:** Given that mixing takes 45 minutes and we can only process 8 batches due to the bottleneck, the mixing stage is actively used for 360 minutes (45 minutes * 8 batches). Therefore, its utilization is 360 minutes used / 480 minutes available = 75%.
- **Baking Stage Utilization (Bottleneck):** This stage is used for the full shift to process 8 batches, totaling 480 minutes. Hence, its utilization is 480 minutes used / 480 minutes available = 100%.
- **Packaging Stage Utilization:** Packaging takes 30 minutes per batch. For 8 batches, this stage is used for 240 minutes. Thus, its utilization is 240 minutes used / 480 minutes available = 50%.

Answer Summary:

The maximum number of batches that can be made in one shift of eight hours is 8.

The cycle time for the bakery operation is determined by the baking step, which is 60 minutes.

The utilization rates for each stage when working at full capacity are 75% for mixing, 100% for baking, and 50% for packaging.

This example underscores the importance of identifying the bottleneck in a process to determine its capacity and highlights how the utilization rate of each stage can vary, impacting the overall efficiency of the operation.

Relevance of such problems

This calculation is crucial for a bakery for several reasons, impacting both its operational efficiency and financial health:

- **Identifying the Bottleneck:** Understanding which step in the process is the slowest (in this case, baking) allows the bakery to pinpoint where improvements are needed. Addressing the bottleneck can lead to higher throughput, enabling the bakery to produce more bread in the same amount of time, thereby increasing potential sales and revenue.
- **Capacity Planning:** Knowing the maximum number of batches that can be produced in a shift is essential for capacity planning. It helps the bakery to forecast production levels accurately, manage inventory more effectively, and ensure that there is enough product to meet customer demand without overproducing, which can lead to waste.
- **Utilization Rates:** Understanding the utilization rates of different stages of the process helps in resource allocation. For example, if the mixing and packaging stages have lower utilization rates, it might indicate that there is excess capacity at these stages that could be optimized. The bakery could potentially start preparing ingredients for the next batch while the current batch is baking, thus better utilizing the time and labor available.
- **Cost Management:** Efficiency in each process step can significantly impact the cost structure of the bakery. For instance, a 100% utilization rate of the baking stage suggests that ovens are in continuous use, which might maximize energy use but also points to a limit in production capacity. Understanding these dynamics helps in making informed decisions about investments in additional resources or equipment to increase capacity or reduce costs.
- **Quality Control:** Cycle time and process analysis can also influence the quality of the bread. Ensuring that each step has sufficient time not only for production but also for quality checks is essential to maintaining high standards. Adjusting the process based on capacity and utilization insights can help balance efficiency with quality.
- **Strategic Decision Making:** Lastly, these calculations provide valuable data for strategic decision-making. They can inform discussions about expanding production capacity, extending product lines, or optimizing existing processes for better profitability.

In summary, the insights gained from analyzing the bread-making process in terms of maximum batches, cycle time, and utilization rates are pivotal for a bakery's operational strategy, enabling it to operate more efficiently, meet market demand effectively, and make informed decisions to drive business growth.

5.5.1 Understanding Little's Law

Little's Law is a fundamental principle in queueing theory, widely applicable in various fields such as manufacturing, logistics, and service operations. It provides a simple yet powerful way to understand the

relationship between three key aspects of any stable system: the average number of items in the system (L), the average rate at which items arrive or are processed (λ), and the average time an item spends in the system (W). Little's Law is elegantly summarized as:

$$L = \lambda \times W$$

This means the average number of items in the system (L) is equal to the product of the average arrival rate (λ) and the average time each item spends in the system (W). The beauty of Little's Law lies in its generality; it applies to any system, stable over time, regardless of the arrival process distribution, service distribution, or the number of servers in the system.

Applications of Little's Law

Understanding Little's Law is crucial for process analysis and improvement, as it allows managers to predict how changes in one aspect of the system (like processing speed or arrival rate) could impact the overall system performance. It's particularly useful in identifying bottlenecks, estimating work-in-process inventory, and improving customer waiting times.

Problem 2: Bakery Production Line

Consider a bakery where the average rate of bread batches processed is 5 batches per hour. If the average time a batch spends in the production process from mixing to packaging is 2 hours, calculate the average number of batches in the production process at any given time.

Solution:

Applying Little's Law, $L = \lambda \times W$, where:

- $\lambda = 5$ batches/hour (arrival rate)
- $W = 2$ hours (time in the system)

$$L = 5 \times 2 = 10 \text{ batches}$$

This means there are, on average, 10 batches of bread in the production process at any given time.

Problem 3: Customer Service Queue

A customer service center processes an average of 120 calls per day. If the average time a customer spends on the phone, including waiting time, is 10 minutes, calculate the average number of calls in the system (waiting or being processed) at any given time.

Solution:

First, convert the arrival rate to match the time unit used for the average time in the system. There are 1440 minutes in a day, so:

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda &= 120 \text{ calls/day} \\ &= 120/1440 = 0.0833 \text{ calls/minute}\end{aligned}$$

$$W = 10 \text{ minutes}$$

Applying Little's Law,

$$L = \lambda \times W:$$

$$L = 0.0833 \times 10 = 0.833 \text{ calls}$$

This means there are, on average, approximately 0.833 calls in the system at any given time.

Problem 4: Online Retail Order Processing

An online retail company processes an average of 600 orders per day. At any given time, there are typically 150 orders either being processed or waiting in the queue. Calculate the average time an order spends in the system.

Solution:

To find the average time an order spends in the system (W), we rearrange Little's Law to solve for W , giving us:

$$W = L / \lambda$$

First, convert the processing rate (λ) to match the unit used for L (orders in the system). Since we're dealing with a daily rate:

$$\lambda = 600 \text{ orders/day}$$

$$L = 150 \text{ orders}$$

Using Little's Law:

$$\begin{aligned} W &= L / \lambda \\ &= 150 / 600 \text{ day/order} \end{aligned}$$

To convert this into a more understandable unit, like hours per order, remember that 1 day = 24 hours

$$W = 150 / 600 \times 24 \text{ hours/order} = 6 \text{ hours/order}$$

This means, on average, an order spends 6 hours in the online retail company's processing system, from the time it's placed until it's fully processed. This insight can help the company assess its order processing efficiency and identify potential areas for reducing processing time, thereby improving customer satisfaction.

In summary, this section has provided a comprehensive look at process analysis through the exploration of cycle times and the application of Little's Law, equipping readers with essential tools for evaluating and optimizing operations across diverse contexts. By understanding the intricacies of cycle times, we can pinpoint efficiency bottlenecks, while Little's Law helps in quantifying the flow and duration of processes, offering invaluable insights for enhancing productivity and operational effectiveness. These analytical approaches are pivotal in guiding businesses toward streamlined operations and improved performance, showcasing the practical value of process analysis in achieving operational excellence.

5.6 PRODUCT-PROCESS MATRIX

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Process analysis and process maps as discussed above provide the detailed understanding and visibility of operational processes, while the product-process choice matrix offers strategic guidance on aligning these processes with product characteristics and business strategy. Together, they form a comprehensive approach to optimizing production and operational efficiency.

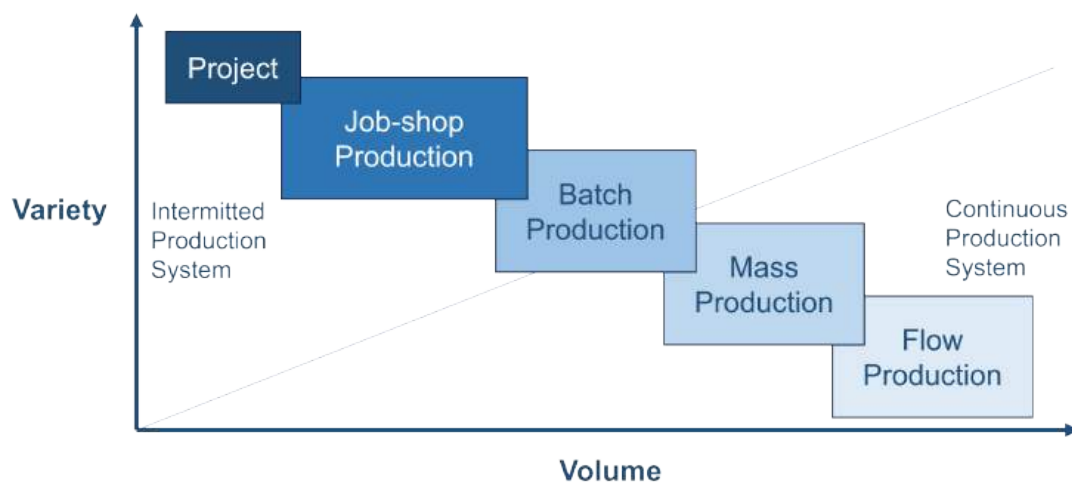
The product-process choice matrix is a framework used in operations management to align production processes with the characteristics of the product. It typically considers factors like product volume and variety, and matches them with appropriate production processes: Continuous Flow, Assembly Line, Batch System, and Job Shop. Each of these systems represents a unique approach to managing production and service processes.

1. **Continuous Flow:** This system is seen in industries where constant, uninterrupted production is essential. In manufacturing, it's exemplified by the chemical industry, such as in petroleum production. Similarly, in the service sector, utilities like electricity or water supply represent continuous flow, providing an unceasing supply to meet constant consumer demand.
2. **Assembly Line:** Known for its efficiency in mass production, this system is common in manufacturing sectors like automotive assembly. In the service industry, the same principle applies to fast-food chains, where an assembly line setup is used in meal preparation, with each staff member contributing a specific part of the process.
3. **Batch System:** This versatile system, balancing efficiency and flexibility, is found in both manufacturing and service sectors. In manufacturing, it's used in the food processing industry, producing different products in separate batches. Correspondingly, in services, educational training sessions or workshops are delivered in batches, catering to different groups with varying content.
4. **Job Shop:** Focused on low volume, highly customized production, job shops in manufacturing create unique parts for specific applications, such as custom machine shops. In services, bespoke tailoring or custom design studios operate under a similar principle, offering highly personalized services based on individual client needs.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=411#oembed-1>

In understanding operational systems, the role of automation and its impact on fixed capital costs and variable operational costs is paramount. Continuous Flow and Assembly Line systems are characterized by high automation, necessitating significant capital investment. This automation brings the advantage of consistently high-quality output at lower variable costs. Once set up, these systems operate efficiently with minimal ongoing costs, producing uniform and consistent products or services. However, the high automation level implies that changing over to a different product or service is a complex and expensive process. This is evident in manufacturing sectors like chemical production and automotive assembly, and in service sectors such as utilities and fast-food chains. These systems are most effective when producing standardized items in large volumes, where the cost of changeovers can be justified by long production runs.



Conversely, Batch Systems and Job Shops are typically more manual in their processes, leading to lower initial capital costs but higher variable costs. This setup offers greater flexibility, allowing these systems to easily adapt to changes in customer demands or product designs. Each new batch or job requires specific setup and handling, increasing labor and operational expenses. In the manufacturing realm, this approach is seen in industries like food processing or custom machine shops, while in the service sector, it aligns with models such as educational workshops or bespoke tailoring services. These systems are ideally suited for environments where variety and customization are key, and the increased variable costs are offset by the ability to meet unique customer needs.

This understanding of the cost implications of different operational systems helps businesses make informed decisions about their process strategies. It involves weighing the trade-offs between initial capital investments

and ongoing operational expenses, and aligning these with the flexibility and customization the market demands.

Production Strategies

In the realm of supply chain and operations management, production strategies are foundational approaches that dictate how products are manufactured and delivered to meet customer demands and market dynamics. These strategies are influenced by several factors, including product characteristics, demand variability, and the company's overarching business goals. Central to these strategies are three primary models: Make-to-Order (MTO), Make-to-Stock (MTS), and Assemble-to-Order (ATO), each with its unique approach to balancing efficiency, responsiveness, and customization.

Make-to-Order (MTO)

Make-to-Order is a production strategy where manufacturing starts only after receiving a customer's order. This approach allows for high customization of products to meet specific customer needs. For example, a custom furniture manufacturer using MTO will only begin crafting a piece of furniture once the order is placed, ensuring that each item meets the exact specifications of the customer.

Make-to-Stock (MTS)

In contrast, Make-to-Stock involves producing items in anticipation of future demand and storing them in inventory until they are sold. This strategy is common in industries where lead times are long, and products are standardized. For instance, a canned food manufacturer might use MTS, producing and storing large quantities of products based on forecasted demand, ensuring quick availability to customers.

Assemble-to-Order (ATO)

Assemble-to-Order strikes a balance between MTO and MTS. In this strategy, basic components are manufactured in advance and assembled into final products once an order is received. This approach reduces lead times and still allows for a degree of customization. An example of ATO is a computer manufacturer that keeps basic components like hard drives, RAM, and processors in stock and assembles them into a complete system based on customer specifications.

Production Strategy, Product-Process Choice Matrix, and Process Maps

The choice among MTO, MTS, and ATO is significantly influenced by the product-process choice matrix, a framework that aligns the production process with the product's characteristics, such as its variety and volume. For instance, high-volume, low-variety products are often aligned with more streamlined and repetitive processes (like assembly lines), making them suitable for MTS strategies. In contrast, low-volume, high-variety products may require more flexible processes (like job shops), lending themselves to MTO strategies.

Process maps play a pivotal role in this integration. They provide a visual representation of the workflow and processes involved in manufacturing a product. By using process maps, companies can analyze and optimize their production processes to align with their chosen strategy—be it MTO, MTS, or ATO. For example, in MTO, process maps can help identify areas where customization can be incorporated without significant disruption to the flow. In MTS, they can highlight areas for efficiency improvements to minimize waste and

maximize output. For ATO, process maps can be critical in ensuring that the assembly process is flexible yet efficient, allowing for quick response to customer orders while maintaining control over inventory levels.

In summary, the relationship between production strategies, the product-process choice matrix, and process maps is a dynamic and interdependent one. Each element informs and shapes the other, creating a comprehensive framework that guides manufacturers in aligning their operational processes with market needs, customer expectations, and business objectives. This integrated approach enables companies to not only optimize their production processes but also strategically position themselves in the market, leveraging their manufacturing capabilities as a competitive advantage.

5.7 CONCLUSION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In this chapter, we have explored the critical elements of process design and analysis in supply chain management, illustrating the significance of understanding and optimizing every step of a process to achieve operational excellence. Beginning with the foundational input-output process model, we delved into how resources are transformed through business operations, offering a high-level framework that simplifies the complexity of process analysis. This was further enriched by practical examples and the introduction of process maps, which provide a detailed visual representation of a process's workflow, allowing for a deeper understanding of the intricacies involved. Through these tools, we highlighted the importance of identifying bottlenecks, understanding capacity, and evaluating performance metrics such as efficiency, productivity, utilization, and cycle time, underscoring their impact on a business's bottom line.

Moreover, the chapter emphasized the utility of Little's Law in quantifying process flow and duration, and how the product-process matrix and production strategies guide businesses in aligning their operational processes with product characteristics and market demands. By integrating these analytical tools and strategic frameworks, businesses are equipped to navigate the complexities of process design, from the shop floor to the service desk, ensuring that their operations are not only efficient but also adaptable to changing market conditions and customer needs. Ultimately, this chapter serves as a comprehensive guide for students and practitioners alike, offering insights into the principles of process design and analysis that are essential for driving continuous improvement and achieving competitive advantage in the dynamic field of supply chain management.

5.8 CHAPTER 5 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

Section 5.1: Introduction

- **Question:** What is the significance of process design in both service and manufacturing sectors?

Section 5.2: Understanding “Process”

- **Question:** What is the input-output process model, and how does it help in understanding business processes?

Section 5.3: Process Maps

- **Question:** What are process maps, and why are they important in process management?

Section 5.4: Measuring the Performance of a Process

- **Question:** What are the key performance metrics used to measure process performance, and why are they important?

Section 5.5: Process Analysis Example

- **Question:** How does identifying the bottleneck in a process help in improving overall operational efficiency?

Section 5.6: Product-Process Matrix

- **Question:** What is the product-process choice matrix, and how does it influence production strategies?

Situational Questions:

Situation 1: You are managing a bakery where the bread-making process is divided into three steps: mixing (45 minutes per batch), baking (60 minutes per batch), and packaging (30 minutes per batch). Using the

concepts discussed in this chapter, explain how you would identify and address the bottleneck in this process to increase the number of batches produced in an 8-hour shift.

Situation 2: A customer service center has observed that during peak hours, customers experience long wait times, leading to dissatisfaction. Applying Little's Law and the key performance metrics from this chapter, outline a strategy to reduce wait times and improve customer satisfaction.

Situation 3: Your company is considering whether to implement a make-to-stock or make-to-order production strategy for a new product line. Explain how the product-process choice matrix and the characteristics of the product (e.g., volume, variety) would influence this decision and how process maps could be used to optimize the chosen strategy.

Chapter 5 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=415#h5p-12>

PART VI

CHAPTER 6: SYSTEM THINKING AND DATA MANAGEMENT

6.1 WHY INVENTORY MANAGEMENT?

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In 2001, Cisco Systems, an American multinational technology conglomerate renowned for its networking hardware, software, and telecommunications equipment, faced a significant setback. The company had to write off a staggering \$2.15 billion in inventory. A “write-off” in accounting terms means reducing the book value of an asset to zero, indicating it has no future value or won’t generate any future benefits. For Cisco, this was a clear indication of the consequences of having too much inventory.

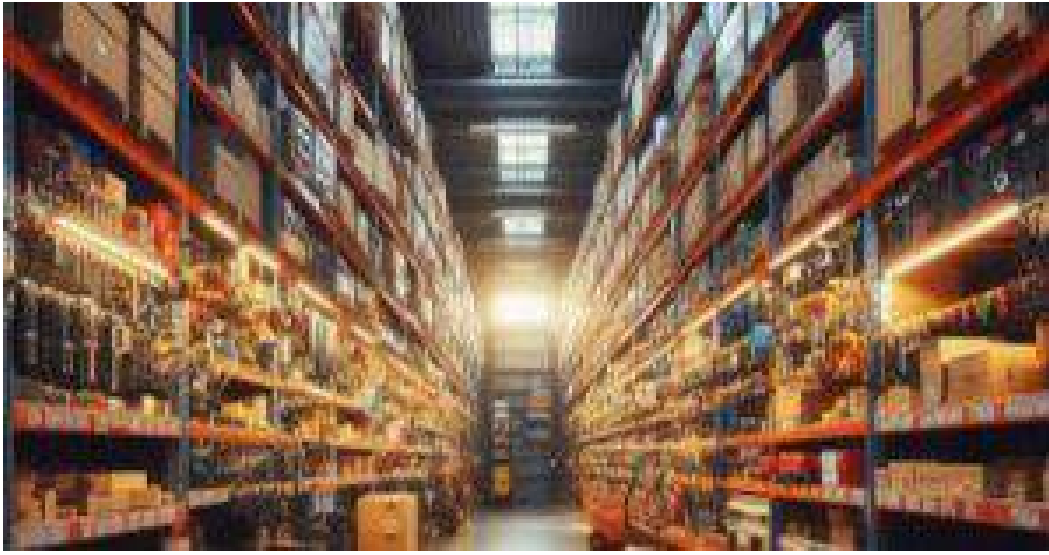
Fast forward to 2018, the UK faced a chicken crisis. KFC, one of the world’s most popular fast-food chains, ran out of chicken, leading to the temporary closure of more than half of its 900 UK outlets. This incident showcased the challenges and repercussions of having too little inventory. Beyond the immediate loss of revenue, KFC faced potential long-term consequences such as diminished customer trust and tarnished brand reputation.



These two incidents underscore the dual challenges in inventory management: having too much or having too little. Both scenarios present their unique set of problems, but at their core, they highlight the importance of balance in inventory management. While Cisco and KFC serve as notable examples, countless companies across industries grapple with similar challenges. For instance, banks occasionally face backlash when ATMs run out of cash, especially during peak times or holidays. Similarly, airlines might overbook flights, anticipating some cancellations, but when those cancellations don’t materialize, they’re left with the challenge of accommodating all passengers. In the hospitality sector, hotels might either overbook rooms, leading to

unhappy guests, or have too many vacant rooms, resulting in lost revenue. Whether it's overstocking seasonal items, underestimating the demand for a new service, or not having the right resources available at the right time, inventory missteps can be costly and detrimental to both reputation and bottom line.

In this chapter, we will guide you through the intricacies of inventory management, ensuring you're well-equipped to avoid the pitfalls of having either too much or too little stock in the businesses you join or manage. Such errors, as illustrated by the examples of Cisco and KFC, can have significant repercussions, both financially and reputationally.



To provide a comprehensive understanding, we'll cover the following foundational areas:

- **Role and Types of Inventory:** Delve into the various kinds of inventory and understand their distinct roles within a supply chain.
- **Why Inventory is Created:** Uncover the primary reasons businesses maintain stock and the benefits it offers.
- **Costs Associated with Inventory:** Familiarize yourself with the different expenses related to holding, ordering, and managing inventory.
- **ABC Analysis:** Learn this method of categorizing inventory based on its value and importance, helping businesses prioritize their stock management.
- **ROP and EOQ:** Grasp these essential inventory management formulas that guide businesses on when and how much to order.
- **Safety Stock:** Understand the concept of safety stock and its role in ensuring businesses can meet unexpected spikes in demand.

By the end of this chapter, you'll have a solid foundation in inventory management, empowering you to make informed decisions and optimize business operations.

6.2 FUNDAMENTALS OF INVENTORY: DEFINITION, TYPES, PURPOSE, AND COSTS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Inventory is any asset that is not currently being used but is intended for some future use. At its core, the term “asset” signifies that inventory holds value. This value can be in the form of raw materials waiting to be transformed, products on a shelf ready for purchase, or goods in transit to a destination. Reflecting on our earlier example, Cisco’s unsold products had to be written off because they no longer held any value. Despite being physical items, their inability to generate future revenue or benefits meant they could no longer be considered valuable assets or inventory.



Consider a retail store: products lining the shelves are inventory. They are assets intended for future use, in this case, to be sold to customers. Though they aren’t being used at the very moment, they hold potential value for both the business (in terms of revenue) and the customer (in terms of utility or satisfaction). Similarly, think of a library. Books sitting on the shelves are inventory for the library. While they are not being read at that exact moment, they are assets intended for future use by patrons. Each book holds value in the knowledge or entertainment it offers, waiting for the right reader to come along and borrow it. In both scenarios, the items are assets with an anticipated future use, embodying the essence of what inventory represents.

6.2.1 Types of Inventory

Inventory, depending on its stage in the operational process, can be categorized into several distinct types. The primary types of inventory include Raw Materials (RM), Work-In-Progress (WIP), Finished Goods (FG), and Maintenance, Repair, and Operations (MRO). Categorizing inventory in this manner provides a structured approach that allows different departments within a business to manage specific segments of the inventory, optimizing costs and ensuring smooth operations, whether in manufacturing or service sectors.

Raw Materials (RM) Raw materials are the foundational components or inputs that a firm uses to produce the items it sells or services it provides. In a manufacturing context, this could be basic elements like metals or textiles. In the service sector, it might refer to base data, software components, or initial research essential for a particular service. The management and control of raw materials typically fall under the purview of the purchasing department in manufacturing or the procurement team in services. They determine how much to acquire and when, ensuring that production or service delivery can proceed without interruptions.

Work-In-Progress (WIP) Work-in-progress inventory consists of items or tasks that are part of the operational process but are not yet complete. In manufacturing, this pertains to products that are underway. In services, it could be a project that's started but not yet finalized or a software application in the development phase. This type of inventory is primarily overseen by production planning in manufacturing or project management teams in services. They decide on aspects like batch sizes, production schedules, or project milestones.

Finished Goods (FG) Finished goods are the completed products or services ready for consumption or delivery. In manufacturing, this refers to items ready for sale. In the service sector, it could be a completed IT project, a finalized financial report, or a training module ready for delivery. The management of finished goods or completed services is often influenced by the marketing department or client relationship teams. They gauge market demand, client needs, or customer preferences to determine the quantity or scope of offerings.

Maintenance, Repair, and Operations (MRO) MRO inventory includes items essential for the operational process but aren't directly involved in the creation of the end product or service. This can be spare parts, maintenance supplies, or any items used in the upkeep of operational facilities or tools, whether it's machinery in manufacturing or software tools in a tech firm. The management of MRO inventory ensures that the production or service delivery process can continue without hitches due to equipment breakdowns or lack of essential supplies.

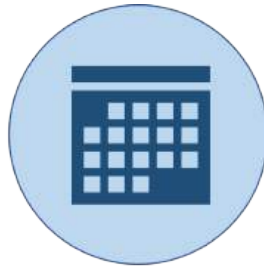
By understanding the distinct characteristics and needs of each type of inventory, organizations, whether in the manufacturing or service sectors, can allocate responsibilities to specific departments. This ensures that each segment of the inventory is managed effectively, resources are utilized optimally, and the entire operational process is streamlined.

6.2.2 Purpose of Inventory

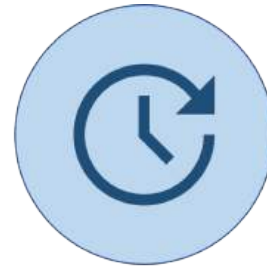
Inventory serves various purposes in an organization, each addressing specific operational needs and challenges. By understanding the reasons behind holding different types of inventory, businesses can make informed decisions that balance costs with service levels and operational efficiency. Here, we delve into the primary purposes of inventory:



Safety Stock



Anticipation Inventory



Cycle Stock

Safety Stock Safety stock is maintained to account for unexpected variations in demand or unforeseen disruptions in supply. It acts as a buffer against uncertainties, ensuring that even if there's a sudden spike in demand or a delay in replenishment, the business can continue to meet customer requirements without any interruptions. For instance, consider a bakery where the demand for cakes can vary between 80 to 130 cakes per day, with an average demand of 105 cakes. The bakery chooses to make and stock 125 cakes daily to ensure a high level of availability for their customers. The extra 20 cakes ($125 - 105$) represent the safety stock, ensuring that most customers can purchase a cake even on unexpectedly busy days.

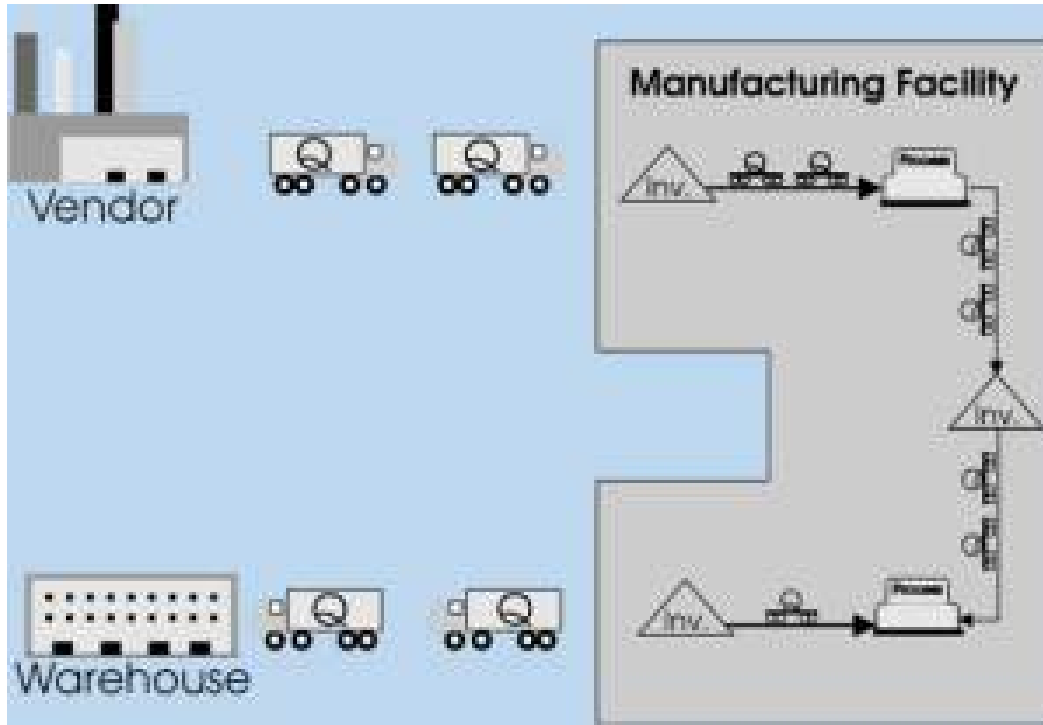
Anticipation Inventory Anticipation inventory is held in expectation of a known future event that will affect either demand or supply. This could be a planned sale, a seasonal demand surge, or an anticipated increase in prices or supply shortages. By holding anticipation inventory, businesses can prepare for these events and ensure they can meet the increased demand or avoid higher costs. A classic example is winterwear stocked up by retailers in anticipation of the cold season.

Cycle Stock Cycle stock is the inventory kept on hand because of the way specific processes are structured. It's the inventory that rotates as orders of size Q are received and inventory is refilled. If Q is the quantity ordered each cycle, then at the beginning of the order interval, cycle inventory is at its maximum (Q), and at the end, it reaches zero right before the next order is received.

Average cycle inventory is defined as: $\text{Average Cycle Inventory} = Q/2$

For instance, if a retail company's average daily demand is 40 units and the plan is to have a delivery of $Q=40$ every week, the cycle stock would $40/2$ or 20 on a weekly basis. Similarly, if a manufacturing policy dictates production in batches of 2,500 units per batch, the average inventory held due to this process would be at

least half of that, or 1,250 units. Cycle stock ensures that there's always enough inventory to meet the demand between replenishments or production cycles.



Understanding the purpose behind each type of inventory allows businesses to optimize their inventory levels, ensuring they have the right amount of stock for each need. This not only helps in meeting customer demand efficiently but also in managing costs and improving overall operational efficiency.

6.2.3 Costs of Inventory

Effectively managing inventory is a delicate task that hinges on understanding the costs associated with it. Ultimately, the best strategy is a balance between the cost of having inventory and the cost of not having inventory. Clearly, as a firm increases its inventory, the costs of having inventory rise, while the costs of not having enough inventory decrease. Conversely, as inventory levels are reduced, the costs of having stock diminish, but the risks and costs associated with stockouts and missed sales opportunities increase. The challenge for businesses is to find that level of inventory where the sum of these two categories of costs is minimized.

Costs of having inventory can be further classified as Inventory Holding Cost and Ordering/Set-up Cost. Other costs associated with inventory include Purchasing and Transportation Costs. Costs associated with not having enough inventory typically are categorized as Shortage costs.

Inventory Holding Costs:

Storage Cost: This pertains to the expenses related to warehousing and ensuring the security of the items. The storage cost is calculated by dividing the total warehousing and security expenses for a specific period (e.g., a year) by the number of items that flow through during that period. For instance, if the total warehousing cost is \$400,000 and 600,000 items are sold in a year, the storage cost is \$0.67 per item per year.

Capital Cost: Money tied up in inventory that could have been used elsewhere, potentially earning interest or being invested in other business opportunities. Capital costs are determined by multiplying the average inventory value by the firm's weighted average cost of capital (WACC). If a company's average inventory value is \$1 million and its WACC is 8%, the capital cost would be \$80,000.

Obsolescence: As products age or become outdated, they may need to be sold at discounted prices or might not sell at all. This cost encompasses expenses related to end-of-life promotions, retailer buybacks, and the cost of unsold products. The obsolescence cost per product is calculated by dividing the total of these costs by the number of products sold.

Insurance and Taxes: As inventory levels rise, so do the associated insurance premiums. Additionally, in some jurisdictions, businesses may be subject to inventory taxes based on their inventory levels.

Ordering Cost:

The administrative costs associated with placing orders with vendors can vary based on the frequency and size of the orders. Larger, less frequent orders typically require less administrative effort than smaller, more frequent orders. The ordering cost is calculated by dividing the total expenses related to the ordering process (including salaries, software costs, and other related expenses) by the number of orders placed.

Costs of not Having enough Inventory:

Stockouts: When there's insufficient inventory to meet demand, businesses face the risk of lost sales and potentially losing customers in the long run. Estimating these costs can be challenging, so businesses often rely on thumb rules to gauge the cost of lost sales and the long-term impact of lost customers.

Rush Orders: When stock levels are low, and there's a sudden demand, businesses might need to expedite deliveries, which come at a premium. The cost associated with these rush orders is determined by dividing the total expedited delivery costs by the number of products sold.

Lost Goodwill: Running out of stock can tarnish a company's reputation, leading to a loss of customer trust. Quantifying this cost is complex, and businesses often resort to thumb rules or industry benchmarks to estimate it.

All these costs are calculated based on past data and applied to future orders, operating under the implicit assumption that the future will not be significantly different from the past. By understanding and effectively managing these costs, businesses can optimize their inventory levels, ensuring profitability and smooth operations.

6.3 ECONOMIC ORDER QUANTITY (EOQ)

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The **Economic Order Quantity** (EOQ) is a foundational concept in inventory management. It provides a model to determine the optimal order quantity a firm should maintain to minimize the total inventory costs. At its core, the EOQ model is designed to strike a balance between the costs associated with holding inventory and the costs related to ordering inventory.

It's important to note that the basic EOQ model focuses primarily on these two costs and does not factor in other potential costs like stockouts, obsolescence, or lost goodwill. This makes the model a simplified representation, but it's still a valuable tool for many businesses, especially when used as a starting point for more complex inventory decisions.

Assumptions of the EOQ Model:

- **Constant Demand:** The model assumes that the demand for the product is known and remains consistent throughout the period.
- **Instantaneous Replenishment:** Once an order is placed, the inventory is replenished immediately, meaning there's no lead time.
- **Only Ordering and Holding Costs:** The model considers only the costs of ordering and holding inventory. Other costs, like stockouts or obsolescence, are not factored in.
- **Fixed Order Cost:** The cost of placing an order remains constant, regardless of the order size.
- **Fixed Holding Cost:** The cost to hold or store an item in inventory for a specific period remains constant.
- **No Quantity Discounts:** The purchase price of the product is constant, meaning no discounts are given for bulk purchases.
- **No Stockouts:** The model operates under the assumption that stockouts are not allowed or are not a consideration.

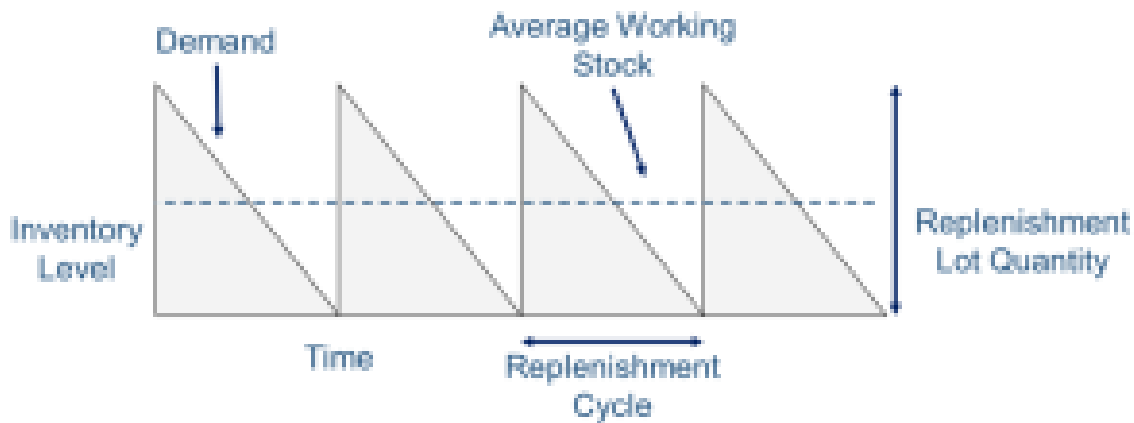
While the EOQ model is based on these assumptions, it's essential to recognize that real-world scenarios might not always align perfectly. However, the model provides a foundational understanding and a starting point for businesses to delve deeper into their specific inventory challenges and refine their strategies accordingly.

6.3.1 Understanding the EOQ Model

Let us delve into the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) model using a practical example to better grasp its

concepts. Consider a firm that has a yearly demand for 80,000 widgets. They've calculated their holding cost (C_h) to be \$1 per item per year and their ordering cost (C_o) to be \$400 per order. Now, suppose the firm decides to order 20,000 units at one time.

In this scenario, the firm will commence with an inventory of 20,000 units. Given the constant demand, the inventory will deplete to zero at a steady rate. As soon as the inventory reaches zero, it is instantaneously replenished, bringing the stock back up to 20,000 units. This cycle of depleting and replenishing will continue throughout the year. Since the annual demand is 80,000 units and each order brings in 20,000 units, this cycle will repeat itself precisely four times in the year. The inventory position over the year is depicted in the sawtooth diagram shown below.



Ordering Cost Calculation:

Yearly Demand (D): 80,000 units

Size of one order (Q): 20,000 units

Ordering cost per order (C_o): \$400

Given the above, the number of orders the firm will place in a year is calculated as: Number of Orders (N) = $D/Q = 80,000/20,000 = 4$ orders per year

The total ordering cost for the year is then:

Total Ordering Cost (T_0) = $N \times$ Ordering cost per order

Total Ordering Cost = $4 \times \$400 = \$1,600$

Holding Cost Calculation:

The holding cost (C_h) is provided as \$1 per item per year. If a firm were to maintain a constant inventory of 20 units throughout the year, the total holding cost would amount to $20 \times \$1 = \$20$. However, as indicated in the diagram above, the firm's inventory isn't constant. It peaks at 20,000 units and drops to zero. To account for this fluctuation, we need to calculate the average inventory in the cycle:

$$\text{Average Inventory: } I_{\text{avg}} = \frac{(I_{\text{max}} + I_{\text{min}})}{2}$$

Where I_{max} represents the maximum inventory and I_{min} is the minimum inventory value in the cycle.

In this scenario: $I_{\text{avg}} = \frac{(20,000 + 0)}{2} = 10,000$ units.

Total Holding Cost, $T_h = \text{Average Inventory} \times \text{Holding Cost per Unit}$

$$T_h = 10,000 \times \$1 = \$10,000.$$

Consequently, the total inventory-related costs is the sum of ordering and holding costs:

$$T = T_o + T_h$$

$$T = \$1,600 + \$10,000 = \$11,600.$$

If the firm decides to have an order size is 5000, the total costs would be different:

Average Inventory, $I_{\text{avg}} = \frac{(5000 + 0)}{2} = 2,500$ units.

Total Holding Cost, $T_h = \text{Average Inventory} \times \text{Holding Cost per Unit}$

$$T_h = 2,500 \times \$1 = \$2,500.$$

Given the yearly demand of 80,000 units and an order size of 5,000 units, the firm will place 16 orders throughout the year.

Total Ordering Cost, $T_o = \text{Number of Orders} \times \text{Cost per Order}$

$$T_o = 16 \times \$400 = \$6,400.$$

Total inventory-related costs,

$$T = T_o + T_h$$

$$T = \$6,400 + \$2,500 = \$8,900.$$

We can represent both these cases in this table:

Order Size (units)	Total Holding Cost (T_h)	Total Ordering Cost (T_o)	Total Cost (T)
20,000	\$10,000	\$1,600	\$11,600
5,000	\$2,500	\$6,400	\$8,900

From the table, we can observe the following:

- As the order size increases, the Total Holding Cost (T_h) also increases. This is because a larger order size means more inventory is held on average throughout the year, leading to higher holding costs.
- Conversely, as the order size increases, the Total Ordering Cost (T_o) decreases. A larger order size means fewer orders are placed throughout the year, resulting in lower ordering costs.

So, one way to find the lowest inventory cost is to calculate the total cost (T) for multiple order sizes and find the order size at which the total cost is minimum. This is presented in the table below:

Order Size (units)	Total Holding Cost (T_h)	Total Ordering Cost (T_o)	Total Cost (T)
2,500	\$1,250	\$ 12,800	\$14,050
5,000	\$2,500	\$ 6,400	\$8,900
6,000	\$3,000	\$ 5,333	\$8,333
7,000	\$3,500	\$ 4,571	\$8,071
8,000	\$4,000	\$ 4,000	\$8,000
10,000	\$5,000	\$ 3,200	\$8,200
12,000	\$6,000	\$ 2,667	\$8,667
15,000	\$7,500	\$ 2,133	\$9,633
20,000	\$10,000	\$ 1,600	\$11,600

We can represent the table in this chart:



As we can see, the lowest total cost is for an order size of 8000 units when the total holding costs (T_h) is equal to the total ordering costs (T_o). This order size for the lowest total inventory related costs is called the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ).





One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=336#oembed-1>

From the graph, it will be evident that as the order size increases, the total cost first decreases, reaches a minimum, and then starts to increase again. This U-shaped curve is characteristic of the EOQ model. The point at which the total cost is minimized, in this case at an order size of 8,000 units, is the optimal order quantity. This is the quantity that minimizes the combined holding and ordering costs, ensuring the most cost-effective inventory management for the firm.

Building on our previous discussion, while the tabular method provides clarity on how costs change with order size, it's not the most efficient way to determine the optimal order quantity in real-world scenarios. Especially for businesses dealing with a multitude of products, manually calculating costs for various order sizes would be cumbersome. Fortunately, there's a more streamlined approach to find the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) that minimizes the total inventory-related costs. The minimum cost, representing a balance between holding and ordering costs, is expressed as:

Total Holding Cost (T_h) = Total Ordering Cost (T_o)

$$\frac{D}{Q} * C_o = \frac{D}{2} * C_h$$

Therefore, extracting Q out of the equation we have: the EOQ formula.

$$Q = EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2 * D * C_o}{C_h}}$$

Where:

- EOQ = Economic Order Quantity (the optimal order size)
- D = Annual demand or usage for the inventory item
- C_o = Cost to place a single order (ordering cost)
- C_h = Cost to hold one unit of inventory for one year (holding or carrying cost)

The EOQ formula is derived from the principle of balancing the ordering and holding costs, ensuring that the sum of these costs is minimized. By using this formula, businesses can quickly determine the optimal order size that minimizes total inventory costs.

Applying the formula to our example:

Given:

$D = 80,000$ units (annual demand)

$C_o = \$400$ (ordering cost per order)

$C_h = \$1$ (holding cost per unit per year)

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 80,000 \times 400}{1}}$$

$$EOQ = \sqrt{64,000,000}$$

$$EOQ = 8,000$$

Thus, using the EOQ formula, the optimal order size that minimizes the total inventory-related costs for the firm is 8,000 units. This result aligns with our earlier tabular method, validating the efficiency and accuracy of the EOQ formula.

6.4 SYSTEMS OF HOW MUCH TO ORDER AND WHEN TO ORDER

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

6.4.1 How Much to Order

Building on our exploration of the EOQ model, it's evident that while EOQ provides a mathematical approach to determine the optimal order quantity, it's just one of the many methods available. The EOQ model, despite its utility, has certain concerns:

1. **Assumptions:** The EOQ model operates under several assumptions, such as constant demand and instantaneous replenishment, which might not hold true for all businesses.
2. **Static Nature:** The model doesn't account for dynamic changes in market conditions, demand fluctuations, or supply chain disruptions.
3. **Exclusion of Other Costs:** While the model considers ordering and holding costs, it often overlooks other significant costs like stockouts, obsolescence, or lost goodwill.
4. **Lack of Flexibility:** The EOQ model might not be adaptable to businesses with diverse product lines, varying demand patterns, or those operating in volatile markets.

Given these concerns, the EOQ model might not always be the most practical choice for firms. Therefore, businesses often explore other systems to decide how much to order. Broadly, there are two primary options:

a. Lot-for-Lot Systems:

In a lot-for-lot system, the order quantity matches the exact demand for a specific period. This approach minimizes holding costs since there's no excess inventory. It's particularly suitable for products with irregular demand patterns or those with a short shelf life. Firms following Just-In-Time (JIT) inventory systems often adopt the lot-for-lot approach. JIT emphasizes reducing waste by ordering and producing only what is needed, when it's needed. We'll delve deeper into the intricacies of JIT in a subsequent chapter.

b. Lot Size-Based Ordering:

In this system, preference is given to ordering in specific lot sizes, often influenced by external factors. For instance:

- **Full Load Preference:** Companies might prefer to order in full truckloads or container loads to optimize transportation costs.
- **Discounts:** Ordering in select lot sizes might make a firm eligible for bulk purchase discounts, leading to reduced per-unit costs.
- **EOQ:** As we've seen, EOQ is a lot size-based ordering system where the order quantity is determined based on minimizing associated costs.

In conclusion, while the EOQ model offers a structured approach to determine order quantities, it's essential for businesses to evaluate its applicability in their specific context and consider alternative systems that might be more aligned with their operational realities and strategic goals.

6.4.2 When to Order: Key Systems

Determining the optimal quantity to order is only half the battle in inventory management. The other crucial aspect is deciding when to place that order. Two primary systems guide this decision-making process: (1) Reorder Point (ROP) based ordering and (2) Periodic ordering.

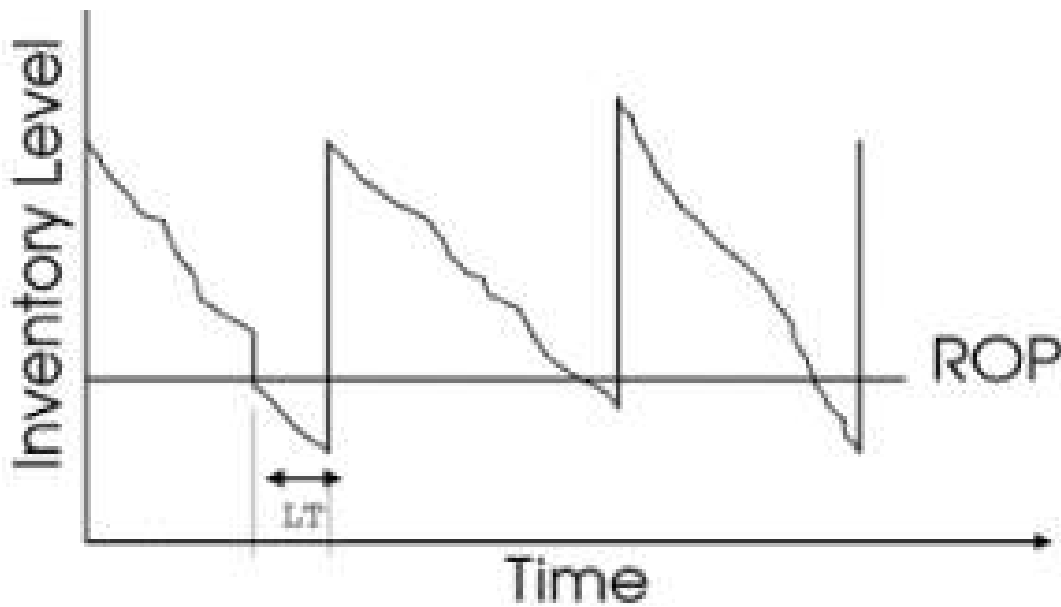


Reorder Point (ROP)



Periodic Inventory

Reorder Point (ROP) Based Ordering:



The Reorder Point (ROP) is the inventory level at which a new order should be placed to replenish stock before it runs out. The primary factor influencing ROP is the lead time, which is the duration between placing an order and receiving the inventory.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=345#oembed-1>

Example: Let's consider a firm that uses 20 units of a particular item every day. If the lead time for replenishing this item is 4 days, then the firm would need 80 units (20 units/day x 4 days) to cover its needs during this period. Thus, the reorder point would be set at 80 units. This means that as soon as the inventory level drops to 80 units, a new order should be placed to ensure continuous availability.

$$\text{ROP} = (\text{Demand per period}) * (\text{number of periods in the LT})$$

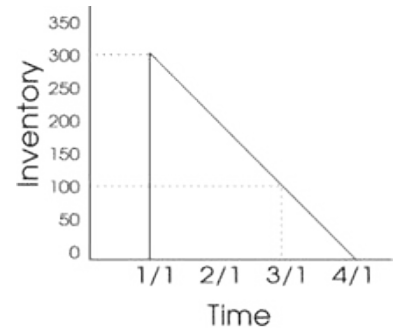
Another Example: Suppose:

$D = 1200$ units per year (100 units per month)

$Q = 300$ units

Lead Time = $LT = 1$ month.

When should we place the order?



However, the above calculation assumes a constant and predictable demand. In reality, demand can fluctuate due to various factors, from seasonal variations to sudden market changes. To account for these uncertainties, businesses often maintain a safety stock. The revised ROP formula, considering safety stock, is:

$$ROP = (\text{Demand during Lead Time}) + \text{Safety Stock}$$

$$ROP = DLT + SS$$

Where:

- DLT is the demand during lead time = Average Demand per period * number of periods in LT
- SS is the safety stock = $Z \times \sigma \times \sqrt{LT}$

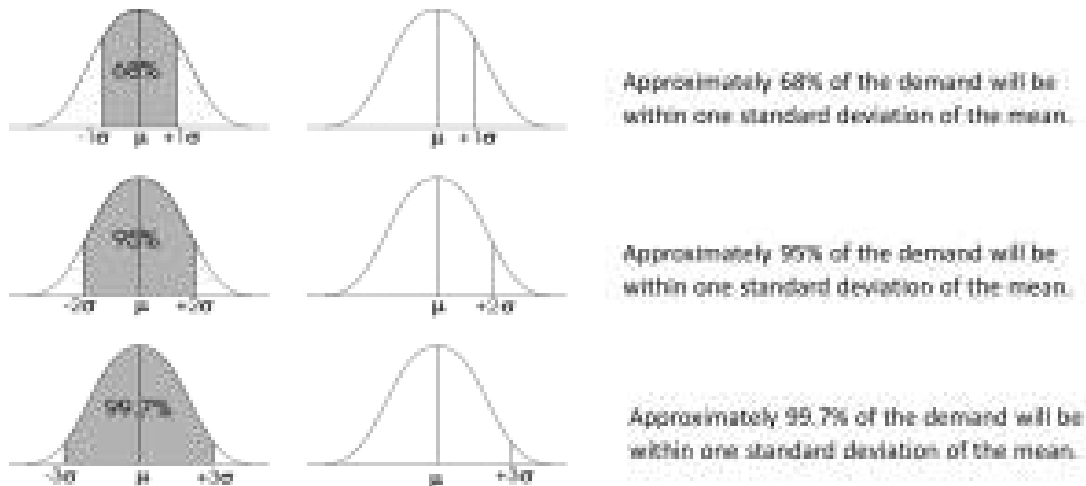
Safety stock acts as a buffer against uncertainties in demand or supply. It ensures that even if there's an unexpected spike in demand or a delay in replenishment, the business can continue to meet customer requirements without any interruptions.

Safety stock can manifest in various forms across the supply chain. For instance, a company might maintain additional raw material inventory to buffer against erratic suppliers or extended delivery lead times. Work-In-Progress (WIP) buffers might be in place to handle unscheduled maintenance breakdowns in machinery. Similarly, there might be Maintenance, Repair, and Operations (MRO) buffers. Regardless of its form, the underlying principle of safety stock remains consistent: it's a trade-off between the benefits of having extra inventory (like ensuring customer satisfaction or production continuity) and the associated costs (like holding costs).

While the concept of safety stock is straightforward, determining the right amount to hold can be complex. Too little safety stock can lead to stockouts and lost sales, while too much can inflate inventory holding costs. Hence, businesses need a systematic approach to set safety stock levels.

Calculating Safety Stock using the Normal Distribution

One widely accepted method to calculate safety stock is based on the normal distribution of demand or lead time variability. The normal distribution, often referred to as the bell curve, describes how values of a variable are distributed in a dataset. Most values cluster around the central mean (or average), and fewer and fewer are found as you move away from the mean in either direction.



Knowing these facts enables us to easily determine the chances (probabilities) of demand occurring more than or less than or between any of the values. For example, if $\mu=100$, $\sigma = 20$, the probability that the demand will exceed 140 is 2.5% (from the second set of the above figures).

Given the assumption of normally distributed demand, the safety stock can be calculated using the formula:

$$\text{Safety Stock} = Z \times \sigma \times \sqrt{LT}$$

Where:

Z: The Z-score or service factor, corresponding to the desired service level. The desired service level is the desired probability of not running out of stock in any inventory cycle. It also can be defined equivalently as the ability to fill customer demand from inventory stock.

σ : The standard deviation of demand during the lead time.

LT: The delivery lead time

This method allows businesses to balance the cost of holding extra inventory against the cost of a stockout, ensuring that service levels are met while optimizing inventory costs. By understanding and effectively managing safety stock, businesses can strike a balance between operational efficiency and customer satisfaction.

Another example: Demand is normally distributed with:

Mean Demand per Month = 75 units

Standard Deviation of Demand per Month = 20 units

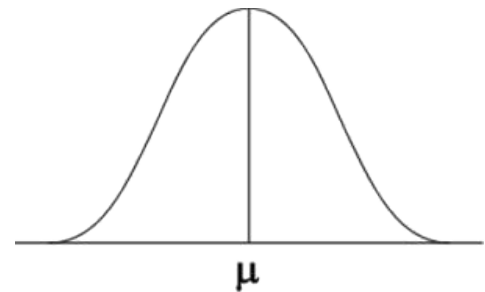
Desired Service Level = 97.5 %

Lead Time = 1 month

ROP = ?

QUESTIONS:

- What is the possibility of a stock-out when ROP is set equal to



the average demand during lead time? (i.e., DLT only)

- What is the level of customer service in this case?
- How can we improve customer service level or, conversely, decrease the probability of stock-outs?
- Thus, the amount over the average demand during lead time in the ROP amount is referred to as “Safety Stock”.
- What would be the customer service level if safety stock is set equal to two times the standard deviation? (i.e. $ROP = DLT + 2 \times \sigma \times \sqrt{LT}$)

Example: Imagine a company, ABC Electronics, that sells a specific type of battery. They have observed the following:

- Average daily demand: 100 batteries
- Lead time for replenishment (from the time of order to delivery): 5 days
- Standard deviation of daily demand: 10 batteries
- Desired service level: 95% (This means ABC Electronics wants to be 95% confident they won't run out of stock before the next shipment arrives.)

Given the service level, the Z-score (or service factor) for 95% is approximately 1.645. This value can be found in standard Z-score tables or through statistical software.

Calculation:

1. Demand during Lead Time:

Average Daily Demand $\times$ Lead Time = $100 \times 5 = 500$ batteries
Average Daily Demand $\times$ Lead Time = $100 \times 5 = 500$ batteries

2. Standard Deviation of Demand during Lead Time:

$\sigma_{\text{Lead Time}} = \sigma \times \sqrt{LT} = 10 \times \sqrt{5} \approx 22.36$ batteries

1. Safety Stock Calculation: Safety Stock = $Z \times \sigma_{\text{Lead Time}}$

$1.645 \times 22.36 \approx 36.78$

Rounding up, we get a safety stock of 37 batteries.

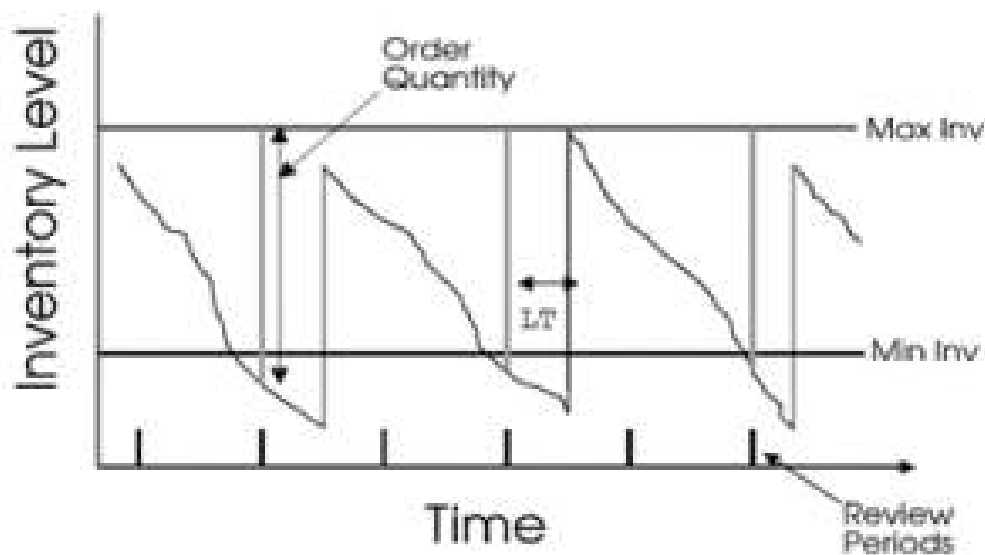
Interpretation: ABC Electronics should keep a safety stock of 37 batteries to ensure a 95% service level, meaning they are 95% confident they won't run out of stock before the next shipment arrives, given the observed variability in demand.

This example demonstrates how the safety stock formula can be applied in a real-world scenario. By using

this method, businesses can determine the optimal amount of safety stock to hold, balancing the costs of holding inventory against the risks of stockouts.

Two-Bin System: A special case of the ROP system is the two-bin system. In this method, inventory items are stored in two separate bins. The first bin contains the quantity that will be used up first, while the second bin holds the reserve stock (often equivalent to the reorder point). When the first bin is empty, it's a visual signal to reorder, and items from the second bin are used in the interim. This system is particularly useful for inexpensive components, streamlining the tracking and reordering process, ensuring that there's no stockout while the new order is being processed.

6.4.3 Periodic Inventory Ordering System



The periodic inventory ordering system can be likened to our routine of visiting the grocery store every weekend. Just as we assess our needs for the upcoming week and replenish our pantry accordingly, businesses using the periodic system determine how much stock they'll need for a set period and order accordingly.

Let's delve into this with an example. Imagine a firm that uses 20 units of a particular item every day. If the firm decides to replenish its stock once a week, it needs to ensure that at the beginning of the week, it has an inventory of 140 units (I_{max}) to last the entire week. This is because:

$$I_{max} = DRP$$

Where DRP stands for Demand during Review Period.

However, let's add another layer of complexity. Suppose the supplier has a lead time of two days to deliver the items. In this scenario, the firm would need to account for the consumption during those two days as well. Therefore, the firm would need to start the week with an inventory of 180 units: 140 units to last the week and an additional 40 units to cover the two-day supplier lead time. This can be represented as:

$$I_{max} = DRP + DLT$$

Where DLT stands for Demand during Lead Time.

Yet, as we discussed in the context of the Reorder Point (ROP) system, demand isn't always constant. There might be fluctuations and unexpected spikes. To account for this variability, a safety stock is maintained. Thus, the maximum inventory level becomes:

$$I_{\max} = \text{DRP} + \text{DLT} + \text{Safety Stock}$$

In the periodic system, during each ordering cycle, the buyer checks the current inventory level. They then subtract this from the $I_{\max}$ to determine how much needs to be ordered. This ensures that the firm always has enough stock on hand to meet its needs for the set period, while also accounting for lead times and potential variability in demand.

In the periodic inventory ordering system, the order size isn't a fixed quantity like in the EOQ model. Instead, it's determined based on the maximum inventory level ($I_{\max}$) the firm wants to maintain and the current inventory level at the time of ordering.

The order size, often denoted as Q , is calculated as: $I_{\max} - I_{\text{current}}$

Where:

- $I_{\max}$ is the maximum inventory level the firm aims to have. This includes the demand during the review period, demand during the lead time, and any safety stock.
- I_{current} is the current inventory level at the time of placing the order.

To illustrate, let's continue with our previous example. If the firm aims to have an $I_{\max}$ of 180 units and currently has 50 units in stock, the order size would be:

$$Q = 180 - 50 = 130$$

So, the firm would order 130 units to replenish its inventory to the desired maximum level.

This approach ensures that the firm always orders just enough to bring its inventory up to the desired level, accounting for what's already in stock. It offers flexibility, allowing the firm to adjust order quantities based on actual usage and current inventory levels, rather than sticking to a fixed order size.

6.4.4 Milk Run Pick-Ups: A Special Case in Inventory Management

In certain sectors, particularly in industries like automobile manufacturing, the dynamics of inventory management take on a unique form known as "milk run pick-ups." This method is especially prevalent in scenarios where:

1. The demand for components is relatively uniform and predictable.
2. Suppliers are located in close proximity to the main assembly or manufacturing plant.

In a milk run pick-up system, a truck departs from the main assembly plant at fixed intervals, say every two

hours. This truck follows a predetermined route, visiting a specific set of suppliers. At each supplier, the truck picks up the required components and then transports them back to the factory. The name “milk run” is derived from the historical practice of milk delivery, where a milkman would follow a consistent route to pick up milk from various dairies and deliver it to homes or businesses.

This system offers several advantages:

- **Predictability:** Since the pick-ups are scheduled at regular intervals, suppliers can plan their production schedules accordingly, ensuring that components are ready for pick-up when the truck arrives.
- **Efficiency:** The fixed route and schedule eliminate the need for placing individual orders, reducing administrative overhead and streamlining the procurement process.
- **Reduced Inventory:** As components are delivered at regular intervals, the assembly plant can maintain lower inventory levels, relying on frequent replenishments.



Milk run pick-ups exemplify how inventory management strategies can be tailored to fit the specific needs and conditions of an industry, optimizing both the supply chain and production processes.

6.5 SPECIAL TOPICS IN INVENTORY MANAGEMENT

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

6.5.1 ABC Analysis

Inventory management is not just about ensuring that you have enough stock to meet demand, but also about managing the costs associated with holding and monitoring that inventory. Different inventory items can have different levels of importance and cost implications for a business. This is where the ABC analysis comes into play.

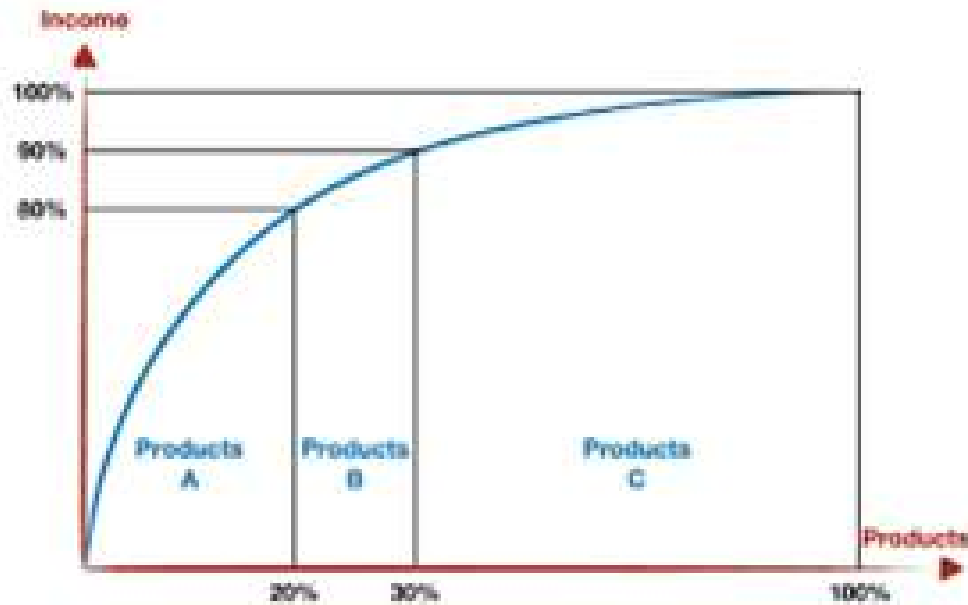
In reorder point systems, inventory levels are continuously monitored. As soon as the inventory reaches the reorder point, a new order is placed. This continuous monitoring ensures that stock levels are always optimal, but it comes at a cost. The administrative effort, technology, and manpower required to keep a constant check on inventory levels can be significant. On the other hand, periodic systems involve checking inventory levels at regular intervals, say once a week or once a month. This reduces the monitoring costs since the inventory is only checked periodically. However, the challenge here is to ensure that stock levels remain adequate between these checks.

Given the costs associated with continuous monitoring in reorder point systems, it makes sense to reserve such intensive monitoring for items that have high inventory holding costs or in other word items with a high value of usage. For items that are less expensive or less critical, periodic monitoring might be more cost-effective.

ABC Analysis of Inventory Management:

Inventory management involves managing a large number of items, even for medium-sized companies. Therefore, it is not possible to use the same control measures for all items. It is more appropriate to differentiate items based on the effort required to manage them versus the benefits derived.

The Pareto Law, also known as the 80/20 rule, can be applied to inventory items. This means that approximately 20% of the items in inventory account for 80% of the total inventory value. Additionally, 50% of the items account for less than 5% of the total inventory value. This information can be used to classify inventory items into three categories: A, B, and C.



The ABC analysis is a method used to classify inventory items based on their value of usage. For instance, if a component costs \$8 per unit and the firm anticipates using 750 units of that material in the next year, the value of that material is $\$8 \times 750 = \$6,000$.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=350#oembed-1>

Based on the ABC analysis, inventory items are classified into three categories:

- **A Items:** These are high-value items. Typically, about 20% of items contribute to approximately 80% of the inventory value. Given their high value, they are monitored closely and frequently. A items should have a higher level of safety stock than B items or C items. This is because A items are the most important items and they have the biggest impact on the business if they are out of stock.
- **B Items:** These are medium-value items. Roughly 30% of items contribute to around 15% of the inventory value. They are monitored less frequently than A items but more frequently than C items. B items should have a lower level of safety stock than A items, but still higher than C items. This is because B items are still important to the business, but they are not as critical as A items.
- **C Items:** These are low-value items. They might represent about 50% of the total items but account for just 5% of the inventory value. Given their lower value, they are monitored the least frequently. C items can have a lower level of safety stock, or even no safety stock at all. This is because C items are the least

important items and they have the smallest impact on the business if they are out of stock.

For example, a company sells a variety of groceries, including milk, salt, and steaks. Milk is a high-value item, so it would be classified as an A item. Salt is a low-value item, so it would be classified as a C item. Steaks are a medium-value item, so they would be classified as a B item.

The company would keep a high level of safety stock for milk, a medium level of safety stock for steaks, and a low level of safety stock for salt. The company would also monitor and manage the inventory levels of each item on a different schedule.

Another example: Which SKU is most likely to be classified as Class A? Class C?

SKU	\$ Value per Unit	Annual Use (units)	\$ Annual Use	% of Total \$ Annual Use
100	13	600	7,800	1.7%
101	132	360	47,520	10.4%
102	22	500	11,000	2.4%
103	8	120	960	0.2%
104	130	400	52,000	11.4%
105	155	800	124,000	27.3%
106	190	750	142,500	31.3%
107	115	600	69,000	15.2%
	Total	4,130	454,780	1

Another example: Refer to the table below. According to the ABC inventory classification method, the most likely candidates for classes A and C are, respectively:

Item #	Current Inventory (units)	Unit Cost (\$)	Current Inventory Value (\$)	Classification
1	2,100	6.50		
2	460	25.30		
3	205	17.00		
4	4,300	7.25		
5	190	16.40		

1. item 5 is class A, item 2 is class C
2. item 3 is class A, item 4 is class C
3. item 4 is class A, item 5 is class C
4. item 1 is class A, item 3 is class C

By classifying items into these categories, businesses can allocate their inventory monitoring resources more effectively. High-value items get the attention they require, while lower-value items are monitored in a more cost-effective manner. In essence, the ABC analysis allows businesses to prioritize their inventory management efforts, ensuring that they get the best return on their investment in inventory monitoring. Additionally, ABC analysis offers a number of benefits, including:

- Improved inventory accuracy
- Reduced stockouts
- Lower inventory costs
- Improved customer service
- Increased profitability

By classifying inventory items into three categories and applying different management strategies to each category, businesses can improve their overall inventory management process.

6.5.2 Risk Pooling

Risk pooling is a powerful concept in inventory management and is the underlying phenomenon that enables online marketplaces to offer similar or even superior service levels compared to traditional brick-and-mortar stores, despite the inherent uncertainties of online demand. At its core, risk pooling is about consolidating risks. In the context of inventory management, it refers to the reduction in the variability of demand (and hence safety stock) when demands from multiple locations are aggregated. Instead of managing inventory

separately for each individual location, risk pooling suggests consolidating inventory in a central location. This centralization allows for a more efficient response to variations in demand across different locations.

For instance, consider two retail stores in different cities. If one store experiences higher than expected demand, while the other experiences lower than expected demand, the two extremes can offset each other when inventory is pooled at a central location. This reduces the overall variability in demand and, consequently, the amount of safety stock required.

The Square Root Law:

To quantify the benefits of risk pooling, we can use the square root law. Let's consider a numerical example:

Suppose a single store requires a safety stock of 100 units to achieve a desired service level. Now, if we have 4 such stores (with independent demands), and if we were to manage inventory separately for each store, the total safety stock required would be $4 \times 100 = 400$ units.

However, if we pool the risks and centralize the inventory, the safety stock required is not simply the sum of the safety stocks of the individual stores. Instead, it's determined by the square root rule:

$$\text{Safety Stock (Centralized)} = \sqrt{N} \times \text{SS}$$

Where

N = number of stores in the original configuration

SS = safety stock in each store in the original configuration

In our example,

$$\text{Safety Stock (Centralized)} = \sqrt{4} \times 100 = 200 \text{ units}$$

By centralizing the inventory, we've effectively halved the safety stock requirement, showcasing the power of risk pooling.

In essence, risk pooling leverages the law of large numbers to reduce the variability in demand, allowing businesses to maintain high service levels with less inventory. This is especially beneficial for online marketplaces that cater to a wide geographical area, as they can centralize their inventory and still meet the diverse demands of their customer base efficiently.

6.5.3 Postponement

One of the most illustrative examples of the concept of postponement in inventory management can be seen at home improvement giants like Home Depot and Lowe's. These stores have introduced tinting centers where customers can select almost any shade of paint they desire. Instead of stocking cans of every possible color – a logistical and inventory nightmare – these stores stock large quantities of base paints. When a customer selects a specific color, the base paint is then tinted to that exact shade on the spot.

This approach has multiple advantages:



1. **Reduced Inventory:** The stores don't need to maintain inventory for every possible color, which would be vast and costly.
2. **Increased Variety:** Customers have access to a virtually unlimited palette of colors, enhancing their shopping experience.
3. **Waste Reduction:** Unsold cans of specific colors can lead to waste. With tinting centers, the base paint is a versatile resource that can be turned into any color as per demand.

Typically, offering a higher variety implies a need for higher inventory to maintain the same service levels. However, with the tinting center approach, these stores have managed to break this trade-off, offering high variety without the associated high inventory levels.

Definition of Postponement:

Postponement refers to the strategy of delaying the final activities in the product manufacturing or distribution process until customer preferences are known. The goal is to delay the point of differentiation as late as possible to minimize the uncertainties associated with forecasting specific product variants.

Types of Postponement:

1. **Labeling Postponement:** Products are manufactured in a generic form and labeling is done later based on market requirements. For instance, electronic goods might be produced generically and labeled for specific markets or retailers later.
2. **Manufacturing Postponement:** Here, the manufacturing of the final product is delayed until an order is received. For example, a computer manufacturer might assemble a PC based on individual customer specifications.
3. **Packaging Postponement:** Products are packaged in final form only after receiving the order. This is common in industries where bulk products are split into customer-specific orders.
4. **Time Postponement:** Products are shipped to a central location in anticipation of orders. Once orders are received, they are then shipped to the final destination. This is common in online retail where goods are stored in central warehouses.

By adopting postponement strategies, businesses can reduce inventory costs, improve service levels, and respond more flexibly to market demands.

6.6 TRADITIONAL AI, MACHINE LEARNING, AND GENERATIVE AI IN SUPPLY CHAINS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Artificial Intelligence (AI) has transformed how businesses manage supply chains by automating processes, analyzing large datasets, and improving decision-making in ways that were previously impossible. Traditionally, supply chain management required manual forecasting, planning, and execution, which were slow and prone to human errors. AI allows businesses to predict demand, optimize inventory, enhance logistics, and mitigate risks more effectively.

However, AI is not a single technology—it consists of different categories, each with specific strengths and limitations. In supply chains, AI can be divided into three key areas based on how they process information and assist businesses:

1. **Traditional AI (Rule-Based AI & Expert Systems)** – AI systems that follow predefined rules to automate complex decision-making processes and improve efficiency.
2. **Machine Learning (ML)** – AI that learns from historical data, recognizes patterns, and improves its decision-making ability over time.
3. **Generative AI (Generative Pre-trained Transformer, GPT)** – AI that creates new information, generates scenarios, and provides strategic recommendations using vast datasets.

Each type of AI serves a unique role in improving supply chain operations, ranging from automating complex rule-based tasks to generating entirely new solutions for business challenges.

6.6.1 Traditional AI in Supply Chains (Rule-Based AI & Expert Systems)

Traditional AI, also known as Rule-Based AI or Expert Systems, is designed to automate highly complex, repetitive, and knowledge-intensive decision-making tasks. These systems rely on predefined rules, logical structures, and extensive domain knowledge, allowing them to handle intricate supply chain operations with minimal human intervention.

For example, supply chains involve millions of transactions and variables, including supplier lead times, inventory restocking levels, shipment tracking, regulatory compliance, and financial accounting. Traditional

AI systems are programmed with thousands of business rules that automate these processes based on conditional logic and expert-designed frameworks.

Some key applications of traditional AI in Supply Chains include:

1. Automated Order Processing & Invoice Matching

- Large organizations process thousands of purchase orders (POs) and invoices daily. Traditional AI can handle complex three-way matching by verifying purchase orders, supplier invoices, and goods receipt records to detect errors and fraud.
- Example: A multinational corporation's accounting system uses AI to match supplier invoices against PO terms and automatically flags discrepancies.

2. Advanced Inventory Replenishment & Supply Chain Planning

- Traditional AI uses predefined business rules to automate decisions on when and how much stock to reorder.
- For example, an AI system can factor in supplier lead times, warehouse capacities, and customer demand forecasts to trigger replenishment before stockouts occur.

3. Supply Chain Risk Management

- Rule-based AI can analyze thousands of real-time data points, including political events, weather patterns, and financial instability, to assess potential disruptions.
- Example: If a hurricane is approaching a major shipping hub, AI can reroute cargo shipments to alternative ports before delays occur.

4. Optimized Production Scheduling & Factory Automation

- AI-driven production scheduling involves coordinating hundreds of variables, including machine availability, labor shifts, supplier deliveries, and raw material constraints.
- Traditional AI automates scheduling and dynamically adjusts manufacturing plans to minimize downtime and maximize efficiency.

5. Regulatory Compliance & Customs Documentation

- AI ensures that shipments comply with complex international trade regulations, tariffs, and customs documentation requirements.
- Example: An AI system can automatically classify goods based on Harmonized System (HS) codes

and generate accurate import/export declarations for customs authorities.

While traditional AI does not learn from new data like Machine Learning, it is still highly effective for automating structured decision-making processes that involve high volumes of transactions and complex business logic.

6.6.2 Machine Learning in Supply Chains

Machine Learning (ML) is a type of AI that enables systems to learn from past data, recognize patterns, and improve decision-making without human intervention. Unlike Traditional AI, which relies on fixed rules, ML continuously refines its outputs as it processes new data, allowing businesses to adapt to changing conditions.

In supply chain management, ML is particularly valuable because supply chains involve vast amounts of data from multiple sources, including sales records, supplier performance, transportation logistics, and warehouse operations. ML models analyze this data, identify hidden trends, and help businesses make better decisions in areas such as inventory planning, warehouse optimization, and predictive maintenance.

Key Applications of Machine Learning in Supply Chains

1. Dynamic Demand Forecasting

- ML improves demand forecasting by analyzing historical sales, economic indicators, weather patterns, and social trends.
- Unlike traditional forecasting methods, which rely only on past sales, ML models detect complex relationships between multiple factors to predict demand with greater accuracy.
- For example, a retail company can use ML to identify seasonal demand trends and adjust its inventory and procurement strategy accordingly.

2. Predictive Maintenance for Equipment & Vehicles

- ML uses sensor data from trucks, factory machines, and warehouse equipment to predict when failures are likely to occur.
- By identifying potential breakdowns before they happen, ML allows businesses to schedule maintenance proactively, avoiding costly disruptions.
- For instance, a logistics company can monitor its fleet of delivery trucks, predicting tire wear, engine issues, or brake failures before they cause unexpected delays.

3. Warehouse Optimization and Execution Systems

- ML plays a crucial role in warehouse management, where it helps optimize inventory placement, space utilization, and material flow based on real-time data.
- In large distribution centers, multiple data sources—such as incoming shipment schedules, order volumes, picking speeds, and warehouse congestion levels—are analyzed by ML models to make real-time decisions on where goods should be stored and how they should be retrieved.
- For example, ML can determine the best storage locations for fast-moving items, reducing travel distances for warehouse workers and improving fulfillment speed.

4. Vision Systems for Automated Inspection & Goods Recognition

- Machine Learning powers computer vision systems that help automate warehouse operations by identifying and categorizing products without manual scanning.
- When goods arrive at a warehouse, ML-powered vision systems can instantly scan barcodes, recognize packaging types, and check for damaged or mislabeled products before they are stored.
- For example, an automated warehouse receiving system can use camera-based ML models to scan incoming shipments, flag discrepancies, and ensure the right products are processed without human intervention.

5. Transportation & Delivery Route Optimization

- ML helps logistics companies optimize delivery routes by analyzing traffic data, weather conditions, fuel costs, and delivery constraints in real time.
- Unlike traditional route planning, which follows static schedules, ML adapts to unexpected delays, road closures, or shipment priority changes, ensuring more efficient and cost-effective transportation.
- For instance, a last-mile delivery company can use ML to continuously update driver routes, minimizing travel time and improving on-time deliveries.

Machine Learning is reshaping supply chain operations by enabling real-time decision-making, automating warehouse processes, and improving efficiency in logistics and maintenance. Unlike traditional AI, which relies on static rules, ML continuously learns and adapts, making supply chains more responsive to market shifts, operational risks, and unexpected disruptions. As ML technology advances, its role in smart warehouses, predictive logistics, and automated supply chain management will continue to grow, driving further improvements in efficiency and cost savings.

6.6.3 Generative AI in Supply Chains (Generative Pre-Trained Transformer, GPT)

Generative AI, also known as Generative Pre-trained Transformer (GPT), is an advanced form of AI that creates new content, generates predictive scenarios, and automates strategic decision-making. Unlike Traditional AI and Machine Learning, which focus on analyzing historical data and optimizing existing processes, Generative AI simulates future scenarios, drafts business recommendations, and enhances decision-making by generating entirely new solutions.

Generative AI is pre-trained on massive datasets covering a wide range of industries, market conditions, and operational patterns. This allows businesses to leverage AI without building models from scratch—instead, they can fine-tune pre-trained models to fit their specific supply chain needs. By using Generative AI, supply chains can become more adaptive, resilient, and data-driven, allowing businesses to respond to uncertainties, disruptions, and strategic challenges with greater agility.

Key Applications of Generative AI in Supply Chains

1. Scenario-Based Supply Chain Planning & Risk Simulations

- Traditional forecasting methods use past data to predict future demand, but they struggle when unprecedented disruptions occur (e.g., pandemics, geopolitical conflicts, or raw material shortages).
- Generative AI helps companies prepare for the unexpected by simulating different supply chain scenarios and suggesting strategies to mitigate risks.
- Example:
 - A manufacturing company can use Generative AI to simulate what would happen if a key supplier shuts down for six months and generate an alternative sourcing strategy to maintain production.
 - A retail chain can model how a shift in consumer behavior (e.g., increased online shopping) will affect its warehouse network and distribution strategy.

2. AI-Generated Supplier Contracts & Risk Assessments

- Supplier contracts often involve complex negotiations, requiring businesses to analyze contract terms, pricing structures, and potential risks before finalizing agreements.
- Generative AI can draft supplier contracts, assess compliance risks, and highlight negotiation points based on market data and previous agreements.
- Example:
 - A global retailer can use Generative AI to automatically draft contract clauses that align with

trade laws and supplier regulations, reducing legal risks and improving contract efficiency.

- An automotive manufacturer can analyze previous supplier disputes and generate a risk-mitigation plan before signing long-term contracts.

3. Automated Supplier Discovery & Procurement Optimization

- Generative AI can search for and evaluate new suppliers based on criteria like cost, lead time, sustainability practices, and reliability.
- Instead of manually reviewing supplier databases, AI can generate ranked recommendations for the best suppliers based on a company's needs.
- Example:
 - A fashion retailer can use Generative AI to identify fabric suppliers with the shortest delivery times in different regions, reducing production delays.
 - A logistics company can evaluate alternative transportation providers based on real-time fuel price changes and sustainability goals.

4. Dynamic Route Generation & Logistics Optimization

- Unlike traditional logistics planning, which follows fixed routing rules, Generative AI can continuously update transportation routes based on real-time conditions.
- The AI model generates alternative delivery schedules, optimal shipping methods, and backup logistics plans when disruptions occur.
- Example:
 - A freight carrier can use Generative AI to simulate alternative port routes when labor strikes threaten key shipping hubs.
 - A grocery distribution network can use AI to adjust delivery schedules dynamically based on weather-related disruptions.

5. Warehouse Layout Optimization & Real-Time Inventory Planning

- Generative AI can generate warehouse blueprints and suggest inventory placement strategies that improve operational efficiency.
- Instead of relying on manual warehouse layout planning, companies can use AI to simulate different storage configurations and predict which layout maximizes space utilization.
- Example:
 - A large e-commerce warehouse can use Generative AI to determine the best arrangement for fast-moving vs. slow-moving products, reducing picking times and increasing order

fulfillment speeds.

- A pharmaceutical company can use AI to simulate different cold-storage layouts to minimize energy consumption while maintaining drug safety standards.

6. AI-Powered Compliance & Regulatory Reporting

- International trade and supply chain operations must comply with complex tax regulations, import/export restrictions, and safety certifications.
- Generative AI automates compliance document generation, reducing the burden of regulatory paperwork and minimizing the risk of penalties.
- Example:
 - A medical device manufacturer can use Generative AI to generate FDA compliance reports for global distribution.
 - A food exporter can ensure all products meet country-specific food safety laws without manually reviewing every regulation.

6.6.4 Advantages and Challenges of AI in Supply Chains

Advantages of AI in Supply Chains

The adoption of AI across supply chains—Traditional AI, Machine Learning, and Generative AI—has led to significant improvements in operational efficiency, decision-making, and cost optimization.

1. Increased Efficiency & Automation

- Traditional AI eliminates manual work in processing invoices, managing supplier transactions, and tracking shipments, reducing labor costs and errors.
- Machine Learning automates warehouse operations and demand forecasting, leading to more responsive supply chains.
- Generative AI automates scenario planning and risk analysis, ensuring businesses can adjust quickly to market fluctuations.

2. Better Decision-Making with Real-Time Data

- Machine Learning allows businesses to adjust inventory levels, manage supplier risk, and predict equipment failures based on real-time conditions.
- Generative AI simulates alternative logistics strategies and sourcing options, allowing supply chains

to remain flexible under changing conditions.

3. Risk Reduction & Predictive Capabilities

- AI-powered risk analysis helps businesses detect supply chain bottlenecks before they occur.
- Machine Learning predicts supplier performance and logistics delays, reducing the likelihood of unexpected disruptions.
- Generative AI creates contingency plans by simulating worst-case and best-case scenarios for demand fluctuations.

4. Cost Optimization & Sustainability

- AI reduces waste in warehousing, manufacturing, and distribution by predicting optimal stock levels and energy-efficient logistics routes.
- Machine Learning enhances route planning for trucks and cargo ships, leading to fuel savings.
- Generative AI helps companies identify cheaper suppliers and optimize trade agreements to reduce costs.

Challenges of AI in Supply Chains

Despite its advantages, AI adoption faces significant challenges that companies must address to maximize its benefits.

1. Data Quality & Bias Issues

- AI models rely on accurate and unbiased datasets to function correctly. If supply chain data is incomplete or biased, AI-generated insights may be unreliable.
- Machine Learning models can inherit past inefficiencies in decision-making if trained on flawed historical data.

2. Explainability & Trust in AI Decision-Making

- Many AI models, especially Generative AI and deep-learning-based Machine Learning, operate as “black boxes,” meaning their decision-making processes are difficult to interpret.
- Businesses may struggle to trust AI-generated supplier recommendations, logistics routes, or risk assessments if they cannot fully understand how the AI arrived at those decisions.

3. Integration with Legacy Supply Chain Systems

- Many companies still rely on traditional ERP systems and older supply chain management software, which may not be compatible with advanced AI models.
- Adopting AI often requires significant IT investments and training for employees to effectively use AI-driven decision-making tools.

4. Security & Ethical Risks

- AI-generated contracts and supplier recommendations must be reviewed for accuracy and compliance to prevent legal issues.
- Automated procurement decisions based on AI rankings of suppliers may unintentionally exclude small or diverse vendors, raising ethical concerns.

6.7 CONCLUSION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Reflecting on the initial examples we discussed, it becomes evident how crucial inventory management is in the business world. Cisco Systems, with its staggering \$2.15 billion inventory write-off, could have potentially avoided such a significant setback with a more refined approach to inventory management. By understanding the costs associated with holding too much inventory and implementing strategies like the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) model, they might have been better equipped to balance their stock levels and reduce the risk of overstocking.

Similarly, the UK's chicken crisis faced by KFC underscores the importance of having a robust inventory system in place. By employing methods such as the Reorder Point (ROP) system or Periodic Ordering, and by maintaining an appropriate safety stock, KFC could have been better prepared to handle fluctuations in demand and supply chain disruptions. This would not only have ensured a steady supply of chicken but also preserved their brand reputation and customer trust.



Inventory management isn't just about numbers and formulas; it's about understanding the rhythm and flow of a business. It's about predicting the unpredictable, preparing for uncertainties, and ensuring that businesses can meet their commitments to their customers. The difference between a thriving business and one that struggles often lies in how well the business manages its inventories. A well-managed inventory system can lead to increased customer satisfaction, reduced costs, and improved profitability.

In the ever-evolving world of business, where customer demands shift and supply chains face disruptions, mastering the art of inventory management becomes paramount. As we've seen throughout this chapter, with the right tools, techniques, and understanding, businesses can navigate the complexities of inventory management and set themselves up for success.

6.8 CHAPTER 6 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

Section 6.1: Why Inventory Management?

- **Question:** Why is balancing inventory levels critical in inventory management?

Section 6.2.1: Types of Inventory

- **Question:** What are the four primary types of inventory, and how do they differ?

Section 6.2.3: Costs of Inventory

- **Question:** What are the two main categories of costs associated with holding inventory, and what are their implications?

Section 6.3: Economic Order Quantity (EOQ)

- **Question:** How does the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) model help businesses minimize total inventory costs?

Section 6.5.1: ABC Analysis

- **Question:** What is the purpose of ABC Analysis in inventory management?

Situational Questions:

Situation 1:

Imagine you are an inventory manager for a retail company that sells electronic gadgets. Recently, you noticed that some high-value items are frequently out of stock, while low-value items are overstocked. Using the concepts from this chapter, outline a plan to address this issue and improve inventory management.

Situation 2:

Your company manufactures consumer goods and is considering implementing a Just-In-Time (JIT) inventory system to reduce holding costs. However, some team members are concerned about potential stockouts.

Explain how the company can use safety stock and reorder point systems to balance the benefits of JIT with the need to avoid stockouts.

Chapter 6 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=355#h5p-11>

PART VII

CHAPTER 7: SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGY

7.1 INTRODUCTION TO SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGY

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Supply chain strategy is a comprehensive plan that guides the management of all activities involved in sourcing, procurement, conversion, and logistics management. It includes the coordination and collaboration with channel partners, such as suppliers, intermediaries, third-party service providers, and customers. A key aspect of supply chain strategy is that it must be designed to support the mission, vision, and the overall strategy of the organization. This alignment ensures that the supply chain operations contribute to the broader organizational goals and strategic objectives.

The primary purpose of a supply chain strategy is to achieve a competitive advantage by meeting customer needs in the most effective and efficient manner. However, it's not just about operational efficiency; it's also about aligning the supply chain processes and decisions with the organization's broader goals. This means that the supply chain strategy should reflect the organization's mission and vision, and support its overall business strategy. For example, if an organization's mission is to deliver high-quality products, the supply chain strategy should focus on sourcing high-quality materials and maintaining high standards in production and delivery.

Three key aspects of supply chain strategy are:

- Difficulty to change: Once a supply chain strategy is implemented, it becomes deeply embedded in the organization's operations, making it difficult to change.
- Expensive: Developing and implementing a supply chain strategy requires significant investment in terms of time, money, and resources.
- Long-term: A supply chain strategy is not a short-term fix but a long-term plan that guides the organization's supply chain operations over several years.

Consider the e-commerce industry as an example. Companies in this sector are investing billions of dollars in their supply chain strategies. The development of sophisticated distribution networks, for instance, is a long-term commitment that requires significant upfront investment and is difficult to change once established. Implementing advanced inventory management systems is expensive, requiring not only financial investment in the technology itself but also in training staff and maintaining the system over time. Leveraging data analytics for demand forecasting is a strategic decision that, once made, becomes an integral part of the organization's operations and is not easily reversed.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=197#oembed-1>

In conclusion, the design and implementation of a supply chain strategy that aligns with and supports the organization's mission, vision, and overall strategy is a complex but essential task. It requires careful planning, significant investment, and long-term commitment. This is a key objective of this chapter, which aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of the process and principles involved in developing an effective supply chain strategy.

7.1.1 Evolution of Supply Chain Strategy

Historically, supply chain strategy was not a formalized process. This means that there was no structured approach to designing and implementing a strategy that would guide the entire supply chain. Top management involvement was minimal, often limited to approving budgets rather than actively participating in strategic decision-making. Different parts of the supply chain, such as logistics and purchasing, often designed their strategies independently without interacting with each other. This lack of coordination and alignment led to inefficiencies and missed opportunities.

Limitations of the Historical Approach

- Lack of alignment: Different parts of the supply chain often pursued conflicting objectives, leading to inefficiencies.
- Missed opportunities: Without a holistic view of the supply chain, companies often missed out on opportunities for optimization and synergy.
- Inadequate response to market changes: The siloed approach made it difficult for companies to respond quickly and effectively to changes in market conditions.

In the current context, the importance of a well-designed supply chain strategy is widely recognized. Supply chain professionals are now included in strategy-making processes, ensuring that the supply chain strategy aligns with the overall business strategy. This integrated approach helps organizations respond more effectively to market changes, optimize their operations, and create value for customers.

- Responsiveness to market changes: An integrated supply chain strategy allows organizations to respond more effectively to changes in market conditions, such as shifts in customer demand or disruptions in supply.
- Operational optimization: By aligning the supply chain strategy with the overall business strategy,

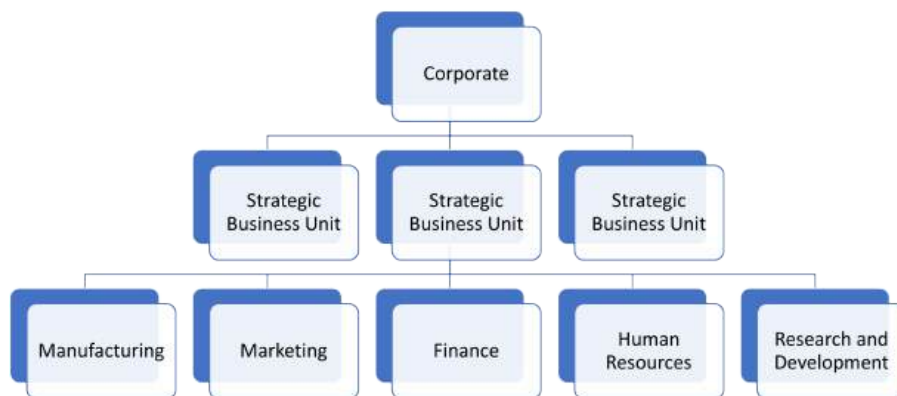
organizations can optimize their operations, reducing costs and improving efficiency.

- **Value creation:** A well-designed supply chain strategy can help organizations create value for customers by delivering products and services in a timely, efficient, and cost-effective manner.

7.1.2 Approaches to Supply Chain Strategy Making

Supply chain strategy is an integral part of the overall strategy-making process within an organization. This process encompasses various levels of strategy, including corporate strategy, business unit strategy, and functional strategy.

- **Corporate Strategy:** This is the highest level of strategy, concerned with the overall purpose and scope of the organization. It addresses big-picture questions such as what businesses the organization should be in, how these businesses should be managed, and how value can be added to the organization as a whole.
- **Business Unit Strategy:** This level of strategy focuses on how a particular business unit can compete effectively in its specific market. It involves decisions about the product or service offering, market positioning, and competitive advantage.
- **Supply Chain Strategy:** This is a functional strategy that supports the higher-level strategies. It guides the management of all activities involved in sourcing, procurement, conversion, and logistics management. It includes the coordination and collaboration with channel partners, such as suppliers, intermediaries, third-party service providers, and customers.



Within the context of supply chain strategy, there are two primary approaches: top-down and bottom-up. In

the top-down approach, the strategy is formulated by top management and then implemented throughout the organization. This approach ensures alignment with the overall business strategy but may overlook operational realities and constraints. On the other hand, the bottom-up approach involves formulating the strategy at the operational level and then integrating it into the overall business strategy. This approach is more responsive to operational realities but may result in a strategy that is not fully aligned with the business strategy.

Both approaches have their advantages and limitations, and the choice between them depends on the specific context and needs of the organization. In practice, many organizations use a combination of both approaches to leverage their respective strengths and mitigate their limitations. This integrated approach ensures that the supply chain strategy is in alignment with the corporate and business unit strategies, while also being responsive to the realities and constraints of the operational environment.

7.1.3 Elements of Supply Chain Strategy

The supply chain involves many different functions, each contributing to the overall supply chain strategy. These contributions from individual functions are the different elements of the supply chain strategy. Here are some key elements:

- **Sourcing**: This involves determining where to obtain the materials and services needed for the organization's operations. The sourcing strategy can significantly impact the cost, quality, and availability of these inputs.
- **Logistics**: This includes the transportation and storage of materials, work-in-process inventory, and finished goods from point of origin to point of consumption. The logistics strategy affects the speed, reliability, and cost of delivering products to customers.
- **Production**: This involves deciding where and how to produce the organization's products or services. The production strategy can influence the cost, quality, and flexibility of the production process.
- **Inventory Management**: This includes determining how much inventory to hold, where to hold it, and how to manage it. The inventory management strategy can impact the organization's ability to meet customer demand, as well as the cost of carrying inventory.
- **Distribution**: This involves the strategies for getting the product to the end customer, including decisions about the distribution channels to use, the locations of distribution centers, and the use of third-party logistics providers. The distribution strategy can affect the speed and cost of delivery, as well as the customer's buying experience.
- **Information Technology**: This involves deciding on the systems and technologies to use for managing and coordinating the supply chain. The IT strategy can affect the organization's ability to share information, coordinate activities, and make data-driven decisions.

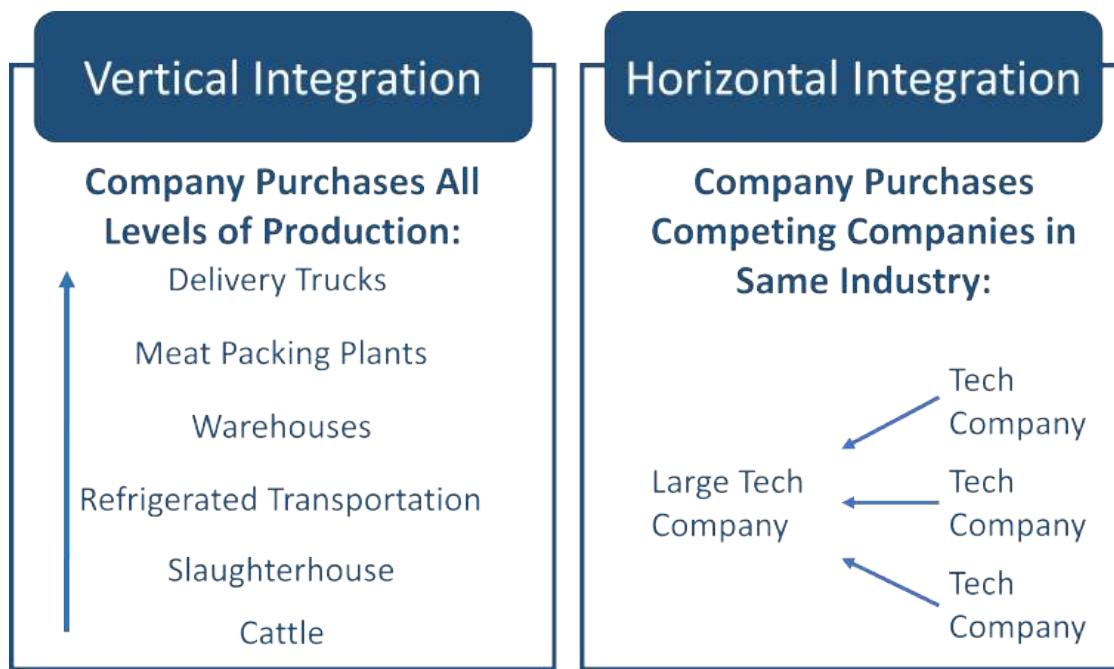


While sales and marketing is often considered an independent discipline, the strategies in these areas are a crucial part of the supply chain strategy. Sales and marketing strategies determine the demand that the supply chain needs to fulfill. They influence decisions about product design, packaging, and delivery, which in turn affect sourcing, production, and logistics strategies. Furthermore, sales forecasts are used in planning inventory, production, and logistics, making sales and marketing strategies integral to the coordination of the supply chain.

Each of these elements needs to be carefully considered and aligned with the organization's overall business strategy to create an effective supply chain strategy.

7.1.4 Vertical and Lateral Integration

Vertical and lateral integration are two strategic approaches that organizations can adopt as part of their supply chain strategy. These approaches determine how an organization manages its supply chain and the extent to which it controls different stages of the production process.



Vertical Integration

Vertical integration is a strategy where a company expands its operations to include different stages of the supply chain within its control. This could mean moving upstream to include sourcing and production or downstream to include distribution and retail. The goal is to achieve greater control over the supply chain, reduce costs, and improve efficiency by eliminating intermediaries.

A classic example of vertical integration is the Ford Motor Company in the 1920s under the leadership of Henry Ford. Ford owned and controlled all aspects of its supply chain, from owning rubber plantations for tire production to iron mines for car body manufacturing. This approach allowed Ford to have complete control over the quality, cost, and delivery of its inputs. It also enabled the company to pioneer the assembly line method of production, leading to significant efficiencies and cost savings.

Advantages of Vertical Integration:

- Greater control over the supply chain: This can lead to improved quality, cost management, and delivery times.
- Cost savings: By eliminating intermediaries, companies can reduce costs.
- Protection against market fluctuations: Companies can shield themselves from price changes or supply disruptions in the market.

Disadvantages of Vertical Integration:

- High capital investment: Vertical integration requires significant investment to acquire or establish operations at different stages of the supply chain.

- **Reduced focus:** Companies may lose focus on their core competencies as they manage a wide range of operations.
- **Risk of demand fluctuations:** If demand decreases, companies may be left with expensive assets that are underutilized.

Lateral Integration

Lateral integration, on the other hand, is a strategy where a company focuses on one stage of the supply chain and collaborates with other companies for the remaining stages. This is common in today's automobile industry, where companies often focus on design and assembly while outsourcing parts manufacturing to specialized suppliers.

For example, many modern car manufacturers, such as Toyota or General Motors, design their vehicles and assemble them but do not manufacture all the parts themselves. Instead, they rely on a network of suppliers who provide everything from engines to electronics. This approach allows these companies to focus on their core competencies, such as design and assembly, while leveraging the expertise of their suppliers for parts manufacturing.

Advantages of Lateral Integration:

- **Focus on core competencies:** Companies can concentrate on what they do best and leverage the expertise of others for the rest.
- **Flexibility:** Companies can more easily switch suppliers or change designs without having to overhaul their entire operations.
- **Lower capital investment:** Lateral integration requires less capital investment as companies do not need to establish operations at all stages of the supply chain.

Disadvantages of Lateral Integration:

- **Dependence on suppliers:** Companies may become dependent on their suppliers, which can be risky if a supplier fails to deliver or increases prices.
- **Less control over the supply chain:** Companies have less control over the quality, cost, and delivery of inputs.
- **Coordination challenges:** Managing relationships with multiple suppliers can be complex and time-consuming.

In conclusion, both vertical and lateral integration offer different advantages and challenges. The choice between them depends on a variety of factors, including the company's strategic objectives, its core competencies, the nature of its industry, and the dynamics of its supply chain.

7.2 DESIGNING SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGIES

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Designing supply chain strategies is a proactive process that requires careful planning and resource allocation. It is not something that should be allowed to emerge organically without direction. The development of supply chain strategies requires the involvement of both supply chain professionals and top management. Supply chain professionals bring their operational expertise and understanding of the supply chain's intricacies, while top management ensures alignment with the organization's broader strategic objectives.

7.2.1 Environmental Scanning

The first step in designing a supply chain strategy is **environmental scanning**. This involves examining the external environment in which the organization operates to identify opportunities and threats. A commonly used tool for environmental scanning is the PESTEL analysis, which considers Political, Economic, Sociocultural, Technological, Environmental, and Legal factors.

Environmental scanning is crucial because it helps us understand the context in which we operate. The environment can mean many different things – from the political climate to the state of the economy, from societal trends to technological advancements, from environmental considerations to legal regulations. To help us channelize our efforts, we have models like PESTEL analysis that help us focus on different environmental factors. By understanding these factors, we can anticipate challenges and opportunities, and design our supply chain strategies accordingly. Below is an example of a PESTEL analysis on Nike.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=202#oembed-1>

For example, a company in the renewable energy sector might consider the following PESTEL factors:

- **Political**: Government policies supporting renewable energy.
- **Economic**: The cost of renewable energy technologies compared to traditional energy sources.
- **Sociocultural**: Public attitudes towards renewable energy and climate change.
- **Technological**: Advances in renewable energy technologies.
- **Environmental**: The impact of energy production on the environment.

- **Legal:** Regulations related to energy production and emissions.



7.2.2 Internal Scanning

Internal scanning is a crucial part of designing a supply chain strategy. It involves examining the organization's strengths and weaknesses, which are integral to understanding how the supply chain can leverage its internal capabilities and address its limitations. A commonly used tool for internal scanning is the SWOT analysis, which considers Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, and Threats.

For instance, a company in the renewable energy sector might conduct a SWOT analysis as follows:

- **Strengths:** The company might have a strong research and development team that is capable of innovating and developing new renewable energy technologies.
- **Weaknesses:** The company might have limited financial resources for large-scale production, which could limit its ability to meet high demand.
- **Opportunities:** The growing global emphasis on sustainable energy sources could present significant opportunities for the company to expand its market share.
- **Threats:** The company might face intense competition from traditional energy companies that have more financial resources and established market presence.

Understanding these internal factors allows an organization to leverage its strengths and address its weaknesses

in its supply chain strategy. For example, a company with a strong logistics network might leverage this strength by focusing on a strategy that emphasizes fast delivery times. Conversely, a company with weak supplier relationships might focus on improving these relationships or diversifying its supplier base. This internal scanning process is essential for developing a supply chain strategy that is aligned with the organization's internal capabilities and strategic objectives.

7.2.3 Competitive Priorities

Once the environmental and internal scanning have been completed, the organization needs to decide how it wants to compete in the marketplace. This decision is based on the organization's unique strengths, the opportunities identified in the market, and the competitive landscape. The organization must determine its competitive priorities, which are the areas where it chooses to focus in order to gain a competitive advantage. These priorities should leverage the organization's strengths and align with the opportunities identified in the market.

Competitive priorities include cost, quality, delivery, and flexibility.

- **Cost:** Some organizations focus on being the low-cost provider in their market. For instance, Walmart has built its entire business model around offering low prices to customers.
- **Quality:** Other organizations prioritize offering high-quality products or services. Apple, for example, is known for the high quality of its products and can charge premium prices as a result.
- **Delivery:** Some organizations focus on delivering products faster or more reliably than their competitors. Amazon, for example, has made fast and reliable delivery a cornerstone of its business model.
- **Flexibility:** Finally, some organizations prioritize flexibility, which could mean the ability to customize products to individual customer needs or to respond quickly to changes in demand. Dell, for instance, was known for its ability to customize computers to individual customer specifications.

An organization can gain a competitive advantage through:



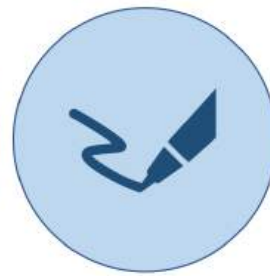
Cost



Quality



Delivery



Flexibility

In addition to these competitive priorities, it's important to understand the concepts of order winners and order qualifiers. Order winners are the factors that directly contribute to winning business. They are the attributes of a product or service that differentiate a company from its competitors and make customers choose one company over another. On the other hand, order qualifiers are the minimum standards that a product or service must meet to be considered by customers.

For example, in the smartphone market, innovative features or superior design could be order winners that make customers choose one brand over another. At the same time, a certain level of performance and functionality would be considered order qualifiers that all smartphones must meet to be considered by customers. Similarly, in the automobile industry, fuel efficiency might be an order winner for a certain segment of customers, while safety features would be an order qualifier that all cars must have to be considered by customers.



Understanding the difference between order winners and order qualifiers is crucial for setting competitive priorities. Companies need to ensure that they meet the order qualifiers in their industry while focusing their resources and efforts on developing and enhancing their order winners.

Trade-offs are a critical consideration in setting competitive priorities. It's challenging to achieve excellence in all areas simultaneously. For example, offering high-quality, customized products can be expensive and may make it difficult to compete on cost. Similarly, focusing on fast delivery might require keeping large amounts of inventory, which can increase costs and reduce flexibility. This demonstrates that a firm generally cannot excel in all competitive priorities due to these inherent trade-offs. For instance, Walmart excels in cost-efficiency but does not focus on offering high-end, premium products. Conversely, Apple excels in providing high-quality, innovative products but does not compete on being the low-cost provider. Therefore, firms need to make strategic choices about which competitive priorities to focus on, based on their capabilities and market positioning.

Based on the competitive priorities, order winners, and order qualifiers, firms can formulate a supply chain strategy. However, strategy making and review is a continuous process. As the external environment changes and as the organization's internal competencies evolve, supply chain strategies must be adjusted accordingly. For example, Dell, once known for selling computers directly to consumers, changed its strategy and began offering its products in retail stores. This shift was in response to changes in the market and consumer buying habits.

In conclusion, setting competitive priorities is a critical step in designing a supply chain strategy. These priorities should reflect the organization's unique strengths, align with market opportunities, and guide the organization's decisions about how to compete in the marketplace. Regular review and adjustment of the strategy are necessary to ensure it remains aligned with the changing environment and the organization's evolving capabilities.

7.3 MODELS IN SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGY

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Supply chain strategy is a complex and dynamic field that requires constant adaptation and innovation. It involves a multitude of elements, including procurement, manufacturing, distribution, and customer service, all of which are interconnected and constantly changing. This complexity arises from various factors such as evolving customer demands, technological advancements, global market dynamics, and regulatory changes.

To navigate this complexity, various models have been developed to help design and implement effective supply chain strategies. These models provide a structured approach to decision-making, taking into account the various elements and their interrelationships. In this section, we will discuss three such models: Skinner's model, Fisher's model, and Chopra's model.

7.3.1 Skinner's Model

Skinner's model emphasizes the critical link between corporate strategy and operations strategy. The traditional focus of operations strategy has been on achieving high productivity and low cost. However, this approach may not align with the business strategy of certain companies. For instance, Apple's strategy of offering high-quality, innovative products would not align with an operations strategy that prioritizes low cost over quality and innovation. Therefore, it's crucial that the operations strategy is in sync with the organization's overall strategy.

Skinner observed a disconnect between operations and organization strategy in many firms. He attributed this disconnect to the top management of these firms, who often fail to recognize the importance of operations strategy and the concept of tradeoffs. As a result, operations strategy is often designed by technical experts and is disjoint from the business strategy. This disjointed approach can lead to high costs, including the cost of inefficiencies, missed opportunities, and misaligned resources.

For example, a company that focuses on producing high-quality, customized products may have an operations strategy that emphasizes efficiency and low cost. However, the production of customized products often requires flexible and responsive operations, which may not be the most efficient or cost-effective. If the top management fails to recognize this tradeoff, the company may end up with high production costs, low product quality, and dissatisfied customers. Another example could be a company that aims to provide a wide range of products to cater to diverse customer needs. If the operations strategy is focused on efficiency and cost reduction, it might lead to a standardized production process that is not capable of producing a wide variety of products. This could result in a limited product range that does not meet customer expectations, leading to lost sales and reduced market share.

Skinner's model underscores the need for top management to understand and acknowledge the tradeoffs inherent in operations strategy. By aligning operations strategy with corporate strategy and making informed decisions about tradeoffs, companies can create a more effective and efficient operations strategy that supports their business objectives.

7.3.2 Fisher's Model

Fisher's model, as discussed in the Harvard Business Review article "What Is the Right Supply Chain for Your Product?", provides a framework for understanding the nature of the demand for a company's products and devising the supply chain that can best satisfy that demand. Fisher classifies products based on their demand patterns into two categories: functional products and innovative products.

Functional products have stable, predictable demand and long product life cycles. These products are typically commodities or staple items, and their supply chains should be designed for efficiency. Efficient supply chains focus on cost minimization and maximizing economies of scale. Innovative products, on the other hand, have unpredictable demand and short product life cycles. These products are typically characterized by high profit margins and their supply chains should be designed for responsiveness. Responsive supply chains focus on flexibility, speed, and service.

However, it's important to note that products can move from being functional to innovative and vice versa, creating potential misalignment between the product and the supply chain. For instance, a product that starts as innovative may become functional over time as it becomes widely adopted and its demand stabilizes. Conversely, a functional product may become innovative if new features or technologies are introduced. This dynamic nature of products necessitates that supply chain strategies be reviewed and updated regularly to ensure alignment with the product characteristics.

7.3.3 Chopra's Model

Chopra's model introduces the concept of "implied uncertainty" and "strategic fit" in supply chain strategy. Implied uncertainty refers to the uncertainty that a supply chain faces due to the portion of demand that the supply chain itself has to handle. For example, as product variety increases, implied uncertainty also increases because the supply chain has to manage a wider range of products. Similarly, shorter product life cycles, higher product innovation, and more demanding service levels can all increase implied uncertainty.

To manage this uncertainty, supply chains need to be designed appropriately. For high implied uncertainty, supply chains need to be more agile and flexible. Agile supply chains are capable of responding quickly to changes in demand or supply, while flexible supply chains can handle a wide range of products without significant increases in cost or decreases in service quality.

However, instituting flexibility and agility in supply chains can be expensive. For instance, using airplanes to transport goods instead of ocean liners can ensure faster delivery but costs significantly more. Similarly,

maintaining the capability to produce a wide variety of products requires more complex and costly manufacturing processes compared to producing a standard set of products. Therefore, firms must institute only the degree of flexibility that is necessary to match the degree of implied uncertainty. This is the idea of strategic fit.

Strategic fit, in this context, refers to the alignment between the degree of implied uncertainty and the supply chain's responsiveness. A good strategic fit means that the supply chain has the right mix of responsiveness and efficiency to meet the customer's needs and support the company's competitive strategy.

In conclusion, the models proposed by Skinner, Fisher, and Chopra provide valuable insights into the design of supply chain strategies. They highlight the need for a proactive and strategic approach to supply chain management, taking into account the various elements of the supply chain, their interrelationships, and the dynamic nature of the business environment. By applying these models, companies can design more effective supply chain strategies that support their competitive position and enhance their overall performance.

7.4 SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGY REVIEW

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

As discussed in earlier sections, the external environment and internal competencies of an organization are dynamic and ever-changing. This necessitates the need for supply chain strategies to be equally adaptable and responsive to these changes. To ensure that supply chain strategies remain aligned with the evolving business landscape, they must be regularly reviewed and updated. This process of review involves the use of strategic metrics that monitor the performance of the supply chain, signaling when changes are necessary and guiding what those changes should be.

Developing these strategic metrics requires a comprehensive understanding of the supply chain and its various components. It involves identifying key performance indicators that accurately reflect the efficiency and effectiveness of the supply chain. These metrics should be designed to capture both the current performance and the potential for future improvement.

Strategic metrics serve as a critical tool for supply chain professionals and top management. They provide insights into the operational efficiency of the supply chain, highlight areas of strength and weakness, and offer a roadmap for improvement. By regularly reviewing and updating these metrics, organizations can ensure that their supply chain strategies remain aligned with their overall business objectives and are well-positioned to respond to changes in the business environment.

7.4.1 Balanced Scorecard

Traditional systems of metrics often focus heavily on short-term financial performance, potentially overlooking other crucial aspects of an organization's operations. They may fail to capture long-term value creation, neglect non-financial measures of performance, and ignore the importance of internal and external stakeholder perspectives. This can lead to a narrow and potentially misleading view of an organization's performance.

The **Balanced Scorecard** is a strategic planning and management system that addresses these issues. It provides a balanced view of an organization's performance by considering a wide range of factors. It ensures that financial metrics are complemented by measures of performance from three additional perspectives: customer/stakeholder, internal process, and organizational capacity. This balanced approach helps organizations to focus on both short-term and long-term objectives, financial and non-financial measures, internal and external performance perspectives, and improvement in outcomes and performance drivers.



The Balanced Scorecard examines an organization from four different perspectives:

- **Financial** (or Stewardship): This perspective focuses on the organization's financial performance and the use of financial resources. Relevant supply chain metrics in this category could include cash conversion cycle, cost efficiency, return on investment, and economic value added.
- **Customer/Stakeholder**: This perspective views organizational performance from the perspective of the customer or key stakeholders the organization is designed to serve. Supply chain metrics relevant to this perspective could include on-time delivery rate, order accuracy, and customer satisfaction rate.
- **Internal Process**: This perspective views the quality and efficiency of an organization's performance related to the product, services, or other key business processes. Relevant supply chain metrics could include process cycle time, inventory, defect rate, and order fulfillment speed.
- **Organizational Capacity** (or Learning & Growth): This perspective views human capital, infrastructure, technology, culture, and other capacities that are key to breakthrough performance. Relevant supply chain metrics could include employee training and development, system downtime,

and capacity utilization.

Each of these perspectives helps to develop a comprehensive and balanced view of the organization's performance, ensuring that all relevant factors are considered in the strategic planning process.

7.4.2 Cash to Cash Cycle Time

The Cash to Cash Cycle Time, also known as the Cash Conversion Cycle (CCC), is a critical metric in supply chain management. It measures the time (in days) it takes for a company to convert its investments in inventory and other resources into cash flows from sales. This metric takes into account how much time the company needs to sell its inventory, how much time it takes to collect receivables, and how much time it has to pay its bills. The CCC is one of several quantitative measures that help evaluate the efficiency of a company's operations and management.

Days of Inventory Outstanding (DIO): Also known as days sales of inventory, represents how long it will take for the business to sell its inventory. A lower value of DIO is preferred, as it indicates that the company is making sales rapidly, implying better turnover for the business. The formula for DIO is:

$$\text{DIO} = (\text{Average Inventory} / \text{Cost of Goods Sold}) \times 365$$

Where:

$$\text{Average Inventory} = 1/2 \times (\text{Beginning Inventory} + \text{Ending Inventory})$$

Days Sales Outstanding (DSO): It represents how long it takes to collect the cash generated from the sales. A lower value is preferred for DSO, which indicates that the company is able to collect capital in a short time, in turn enhancing its cash position. The formula for DSO is:

$$\text{DSO} = \text{Average Accounts Receivable} / \text{Revenue Per Day}$$

Where:

$$\text{Average Accounts Receivable} = 1/2 \times (\text{Beginning Accounts Receivable} + \text{Ending Accounts Receivable})$$

Days Payables Outstanding (DPO): This takes into account the amount of money that the company owes its current suppliers for the inventory and goods it purchased, and it represents the time span in which the company must pay off those obligations. A higher DPO value is preferred. By maximizing this number, the company holds onto cash longer, thus increasing its investment potential. The formula for DPO is:

$$\text{DPO} = \text{Average Accounts Payable} / \text{Cost of Goods Sold Per Day}$$

Where:

$$\text{Average Accounts Payable} = 1/2 \times (\text{Beginning Accounts Payable} + \text{Ending Accounts Payable})$$

The Cash Conversion Cycle (CCC) is then calculated as:

$$\text{CCC} = \text{DIO} + \text{DSO} - \text{DPO}$$

For example, if a company has a DIO of 45 days, DSO of 30 days, and DPO of 20 days, the CCC would be:

$$\text{CCC} = 45 (\text{DIO}) + 30 (\text{DSO}) - 20 (\text{DPO}) = 55 \text{ days}$$

This means that it takes the company 55 days to convert its investments in inventory and other resources

into cash flows from sales, after paying its bills. The company should aim to reduce this number to improve its cash flow and operational efficiency.

The goal for any organization is to minimize the Cash to Cash Cycle Time. A shorter cycle time means that the organization is able to convert its investments into cash more quickly, improving its liquidity and cash flow. This is particularly important in the context of supply chain management, where efficient inventory management and timely collection of receivables can significantly impact an organization's financial performance.

In the era of e-commerce, the ability to reduce the Cash to Cash Cycle Time has become even more critical. With faster order fulfillment and delivery times, companies can reduce their DOI. Similarly, electronic invoicing and payment systems can help to reduce the DOS. By optimizing these aspects of their supply chain, e-commerce companies can achieve a shorter Cash to Cash Cycle Time, enhancing their financial performance and competitive advantage.

7.5 GLOBAL SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGIES

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In today's interconnected world, businesses are increasingly looking beyond their local markets and expanding their operations globally. This expansion brings with it a host of opportunities, such as access to new markets, cost advantages, and increased diversification. However, managing a global supply chain also presents unique challenges due to the complexity of coordinating operations across different countries and cultures.

A **global supply chain strategy** is a comprehensive plan that guides an organization's international business operations. It involves making strategic decisions about where to source materials, where to manufacture products, and how to distribute products to customers around the world. These decisions are influenced by a variety of factors, including cost considerations, market access, trade regulations, and risk management.



One of the primary reasons businesses expand their operations globally is to take advantage of cost differentials. For example, Apple Inc. sources components for its products from various countries around the world, including China, Japan, and South Korea, where the cost of production is relatively low. However, these cost advantages must be balanced against other factors, such as transportation costs, import/export duties, and the risk of supply disruptions.

Another key consideration in global supply chain strategy is market access. Businesses often establish operations in specific countries to better serve those markets. For instance, Toyota, the Japanese automobile manufacturer, has production facilities in various parts of the world, including North America, Europe, and Asia. Being closer to customers reduces delivery times and costs, improves customer service, and increases market share. It can also help businesses to better understand local customer needs and preferences, enabling them to tailor their products and services accordingly.

Trade regulations, including import/export duties, trade agreements, and customs procedures, can have a significant impact on global supply chain operations. Businesses need to understand these regulations and

factor them into their strategic decisions. For example, a country with favorable trade agreements and low import duties could be an attractive location for a distribution center.

Managing risk is a critical aspect of global supply chain strategy. Risks can arise from a variety of sources, including political instability, natural disasters, currency fluctuations, and supply disruptions. Nike, for example, sources its products from a diverse range of countries to mitigate the risk of supply disruption. This strategy of diversification helps ensure that a problem in one country won't significantly impact the company's overall supply chain.

Finally, cultural considerations play a crucial role in global supply chain management. Understanding and respecting cultural differences can help to build strong relationships with international partners, employees, and customers. It can also help businesses to navigate local business practices and regulations more effectively.

In conclusion, developing a global supply chain strategy involves a complex interplay of various factors. It requires a deep understanding of international markets, careful cost-benefit analysis, and strategic risk management. By effectively navigating these complexities, businesses can leverage their global supply chains to achieve competitive advantage and drive growth.

An integral part of global supply chain strategy is the design of the global supply chain network. This involves determining the location and role of production facilities, distribution centers, and inventory points in the supply chain. The design of the global network has a significant impact on the cost, efficiency, and responsiveness of the supply chain. We will delve deeper into the topic of global network design in later chapters of this book. This will provide a more detailed understanding of how to design and manage a global supply chain effectively.

7.6 CONCLUSION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Chapter 7 of the textbook provides a comprehensive understanding of supply chain strategy, its evolution, and the various models and approaches used in its formulation. It begins by defining **supply chain strategy** as a plan that guides the management of all activities involved in sourcing, procurement, conversion, and logistics management. The chapter emphasizes the importance of aligning the supply chain strategy with the organization's overall strategy to achieve a competitive advantage.

The chapter then delves into the evolution of supply chain strategy, highlighting the shift from a siloed approach to a more integrated one. It discusses the importance of both **vertical and lateral integration** in managing supply chains and the role of environmental and internal scanning in designing supply chain strategies. The chapter also introduces the concept of competitive priorities and the need for continuous review and adjustment of supply chain strategies.

The chapter further explores various models in supply chain strategy, including Skinner's model, Fisher's model, and Chopra's model. Each model is discussed in detail, providing insights into their applications and implications in supply chain management. The chapter concludes with a discussion on **global supply chain strategies** and the need for strategic metrics for continuous monitoring and updating of supply chain strategies.

Studying this chapter will equip you with a solid understanding of supply chain strategy, its importance, and how it is formulated and implemented. This knowledge is crucial, not just for those specializing in supply chain management, but for anyone aiming to excel in today's complex and dynamic business environment. The concepts and models discussed in this chapter will provide you with the tools and frameworks to design effective supply chain strategies, giving you a competitive edge in your professional life.

7.7 CHAPTER 7 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section 7.1: Introduction to Supply Chain Strategy

- **Question:** What are the three key aspects of a supply chain strategy that make it difficult to change once implemented?

2. Section 7.1.1: Evolution of Supply Chain Strategy

- **Question:** How did the historical approach to supply chain strategy differ from the modern approach?

3. Section 7.1.2: Approaches to Supply Chain Strategy Making

- **Question:** What is the difference between the top-down and bottom-up approaches to supply chain strategy making?

4. Section 7.1.3: Elements of Supply Chain Strategy

- **Question:** Why is the logistics element of supply chain strategy critical to overall supply chain effectiveness?

5. Section 7.1.4: Vertical and Lateral Integration

- **Question:** What is one advantage and one disadvantage of vertical integration in a supply chain strategy?

6. Section 7.2: Designing Supply Chain Strategies

- **Question:** What is the role of environmental scanning in designing a supply chain strategy?

7. Section 7.3: Models in Supply Chain Strategy

- **Question:** According to Fisher's model, how should a supply chain for innovative products be designed?

8. Section 7.4: Supply Chain Strategy Review

- **Question:** Why is it important to regularly review and update supply chain strategies?

9. Section 7.4.1: Balanced Scorecard

- **Question:** How does the Balanced Scorecard approach help in evaluating supply chain performance?

10. Section 7.4.2: Cash to Cash Cycle Time

- **Question:** What does a shorter Cash to Cash Cycle Time indicate about a company's supply chain efficiency?

11. Section 7.5: Global Supply Chain Strategies

- **Question:** What is a key challenge in managing a global supply chain?

Situational Questions:

1. Situation 1:

- **Question:** You are the supply chain manager for a company that specializes in innovative products with high market volatility. Recently, you've noticed that your current supply chain, which is focused on efficiency, is struggling to meet customer demands due to its lack of flexibility. Based on the concepts in Chapter 7, what steps would you take to realign your supply chain strategy with the needs of your product portfolio?

2. Situation 2:

- **Question:** Your company has recently expanded into new international markets, and you are responsible for developing a global supply chain strategy. Considering the various factors outlined in Chapter 7, such as cost, market access, and risk management, what approach would you take to design an effective global supply chain network?

Chapter 7 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=214#h5p-10>

PART VIII

CHAPTER 8: SUSTAINABLE SUPPLY CHAINS

8.1 INTRODUCTION TO SUSTAINABLE SUPPLY CHAINS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Patagonia, a renowned outdoor clothing company, serves as a compelling example of a business that has successfully integrated sustainability into its supply chain. Patagonia's Supply Chain Environmental Responsibility Program is designed to measure, reduce, and eliminate the environmental impacts of manufacturing its products and materials. The program is implemented at supplier facilities worldwide and covers a broad range of impact areas, including environmental management systems, chemicals, water use, water emissions, energy use, greenhouse gases, other air emissions, and waste.

Patagonia's mission statement, as displayed prominently on its website, is clear: "We're in business to save our home planet." This mission is reflected in their efforts to make their supply chain carbon-neutral by 2025. This involves working with recycled cotton, polyester, and down, among other materials, and pushing suppliers to adopt more sustainable practices. Patagonia's CEO, Rose Marcario, emphasizes that "we are not going to have virgin supply chains forever because we are running out of resources," highlighting the need for innovation in sustainable practices.

Before diving deeper, it's crucial to understand what we mean by 'sustainability.' **Sustainability** is defined as meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. In the context of supply chains, this means creating systems that are not only efficient but also minimize environmental impact and are socially responsible. This holistic approach ensures that we are not depleting resources or causing harm that will affect future generations. It aligns well with the existing concept of a sustainable supply chain, which aims to minimize environmental impact while also improving social and economic conditions.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=248#oembed-1>

The importance of sustainable supply chains has grown in recent years for several reasons. Firstly, consumers are becoming more environmentally conscious and prefer to buy from companies that demonstrate a commitment to sustainability. Secondly, sustainable practices can lead to cost savings in the long run, for

example, through reduced energy consumption or waste disposal costs. Lastly, companies may face regulatory pressures to reduce their environmental impact.

8.1.1: Key Components of a Sustainable Supply Chain

Sustainable supply chains are characterized by several key components:



Sustainable Sourcing: This involves obtaining materials and services in a way that respects environmental, social, and governance factors. For example, a company might choose to source materials that are renewable or that have a lower carbon footprint.

Green Manufacturing: This refers to the process of producing goods in a way that minimizes environmental impact. This could involve reducing energy consumption, minimizing waste, or using safer processes and materials.

Eco-friendly Packaging: Sustainable supply chains often use packaging that is recyclable, reusable, or made from renewable resources.

Energy-Efficient Logistics: This involves optimizing transportation and distribution to minimize energy consumption and reduce carbon emissions.

End-of-Life Management: This refers to how products are disposed of or recycled at the end of their life cycle. A sustainable supply chain will have processes in place to ensure products are disposed of in an environmentally friendly way.

Social Responsibility: Besides environmental considerations, a sustainable supply chain also takes into account social factors, such as fair labor practices and community involvement.

By implementing sustainable supply chain practices, businesses like Patagonia can not only reduce their environmental impact but also improve their brand image, achieve cost savings, and meet regulatory requirements. As we move forward in this chapter, we will delve deeper into each of these components, providing a comprehensive understanding of sustainable supply chains.

8.1.2: Greenwashing in Sustainable Supply Chains

While the importance of sustainable supply chains is increasingly recognized, there is still a significant amount of resistance among businesses to fully implement sustainable practices. This resistance can stem from several factors. Firstly, transitioning to sustainable practices often involves upfront costs and investments, which can be a deterrent for businesses focused on short-term profits. Secondly, there may be a lack of knowledge or understanding about sustainable practices and how to implement them effectively. Lastly, in some cases, businesses may face challenges in aligning their sustainability goals with their existing business models or operational processes.



In the face of these challenges, some companies resort to pseudo-sustainable processes, a practice known as

greenwashing. **Greenwashing** is the process of companies putting more financial efforts into the marketing of looking green, rather than actually being green. This then makes it simply an unsupported claim. The demand for products and services to be environmentally responsible is rapidly growing. Companies want to cash in on this demand, and not all companies have great morals. More demand for sustainable products often helps companies to charge more for their products. However, some companies just claim they help the environment when they do not actually take sustainable actions – this leads to customers being overcharged. Not only this, it also seriously damages the reputations of companies who are genuine in their environmental responsibilities as customers find it difficult to know which claims are genuine or which companies to trust.

Here are a few examples of greenwashing:

- **IKEA:** The company is the largest consumer of wood in the world. An investigation found that IKEA has been making beechwood chairs using illegally sourced wood from the forests of Ukraine's Carpathian region, an area home to endangered species such as bears, lynxes, wolves, and bison. The illegal timber was certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC), raising serious questions about the ethics and transparency of the FSC accreditation.
- **Unilever:** Unilever's cleaning brand Persil was scrutinized by the UK's advertising watchdog. In an advert, they claimed Persil was "kinder to our planet", and featured children picking up litter on a beach. The Advertising Standards Authority (ASA) said the advert's claim was unsubstantiated. Unilever had to change its recyclable claims and the packaging of the Persil products.
- **HSBC:** HSBC ranks 13th for the top banks financing fossil fuels in the UK. And still finances carbon-heavy industries like thermal coal mining. This year, the UK advertising watchdog banned a series of misleading adverts and said any future campaigns must disclose the bank's contribution to the climate crisis. The ruling by the Advertising Standards Authority (ASA) followed dozens of complaints over posters that highlighted how the bank had invested \$1tn in climate-friendly initiatives such as tree-planting and helping clients hit climate targets, but failed to acknowledge HSBC's own contribution to emissions.
- **Volkswagen:** In September 2015, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) found that many VW cars being sold in America had a "defeat device" – or software – in diesel engines that could detect when they were being tested, changing the performance accordingly to improve results. The German car giant has since admitted cheating emissions tests in the US. This was going on while to the public the company was touting the low-emissions and eco-friendly features of its vehicles in marketing campaigns. In actuality, these engines were emitting up to 40 times the allowed limit for nitrogen oxide pollutants.
- <https://www.thecooldown.com/green-business/dow-inc-recycled-shoes-lie-backlash/#:~:text=So%20journalists%20from%20Reuters%20decided,being%20sent%20to%20recycling%20plants>

These examples illustrate the deceptive practices that some companies resort to in order to appear more

sustainable than they actually are. It is crucial for consumers and businesses alike to be aware of greenwashing and to demand transparency and accountability in sustainable practices.

8.2 SUSTAINABILITY METRICS

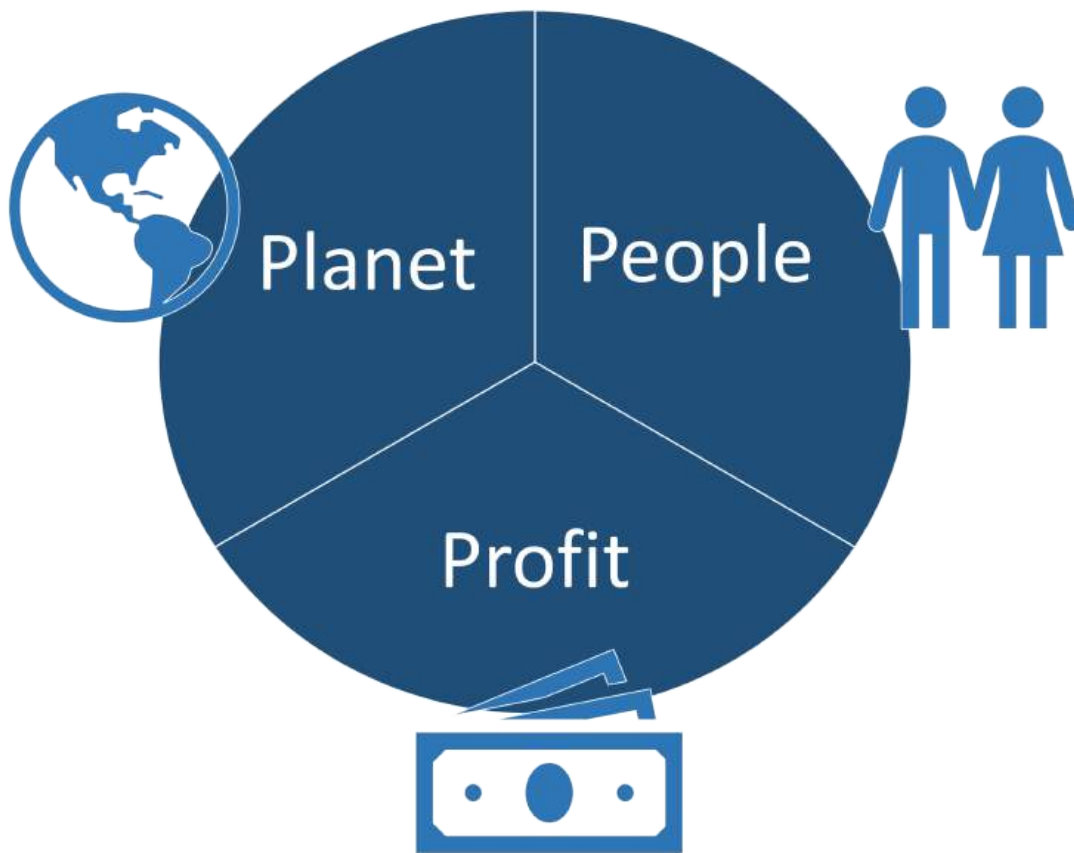
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Traditional business metrics have often been short-term and excessively focused on financial measures. These metrics, while important for assessing financial performance, often overlook the broader impacts of a business on society and the environment. The Balanced Scorecard, as discussed in Chapter 2, partially addressed this issue by incorporating non-financial measures into performance assessment. However, even the Balanced Scorecard does not explicitly focus on sustainability. Therefore, we need frameworks that can effectively measure sustainability performance.

8.2.1: The Triple Bottom Line

One such framework is the **Triple Bottom Line** (TBL), which was first coined by John Elkington in 1994. The TBL posits that firms should commit to measuring their social and environmental impact—in addition to their financial performance—rather than solely focusing on generating profit, or the standard “bottom line.”

The Triple Bottom Line can be broken down into “three P’s”: **profit**, **people**, and the **planet**.



Profit: In a capitalist economy, a firm's success most heavily depends on its financial performance, or the profit it generates for shareholders. Strategic planning initiatives and key business decisions are generally carefully designed to maximize profits while reducing costs and mitigating risk. However, purpose-driven leaders are discovering they have the power to use their businesses to effect positive change in the world without hampering financial performance. In many cases, adopting sustainability initiatives has proven to drive business success. For example, according to an IBM consumer report, half of consumers are willing to pay a premium for sustainable products. Further, purpose-driven consumers—those who choose products and brands based on alignment with their values—represent the largest market segment at 44 percent.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=251#oembed-1>

Companies are now also using sustainability-adjusted ROI and EBITDA (Earnings Before Interest, Taxes, Depreciation, and Amortization) to measure the financial benefits of their sustainability initiatives. These metrics help in quantifying how sustainability practices contribute to the bottom line.

Sustainability-Adjusted ROI: This is a modification of the traditional Return on Investment (ROI) metric. It incorporates the costs and benefits of sustainability initiatives. The formula is:

$$\text{Sustainability-Adjusted ROI} = \frac{\text{Net Profit from Sustainability initiatives} - \text{Cost of sustainability initiatives}}{\text{Cost of sustainability initiatives}} * 100$$

Sustainability-Adjusted EBITDA: Similar to EBITDA, this metric adjusts earnings to include the costs and benefits of sustainability efforts. It can be calculated as:

Sustainability-Adjusted EBITDA = EBITDA + Revenue from Sustainable Products – Cost of Sustainable Initiatives

People: The second component of the TBL highlights a business's societal impact, or its commitment to people. Traditionally, businesses have favored shareholder value as an indicator of success, meaning they strive to generate value for those who own shares of the company. As firms have increasingly embraced sustainability, they've shifted their focus toward creating value for all stakeholders impacted by business decisions, including customers, employees, and community members. For instance, companies can ensure fair hiring practices and encourage volunteerism in the workplace.

Social Return on Investment (SROI) and employee engagement scores are becoming popular metrics to measure this aspect. SROI helps in quantifying the social impact created per dollar spent, while employee engagement scores can indicate the level of employee satisfaction and retention.

Social Return on Investment (SROI): This metric quantifies the social impact per dollar spent. It is calculated as:

$$\text{SROI} = \frac{\text{Social value created} - \text{Investment in social initiatives}}{\text{Investment in social initiatives}} * 100$$

Employee Engagement Score: This is often measured through surveys and questionnaires that assess employee satisfaction, loyalty, and advocacy. The score is usually a percentage of highly engaged employees.

Planet: The final component of the TBL is concerned with making a positive impact on the planet. Since the birth of the Industrial Revolution, large corporations have contributed a staggering amount of pollution to the environment, which has been a key driver of climate change and environmental concerns. While businesses have historically been the greatest contributors to climate change, they also hold the keys to driving positive change. Many business leaders are now recognizing their social responsibility to do so. Adjustments like using ethically sourced materials, cutting down on energy consumption, and streamlining shipping practices are steps in the right direction toward long-term sustainability. For example, UPS has been integrating alternative energy sources into their fleets, resulting in cost savings that help their customers and their bottom lines.

Carbon footprint per unit of revenue, water usage per unit of production, and waste recycling rates are some of the key metrics that companies are using to measure their environmental impact. For instance, UPS has been integrating alternative energy sources into their fleets, which not only reduces their carbon footprint but also results in cost savings.

Carbon Footprint per Unit of Revenue: This metric measures the amount of carbon dioxide emissions per dollar of revenue generated. It is calculated as:

$$\text{Carbon Footprint per Unit of Revenue} = \frac{\text{Total carbon emissions}}{\text{Total revenue}}$$

Water Usage per Unit of Production: This metric quantifies the amount of water used per unit of product manufactured. It is calculated as:

$$\text{Water Usage per Unit of Production} = \frac{\text{Total water used}}{\text{Total units produced}}$$

Waste Recycling Rate: This is the percentage of waste material that has been diverted from traditional disposal and is instead being recycled. It is calculated as:

$$\text{Waste Recycling Rate} = \frac{\text{Total waste recycled}}{\text{Total waste generated}}$$

The TBL doesn't inherently value societal and environmental impact at the expense of financial profitability. Instead, many firms have reaped financial benefits by committing to sustainable business practices. According to Sustainable Business Strategy, evidence has increasingly shown that firms with promising environmental, social, and governance (ESG) metrics tend to produce superior financial returns. As a result, more investors have begun focusing on ESG metrics when making investment decisions.

To illustrate the practical application of the TBL, let's consider the example of sustainable sourcing. As per a report on Supply Chain Dive, the gap between sustainable and low-cost procurement is narrowing. Buyers have greater choices in sourcing sustainable products from suppliers with a strong belief in corporate social responsibility. Sustainable efforts often help to simplify and streamline supply chain operations, providing an economic benefit for customers and suppliers alike through lower prices and improved service levels. Now, the green alternative is frequently the low-cost alternative. Positive economics around sustainability has taken hold and the supply chain — and society — are better for it. This example demonstrates how the three Ps of the TBL can be effectively integrated into business operations.

8.3 SUPPLY CHAIN PRACTICES

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the journey towards sustainability, businesses have to adopt certain practices that can help reduce their environmental impact. These practices are not just about reducing emissions or waste, but also about rethinking the way businesses operate and interact with the environment. In this section, we will explore four key sustainable practices: Ecological Footprint, Scope 1, 2, and 3 Emissions, Waste Hierarchy, and Circular Supply Chains.

8.3.1 Ecological Footprint

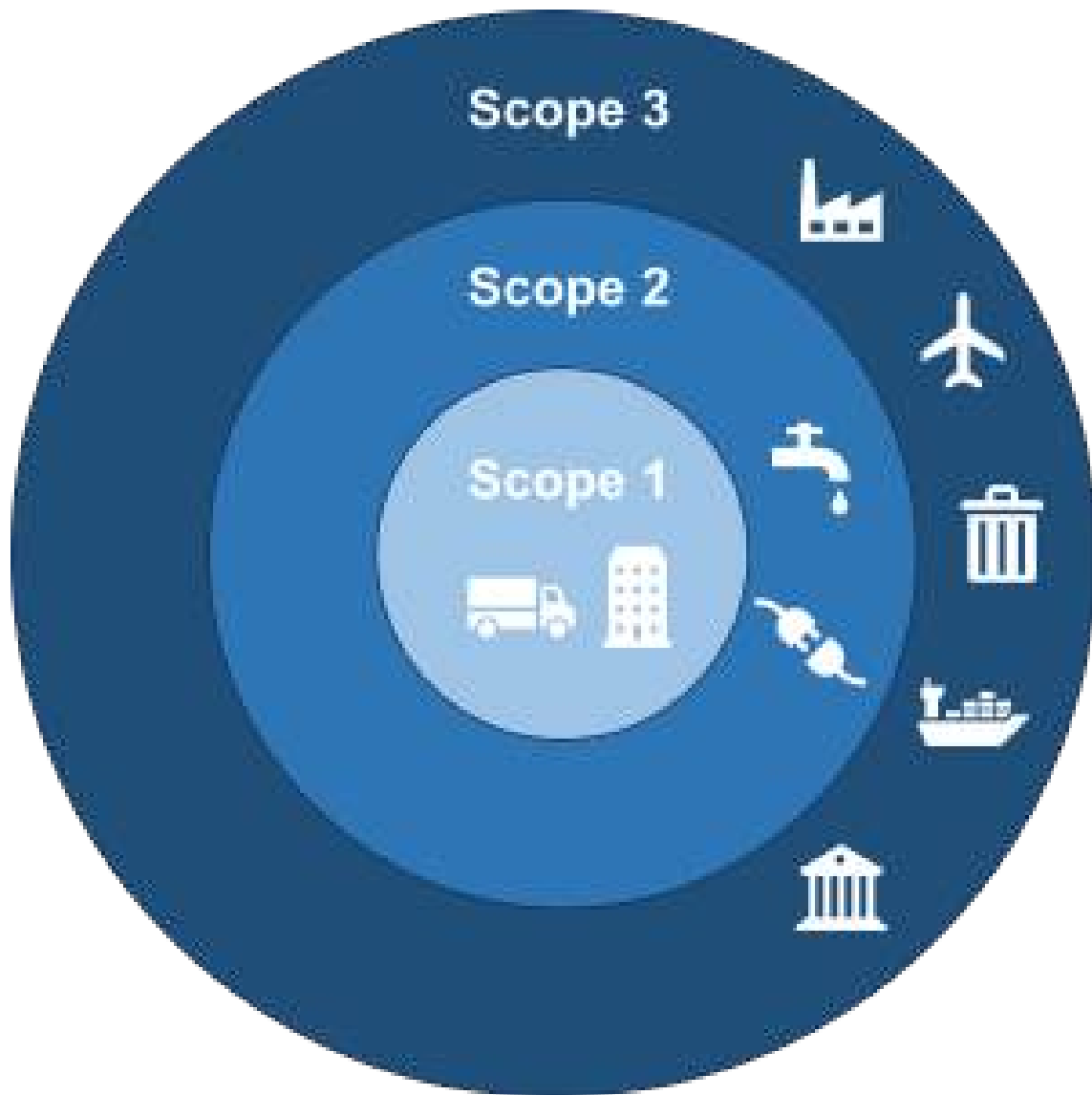
The **ecological footprint** is a measure of the environmental impact of a person, organization, city, or country. It quantifies the amount of nature's resources an entity consumes and the waste it generates, compared to nature's ability to regenerate those resources and absorb the waste. This measure is usually expressed in global hectares. Businesses, in their pursuit of sustainability, should ideally aim for Net Zero emissions. Net Zero refers to achieving a balance between the amount of greenhouse gases produced and the amount removed from the atmosphere. This can be achieved by reducing emissions and implementing practices to remove Greenhouse gases from the atmosphere.

Greenhouse gases (GHGs) are gases in the Earth's atmosphere that trap heat. They let sunlight in but prevent some of the heat that the sunlight brings from leaving the atmosphere. The primary greenhouse gases in Earth's atmosphere are water vapor, carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), and ozone (O₃). While many of these gases occur naturally, human activities, particularly the burning of fossil fuels and deforestation, are increasing concentrations of some of them, such as CO₂, leading to more heat being trapped and an overall warming of the Earth's atmosphere. This understanding of GHGs lays the foundation for the concept of a carbon footprint, which is a critical component of an entity's ecological footprint.

Carbon emissions are a significant component of an entity's ecological footprint. **Carbon footprint** refers to the total amount of greenhouse gases produced, directly and indirectly, by an entity. It's measured in units of carbon dioxide. Several companies have made commitments towards reducing their ecological footprint. For instance, Apple has committed to becoming 100% carbon neutral for its supply chain and products by 2030. This means that every Apple device sold will have net zero climate impact. Similarly, Microsoft has pledged to be carbon negative by 2030, meaning it plans to remove more carbon from the atmosphere than it emits.

3.83.2 Scope 1, Scope 2, and Scope 3 Emissions

Scope 1, 2, and 3 emissions are categories defined by the Greenhouse Gas Protocol to help organizations structure their greenhouse gas inventory. **Scope 1** emissions are direct emissions from owned or controlled sources. **Scope 2** emissions are indirect emissions from the generation of purchased energy. **Scope 3** emissions are all indirect emissions that occur in the value chain of the reporting company, including both upstream and downstream emissions.



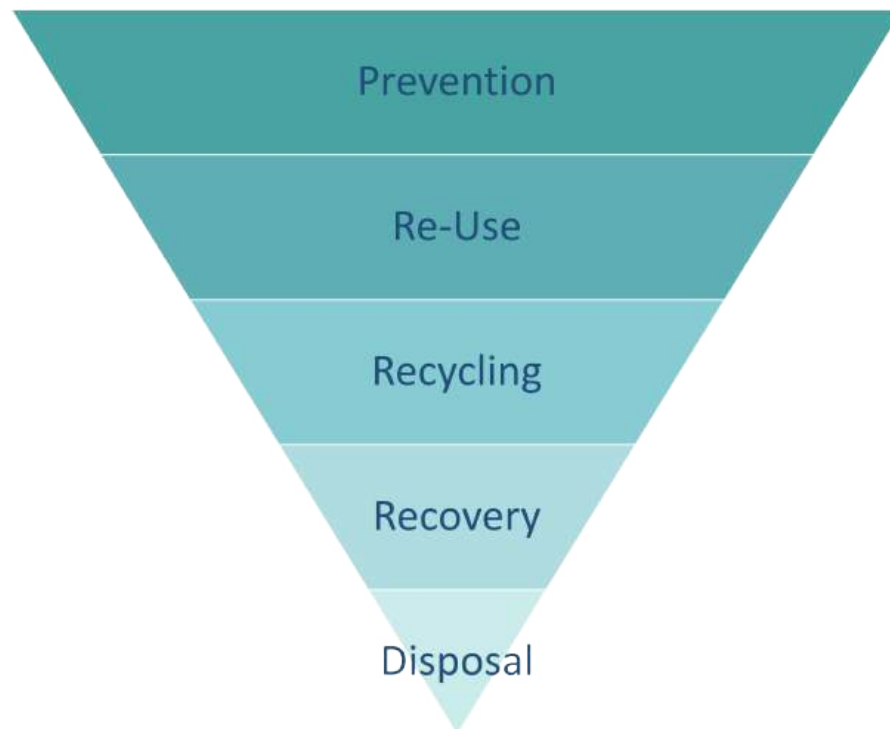
While Scope 1 emissions are often the primary focus, they can be less than 1% of a product's total lifecycle emissions. Hence, it's crucial for businesses to also focus on Scope 2 and 3 emissions. By doing so, they can identify more opportunities for reduction, engage suppliers and customers in their sustainability efforts, and make more informed decisions.

Science Based Targets (SBTs) are an effective tool in this regard. They provide a clearly defined pathway

for companies to reduce greenhouse gas emissions in line with the Paris Agreement goals. By setting SBTs, companies can ensure their reduction efforts align with climate science, stimulate innovation, and enhance their reputations.

8.3.3 Waste Hierarchy

The **waste hierarchy** is a tool used in the evaluation of processes that protect the environment alongside resource and energy consumption from most favorable to least favorable actions. The hierarchy sets out preferred waste management practices, with prevention being the most desirable and landfill disposal being the least.

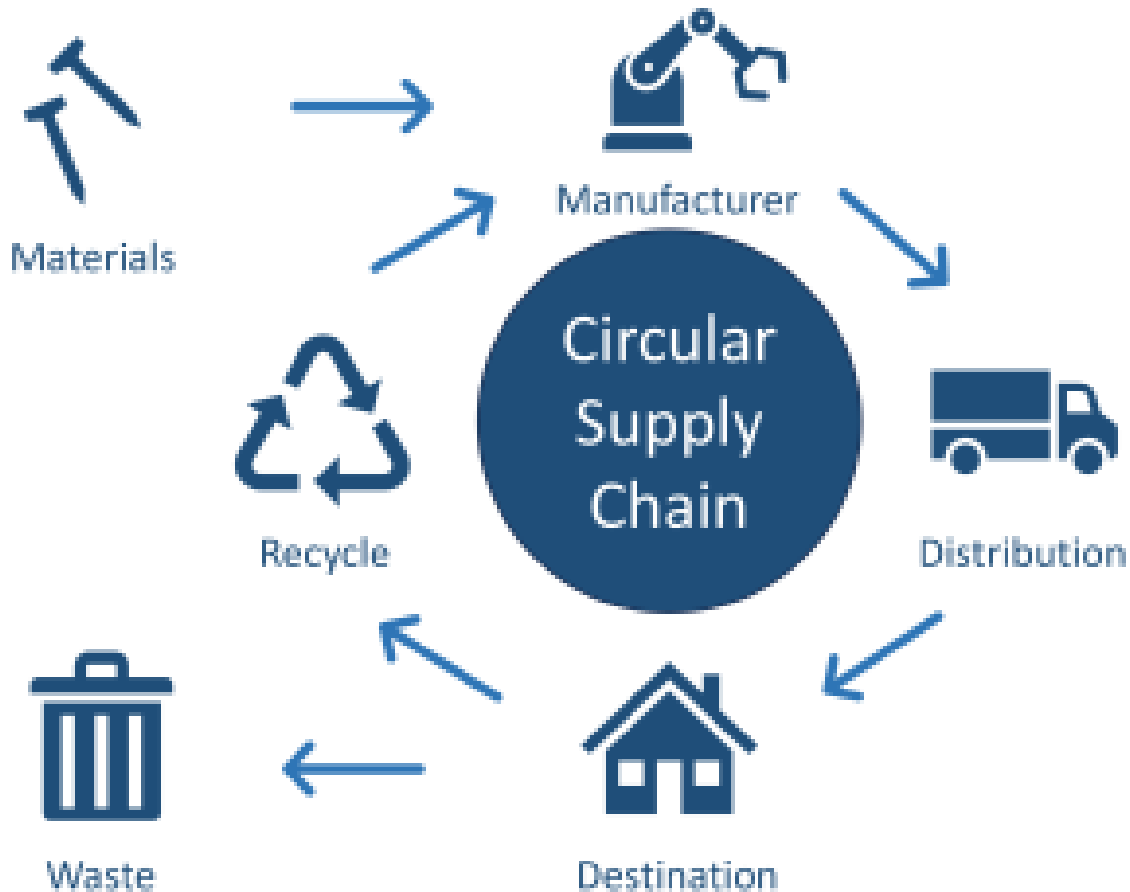


Businesses should aim to implement practices that are at the top of the hierarchy. For instance, they should focus on waste prevention, which involves redesigning products and processes and changing societal patterns of consumption and production. Next, they should consider waste minimization and reuse, then recycling, then energy recovery, and lastly disposal.

Many companies are now adopting practices such as remanufacturing, refurbishing, and recycling to reduce waste. Remanufacturing involves restoring a product to its original condition, using a combination of reused, repaired, and new parts. Refurbishing, on the other hand, involves a thorough check of products for defects and restoring them less expensively than remanufacturing. Recycling involves converting materials into reusable materials or returning them to their original state. These practices not only reduce waste but also save resources and energy, contributing to a more sustainable supply chain.

8.3.4 Circular Supply Chains

A **circular supply chain** refers to a system where the input materials are kept in circulation for as long as possible, extract the maximum value from them while in use, then recover and regenerate products and materials at the end of each service life. This is in contrast to the traditional linear economy, which has a ‘take, make, dispose’ model of production.



Circular supply chains can significantly reduce waste and make businesses more sustainable. They involve designing products for durability, reuse, and recyclability, using renewable or recycled materials, and reducing waste and pollution. For instance, Philips offers a service where they retain ownership of their medical equipment and take them back after use for refurbishment or recycling.

In conclusion, adopting sustainable practices in supply chains is not just about reducing the environmental impact. It's also about creating value for businesses, improving efficiency, and building resilience in the face of environmental and social changes.

8.4 GOVERNMENT AND NGO INFLUENCE ON SUPPLY CHAIN SUSTAINABILITY

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the evolving landscape of global business, the role of both governmental bodies and non-governmental organizations (NGOs) has become increasingly pivotal in shaping sustainable supply chains. As the urgency to address environmental, social, and economic challenges intensifies, these entities exert significant influence through a variety of mechanisms. This section delves into the multifaceted roles they play, highlighting the strategies and interventions they employ to foster and ensure sustainability within supply chains. Through a comprehensive exploration, readers will gain insights into how governments and NGOs can be both catalysts and guardians of sustainable practices in the intricate web of global supply chains.

8.4.1: Role of Governments in Sustainable Supply Chains

Governments, as primary regulators and policymakers, have a profound influence on the direction and practices of supply chains. Their interventions, ranging from stringent regulations to incentivizing sustainable practices, can either facilitate or hinder the adoption of sustainable measures by businesses. By leveraging their legislative and economic powers, governments can set the tone for responsible business conduct, ensuring that supply chains not only contribute to economic growth but also uphold environmental and social standards. Governmental role towards ensuring sustainable supply chains could include:

Regulation and Policies:

Governments play a pivotal role in shaping the landscape of sustainable supply chains through the formulation and enforcement of regulations and policies. This is the primary role of governments in driving sustainable supply chains. These regulations can range from environmental standards to labor practices, ensuring that businesses operate within a framework that prioritizes sustainability.

The UFLPA is a testament to the power of governmental regulations in influencing supply chain practices. This act, aimed at preventing forced labor in the Xinjiang region of China, has posed significant compliance challenges for businesses. As highlighted by [Supply Chain Dive](#), companies have had to revise their procurement plans and ensure transparency in their supply chains to comply with this act, thereby emphasizing the role of government policies in driving sustainable practices.

Incentives and Tariffs:

Governments can also influence sustainable supply chains through incentives and tariffs. Incentives serve three primary roles:

1. Increasing the supply of a product.
 2. Driving the adoption of new technologies.
 3. Supporting the industrialization of specific zones. On the other hand, tariffs can redirect procurement away from certain countries and support local manufacturing. However, the overall impact of incentives and tariffs on sustainability is debatable.
- The CHIPS Act in the US has spurred massive investments in the semiconductor industry, showcasing how incentives can boost the supply of critical products.
 - The European Union’s approval of a €2.8 billion renewable energy scheme in Germany, as reported by Reuters, exemplifies how incentives can drive the adoption of sustainable technologies.
 - China’s “Go West” policy, as detailed in Wikipedia, is an initiative aimed at developing its western regions, demonstrating the role of incentives in zonal development.
 - The tariffs imposed by the USA on China have forced companies to alter their supply chains to avoid tariff-laden countries, emphasizing the role of tariffs in shaping global supply chains

Public Procurement:

Public procurement, the process by which governments and state-owned enterprises purchase goods and services, represents a significant portion of a country’s GDP. In the United States, for instance, government procurement amounts to nearly \$2 trillion annually. This massive scale gives governments substantial leverage in influencing supply chain practices. By setting criteria for their suppliers, governments can enforce sustainable practices, dictate who they will procure from, and even shape the broader market dynamics.

- The Buy American Act mandates the U.S. government to prefer U.S.-made products in its purchases, thereby influencing domestic production and supply chains.
- The Federal Supplier Climate Risks and Resilience Rule requires suppliers to the U.S. government to report greenhouse gas emissions and climate-related risks, ensuring that the government’s vast procurement power supports environmentally responsible businesses.

Transparency Requirements:

Transparency in supply chains is crucial for sustainability. Governments can mandate businesses to disclose information about their suppliers, their locations, and their practices. This not only ensures ethical practices but also builds trust with consumers.

The UK’s Modern Slavery Act is a prime example of transparency requirements in action. As reported by Supply Chain Dive, in 2016, 51 new prosecutions were initiated under this act, which mandates companies with U.K. footprint and earnings over £36 million to annually publish a statement detailing their efforts to

address modern slavery within their supply chain. This act has not only increased transparency but has also held companies accountable for their supply chain practices.

Collaboration:

Governments often collaborate with businesses, NGOs, and other stakeholders to promote sustainable supply chains. Through partnerships, governments can pool resources, share knowledge, and drive collective action towards sustainability.

A classic example of collaboration is the various global climate accords where nations come together to set collective targets for reducing carbon emissions. These accords often require businesses to adopt greener supply chain practices, showcasing the power of collaborative efforts in driving sustainability.

8.4.2 Non-Governmental Organizations (NGOs)

In the realm of sustainability, NGOs have demonstrated their ability to significantly influence business practices. A notable example is the case of Greenpeace's campaign against Nestlé in 2010. Greenpeace released a video highlighting the link between Nestlé's use of palm oil in its products and deforestation in Indonesia, which threatened the habitat of orangutans. The video went viral, leading to a massive public outcry. As a result, Nestlé committed to sourcing only sustainably produced palm oil by 2015, showcasing the power of NGO-led campaigns in driving corporate change.



NGOs, through their advocacy, research, and public campaigns, can spotlight unsustainable business practices and push companies towards more responsible actions. Their role is not just limited to ‘naming and shaming’; many NGOs collaborate with businesses to develop sustainable solutions, provide expertise, and co-create sustainability standards.

There are hundreds of NGOs globally working towards implementing sustainable supply chains. Broadly, these can be categorized into three types: issue-driven, buyer-driven, and seller-driven organizations. In the subsequent sections, we will delve into an example of each of these three types to understand their unique roles and impacts in shaping supply chain sustainability.

Issue-Centric NGOs: Greenpeace

Issue-centric NGOs, such as Greenpeace, are laser-focused on specific environmental or social issues. Their primary mission is to raise awareness about these issues and compel businesses to enact policy changes that address them. By spotlighting unsustainable practices and their consequences, they exert pressure on corporations to adopt more sustainable strategies. For instance, Greenpeace’s campaigns against Nestlé’s palm oil sourcing and Shell’s Arctic drilling plans have not only brought about immediate corporate change but have also raised broader awareness about environmental issues. Through their targeted campaigns, issue-centric NGOs ensure that pressing environmental and social concerns are addressed at the corporate level.

Demand-Centric NGOs: The Sustainability Consortium (TSC)

Demand-centric NGOs, like The Sustainability Consortium (TSC), are primarily formed by large manufacturers and retailers who are closer to consumer demand. Their main objective is to integrate sustainability into the core of business operations, reflecting the demands and expectations of the modern consumer. TSC, for instance, provides a platform for businesses like Amazon, BASF, and Walmart to collaborate and understand the environmental, social, and economic impacts of their products. By creating standardized metrics and methodologies, TSC enables these businesses to benchmark their performance, identify areas for improvement, and implement more sustainable practices. Their work ensures that sustainability becomes an integral part of business strategy and operations, directly responding to consumer demand for more sustainable products.

Supplier-Centric NGOs: Fair Trade



Supplier-centric NGOs, such as Fair Trade organizations, represent the interests of suppliers, especially those in specific parts of the world producing agricultural and other products. Their focus is on ensuring that these suppliers adopt sustainable practices and receive fair compensation for their products. They set rigorous social, economic, and environmental standards and ensure compliance through regular audits and certifications. The Fair Trade label informs consumers about the ethical and sustainable origins of products,

ensuring better conditions for producers. Their work strikes a balance between environmental sustainability, social justice, and economic viability, ensuring that suppliers in developing regions are not left behind in the global push for sustainability.

As business students, irrespective of your chosen major, understanding the roles and impacts of these NGOs is paramount. In today's interconnected global economy, businesses are not isolated entities but are part of a complex web of stakeholders, including NGOs. These organizations play a pivotal role in shaping public opinion, influencing consumer behavior, and even driving regulatory changes. Their activities can directly impact a company's reputation, operational strategies, and bottom line. Moreover, as future business leaders, managers, or entrepreneurs, you may find yourselves collaborating with, responding to, or even challenging the initiatives of these NGOs. A comprehensive understanding of their objectives, methods, and influence equips you with the knowledge to navigate these interactions effectively, ensuring that your business decisions are not only profitable but also socially responsible and environmentally sustainable.

8.5 SPECIAL TOPICS IN SUSTAINABLE SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

While we have delved into a broad spectrum of topics related to sustainable supply chain management, the field of sustainability is vast and ever evolving. In this section, we will touch upon some specialized areas that further underscore the depth and breadth of sustainability in supply chain management.

8.5.1 Certifications and Guidelines

Certifications and guidelines play a crucial role in setting standards and benchmarks for sustainability. They provide a roadmap for businesses to follow, ensuring that their operations align with globally recognized best practices. Here, we will explore three such pivotal certifications:

- **ISO 14001:** This is an internationally recognized standard that sets out the criteria for an environmental management system. It provides a framework that companies can follow, rather than establishing environmental performance requirements. By adhering to ISO 14001, businesses can demonstrate their commitment to improving environmental performance.
- **ISO 26000:** This standard provides guidance on social responsibility, allowing businesses to operate in an ethical and transparent manner that contributes to the health and welfare of society. It addresses various core subjects of social responsibility, including human rights, labor practices, and environmental issues, among others.
- **ISO 45001:** Focused on occupational health and safety, this standard aims to reduce workplace injuries and diseases. It provides a framework for organizations to improve employee safety, reduce workplace risks, and create better, safer working conditions globally.

8.5.2 Carbon Trade Market



The **carbon trade market** is an innovative approach to tackling global greenhouse gas emissions. It operates on the principle of allowing companies to buy and sell emission allowances, thereby providing economic incentives for companies to reduce their carbon footprint. The idea is to cap the total emissions allowed, and then let the market allocate the allowances efficiently. Companies that can reduce their emissions at a lower cost can sell their extra allowances to companies facing higher costs. This system not only promotes the reduction of overall emissions but also drives innovation in green technologies and practices. Understanding the intricacies of the carbon trade market is essential for businesses aiming to navigate the complexities of global sustainability regulations and capitalize on emerging green opportunities.

In wrapping up this chapter, it's evident that sustainability is no longer a mere buzzword or a peripheral consideration for businesses. It's a central tenet, a guiding principle that intertwines with every facet of modern business operations. From understanding the nuances of sustainable supply chains to recognizing the influence of governmental and non-governmental organizations, we've journeyed through the multifaceted landscape of sustainability in business. As we stand at the cusp of a new era, where businesses are not just profit-driven but purpose-driven, the role of sustainable practices becomes even more paramount. The future beckons with challenges, but also with unparalleled opportunities for businesses that embrace sustainability. Let's stride

forward with knowledge, commitment, and excitement, ready to shape a world where business success and sustainability go hand in hand!

Government policies and non-governmental organizations (NGOs) are pivotal in shaping supply chain sustainability. Governments can enact laws and regulations that compel businesses to adopt sustainable practices, while NGOs can leverage public opinion to induce change. Together, these entities create a framework that guides businesses in their sustainability efforts, ensuring alignment with broader societal goals and international standards. In this section, we will explore the role of governments, and in the subsequent section, we will delve into the influence of NGOs.

8.5.3 Governments and Supply Chain Sustainability

Governments play a crucial role in enforcing sustainability within supply chains. Through legislation and regulation, they can compel businesses to align their practices with environmental protection, social responsibility, and economic equity. Below is a table summarizing some of the most important laws in the USA and EU that drive sustainability, along with a description of how these laws impact supply chain management.

Europe	
Law/Policy	Description & Impact on Supply Chain Management
European Green Deal	Aims to make the EU climate-neutral by 2050. Encourages businesses to adopt greener practices, such as reducing emissions and waste.
Water Framework Directive	Ensures all aquatic ecosystems meet ‘good status’ by 2027. Requires industries to monitor and control water pollution.
Birds Directive & Habitats Directive	Protects wildlife and natural habitats. May require changes in sourcing and production methods.
Environmental Crime Directive	Makes environmental offenses criminal across the EU. Forces businesses to comply with environmental regulations.

USA

Law/Policy	Description & Impact on Supply Chain Management
Clean Air Act (CAA)	Regulates air emissions. Requires industries to control air pollution.
Clean Water Act (CWA)	Regulates the discharge of pollutants into U.S. waters. Requires industries to control water pollution.
Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act (CERCLA, or Superfund)	Addresses hazardous waste sites. Holds businesses responsible for waste disposal.
Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA)	Regulates new or existing chemicals. Requires compliance with chemical regulations.
Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA)	Aims to improve energy efficiency. Encourages businesses to adopt energy-efficient practices.

Examples of implementations:

European Green Deal: Companies like Unilever have committed to reducing their carbon footprint, affecting their entire supply chain from sourcing to distribution.

Clean Air Act (USA): Automobile manufacturers such as General Motors have adapted their production processes to comply with emission standards.

Water Framework Directive (EU): Beverage companies must ensure compliance with this directive in water management.

Toxic Substances Control Act (USA): Chemical companies like Dow must comply with regulations on chemical usage.

While governments play a pivotal role in compelling businesses to modify their policies, non-governmental organizations (NGOs) are equally influential. These NGOs, through various means, can shape policies and drive businesses towards sustainable practices, often filling gaps where governmental oversight might be limited or absent. In the upcoming section, we will delve into the roles and impacts of three such prominent NGOs in the realm of supply chain sustainability.

8.6 CHAPTER 8 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section 8.1: Introduction to Sustainable Supply Chains

- **Question:** Why is it important for modern businesses to integrate sustainability into their supply chains?

2. Section 8.2: Sustainability Metrics

- **Question:** What are the three components of the Triple Bottom Line (TBL), and how do they contribute to evaluating a company's sustainability?

3. Section 8.3: Supply Chain Practices

- **Question:** How does the waste hierarchy guide businesses in managing waste, and why is it essential for creating a circular supply chain?

4. Section 8.4: Government and NGO Influence on Supply Chain Sustainability

- **Question:** How do government regulations and NGOs work together to promote sustainable practices within supply chains?

5. Section 8.5: Special Topics in Sustainable Supply Chain Management

- **Question:** What role do certifications like ISO 14001 play in setting standards for sustainable supply chains?

Situational Questions:

Situation 1: Imagine you are a supply chain manager at a company that is facing pressure from consumers and investors to improve its sustainability efforts. The company has not previously focused on sustainability and is concerned about the potential costs of making changes. How would you apply the Triple Bottom Line

framework to convince the company's leadership that integrating sustainable practices could benefit both the company and its stakeholders?

Situation 2: Your company is considering implementing a circular supply chain model but is uncertain about where to start. As a newly appointed sustainability consultant, you are tasked with advising the company. Based on the waste hierarchy, what steps would you recommend the company take first to reduce waste and move towards a circular economy? How would you justify these recommendations?

Chapter 8 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=263#h5p-13>

PART IX

CHAPTER 9: RISK MANAGEMENT AND RESILIENCE

9.1 INTRODUCTION

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the intricate and interconnected realm of global supply chains, the balance between efficiency and vulnerability is delicate. The significance of proactive risk management becomes glaringly evident when we consider real-world incidents that ripple through global commerce, either mitigated by foresight or exacerbated by oversight.



Toyota's experience in 2011, when a devastating earthquake and tsunami disrupted numerous businesses in Japan, stands as a testament to the value of anticipation and preparedness. Having previously faced supply chain disruptions, Toyota's fortified risk management strategies enabled a faster recovery than many competitors. Conversely, the 2021 blockade of the Suez Canal by the colossal container ship, *Ever Given*, highlighted the inherent risks of over-reliance on singular critical points in a supply chain. This incident paralyzed a vital maritime artery for six days, impacting global trade and emphasizing the importance of comprehensive risk assessment and robust contingency plans.

While the aforementioned are massive examples of risk situations, it's crucial to recognize that every business, regardless of its scale, faces a multitude of smaller, yet significant, risks. These seemingly minor risks, if overlooked, can frequently and negatively impact businesses. For instance, failure to properly package consumer goods can lead to damage during transport. Similarly, inadequate security measures in a warehouse can result in theft, and improperly prepared documents with missing data can cause product delays at customs. In some scenarios, these smaller risk events can inflict more damage than larger, more newsworthy incidents.

This chapter aims to address both the high-profile risks that make headlines and the everyday challenges that businesses grapple with. As we journey through this chapter, we will equip readers with strategies, tools, and best practices essential for navigating the vast spectrum of risks in global supply chains.

9.2 THE CONCEPT OF RISK

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Risk, in its essence, refers to the potential for an unforeseen event or circumstance to negatively impact an organization's objectives or operations. It embodies the uncertainty surrounding future events that could lead to undesirable outcomes. For example, a retail store might face the risk of inventory theft, leading to financial losses and potential supply shortages. Similarly, an IT company could be at risk of cyberattacks, threatening data integrity and client trust.

Diving deeper into the sources of risk, they can broadly be categorized into external and internal factors. External factors are those that are outside the direct control of the organization. For instance, economic downturns can lead to reduced consumer spending, impacting businesses across various sectors. On the other hand, internal factors originate within the organization. An example would be a company's failure to update its software, leading to vulnerabilities and potential data breaches.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=271#oembed-1>

Understanding and managing these risks is crucial for businesses to ensure sustainability and growth. A real-world example of this is the global automobile manufacturer, Toyota. Following the 2011 earthquake and tsunami in Japan, Toyota faced significant supply chain disruptions. However, due to their robust risk management practices established after previous disruptions, they were able to recover faster than many competitors. Their proactive approach to identifying potential risks and implementing mitigation strategies showcased the tangible benefits of effective risk management, not just in preventing losses but also in gaining a competitive advantage.

Three fundamental concepts associated with risk are:



Probability of
Risk



Degree of
Impact



Ease of
Detection

- **Probability of Risk:** This refers to the likelihood of a particular risk event occurring. For instance, the probability of the Suez Canal being blocked by a ship, as with the Ever Given incident, was considered low before the event but has since been re-evaluated by many businesses.
- **Degree of Impact:** This pertains to the potential severity or consequences of the risk should it materialize. Using the same Suez Canal example, the degree of impact was extremely high, given the massive disruption to global trade and the ripple effects it caused in various industries.
- **Ease of Detection:** This concept relates to how readily a risk can be identified or detected before it materializes. Some risks, like potential equipment failures, might be easier to detect with regular maintenance checks. However, certain geopolitical risks or sudden natural disasters might be harder to predict or detect in advance.

9.2.1 Risk Priority Number (RPN)

Building upon our understanding of risk and its fundamental concepts, the Risk Priority Number (RPN) stands out as a critical metric in the realm of risk management. The RPN provides a quantitative approach to assess and prioritize risks, enabling businesses to make informed decisions on where to allocate resources and focus their risk management efforts.



The RPN is derived by considering three integral components, each of which we've touched upon:

- **Probability of Risk:** Quantifies the likelihood of a risk event occurring. This is rated on a scale of 1 to 10, where 1 indicates a low probability and 10 signifies a high probability.
- **Degree of Impact:** Measures the potential severity or consequences should the risk materialize. Again, this is rated on a scale of 1 to 10, with 1 being low impact and 10 being high impact.
- **Ease of Detection:** Assesses how readily a risk can be identified or detected before it becomes a reality. This component is rated on a scale of 1 to 10, where 1 indicates that the risk is easily detectable and 10 suggests it's hard to detect.

By multiplying the values assigned to these three components, the RPN is calculated. The resulting number offers a relative measure of the risk, facilitating businesses in prioritizing and addressing the most pressing risks first.

Example 1: Reflecting on the Suez Canal incident with the Ever Given, if the probability of such an event was initially rated as 2 (considered low before the event), the degree of impact as 10 (given the massive disruption), and the ease of detection as 8 (due to the unpredictability of such an event), the RPN would be $2 \times 10 \times 8 = 160$.

Example 2: In the context of an IT company facing potential cyberattacks, if the probability is rated as 7 (given the increasing frequency of cyber threats), the degree of impact as 9 (due to potential data breaches and

loss of client trust), and the ease of detection as 2 (with advanced cybersecurity tools in place making it easier to detect threats), the RPN would be $7 \times 9 \times 2 = 126$.

These examples emphasize the significance of RPN in risk management, serving as a compass for businesses to navigate the complex landscape of potential threats and disruptions.

9.3 BALANCING THE COST OF RISK AND THE COST OF MANAGING RISK

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Having delved into the concept of risk and the quantification of risk through RPN in a previous section, it becomes evident that risks are an inherent part of business operations. While it might seem that firms should strive to eliminate all risks, aiming for a utopian business environment free from uncertainties or disruptions, this perspective warrants reconsideration for several reasons:

- **Not Necessary:** Sometimes, certain risks might be so infrequent or minor that the cost of preventing them exceeds the potential damage. For instance, a local retailer might not need to invest heavily in advanced cybersecurity measures if they conduct most of their business offline and handle minimal sensitive data.
- **Not Possible:** There are inherent risks in every venture that simply cannot be eliminated. For example, a farming business cannot control weather conditions. While they can mitigate the impact of unexpected weather events with insurance or diversifying crops, they can't eliminate the risk of bad weather entirely.
- **Prohibitively Expensive:** In some cases, the cost of completely eliminating a risk could be so high that it would render the business unprofitable. A small e-commerce startup might not be able to afford the same level of supply chain redundancy as a global e-commerce giant, even if it would eliminate supply chain disruptions.

In the context of these realities, organizations need to be judicious in how they approach risk management. One effective strategy is to meticulously document both the costs associated with risks and the costs tied to managing those risks. The cost of risk encapsulates the potential financial, operational, and reputational repercussions a business might face due to unforeseen events. Conversely, the cost of managing risk denotes the investments a business allocates towards strategies, tools, and resources to prevent, mitigate, or recover from disruptions. At its essence, risk management is about ensuring that the combined weight of the cost of risks and the cost of management is minimized, striking a balance that promotes both operational resilience and financial viability.

9.3.1 Cost of Risks

Building on the foundation laid out in the previous section, it's clear that while risks are inherent to any business operation, their associated costs can vary in magnitude and impact. The cost of risk is not just a

monetary value but a comprehensive measure that encapsulates various potential repercussions a business might face. These costs can manifest in several ways:



- **Financial Impact:** This is the direct monetary loss a business might incur due to disruptions. It could arise from lost sales, penalties, or unforeseen expenses resulting from events that disrupt regular business operations.
- **Operational Disruption:** Risks can lead to interruptions in daily operations. This could mean halted production lines, disrupted supply chains, or even complete shutdowns in extreme scenarios.
- **Reputational Damage:** Beyond tangible costs, risks can tarnish a company's reputation. A tarnished brand image can erode customer trust, leading to long-term financial implications as the business might need to invest more in rebuilding its image and regaining customer confidence.
- **Legal and Compliance Implications:** Certain risks can lead to legal challenges or regulatory penalties. These not only involve direct financial penalties but also the associated costs of legal consultations, court proceedings, and potential settlements.
- **Opportunity Costs:** When disruptions occur, businesses might miss out on potential opportunities. This could be in the form of lost sales, missed partnerships, or even foregone investments due to the time and resources spent on managing the disruption.

To provide a tangible perspective on these cost categories, consider the Suez Canal blockade by the Ever Given. The disruption led to a significant financial impact, with global trade facing delays and losses valued at up to \$10 billion each day. The operational implications were vast, with over 400 ships stranded, causing potential production stoppages and logistical challenges across industries. Evergreen Marine, the operator of Ever Given, risked reputational damage, potentially affecting its future business endeavors. Legal challenges loomed as the ship's owners and insurers faced claims from canal authorities and potential lawsuits from affected businesses. Amidst this chaos, many businesses, especially those with perishable goods or time-sensitive products, encountered the opportunity costs of missed sales and delayed market entries. This incident underscores the multifaceted nature of the costs associated with risks and the importance of effective risk management.

9.3.2 Cost of Managing Risks

While the cost of risks highlights the potential repercussions of unforeseen events, the cost of managing risks focuses on the investments made by businesses to prevent, mitigate, or recover from such disruptions. It's essential to understand that managing risks doesn't necessarily mean eliminating them but rather strategically addressing them to minimize their impact.



The cost of managing risks can be categorized into various components:

- **Preventive Measures:** These are proactive steps taken to avoid potential risks. It includes investments in training, technology, and infrastructure. For instance, a company might invest in advanced cybersecurity software to prevent potential cyberattacks or conduct regular employee training sessions to ensure compliance with safety protocols.
- **Mitigation Strategies:** Even with preventive measures in place, not all risks can be avoided. Mitigation strategies are designed to reduce the impact of risks that do materialize. This could involve diversifying suppliers to avoid supply chain disruptions or having backup systems in place to ensure business continuity in the event of technical failures.
- **Recovery Plans:** These are post-event strategies to bring operations back to normal after a disruption. It includes crisis management teams, insurance policies, and contingency plans. For example, after the 2011 earthquake and tsunami in Japan, Toyota's robust recovery plan, built on their prior risk management practices, enabled them to bounce back faster than many competitors.
- **Monitoring and Evaluation:** Continuous monitoring of potential risks and evaluating the effectiveness of current risk management strategies is crucial. This involves regular audits, feedback mechanisms, and updating risk management practices based on lessons learned.
- **Opportunity Costs of Risk Management:** Just as there are opportunity costs associated with risks,

there are also opportunity costs tied to risk management. For instance, funds allocated to risk management could have been invested elsewhere for potential growth. However, it's essential to weigh these opportunity costs against the potential costs of not managing risks.

To illustrate the cost of managing risks, consider the Ever Given incident in the Suez Canal. While the canal authorities had preventive measures in place, the incident highlighted the need for more robust mitigation strategies, such as alternative routes or advanced navigation systems. The recovery costs involved not just freeing the ship but also managing the backlog of vessels and addressing the cascading effects on global trade. Continuous monitoring and evaluation would involve assessing navigation protocols, ship sizes, and canal infrastructure to prevent similar incidents in the future.

9.3.3 Balancing the Cost of Risk and the Cost of Managing Risk

Risk management is inherently a balancing act. Businesses are constantly weighing the potential repercussions of unforeseen events against the investments required to mitigate or recover from such disruptions. It's crucial to understand that while risks are an inevitable part of business operations, over-investing in their management can be as detrimental as under-preparation.

The key lies in strategic prioritization. By identifying risks, which will be discussed in the upcoming sections on risk identification and the risk management process, organizations can determine which threats warrant significant investment and which can be managed with minimal resources. This approach ensures that businesses allocate their resources effectively, optimizing the balance between potential risk repercussions and the costs tied to risk management. In doing so, they can navigate uncertainties in a manner that promotes both operational resilience and financial stability.

9.4 RISK MANAGEMENT PROCESS

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the previous sections, we delved into various facets of risk and risk management, exploring the intricacies of each aspect. As we progress in this section, we aim to bring all those ideas together, providing a holistic view of the risk management process. Risk management is a systematic and structured approach to identify, assess, and address potential threats that could hinder an organization's ability to achieve its objectives. It encompasses a range of activities, from understanding various risk management frameworks to identifying, measuring, and deciding on tactics to handle these risks.



It's imperative to understand that risk management is not a solitary endeavor but a collaborative process. Organizations, especially those operating within supply chains, must approach risk management as a collective effort. When supply chain partners work in silos, the overall system can become inefficient and vulnerable. For instance, if every member in a supply chain independently decides to maintain excess stock as a buffer against disruptions, the cumulative result could be an inflated inventory, tying up resources and increasing costs. Conversely, without collaborative risk assessment, partners might overlook certain risks or fail to recognize interdependencies that could amplify the impact of disruptions. Effective risk management, therefore, requires open communication, shared responsibility, and coordinated strategies across all members of the supply chain.

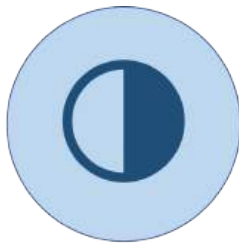
9.4.1 Various Risk Management Frameworks

Navigating the complex landscape of uncertainties requires a structured approach, and risk management frameworks offer just that. These frameworks are meticulously designed blueprints that guide organizations in identifying, assessing, and addressing risks. Let's delve deeper into three of the most prominent frameworks.

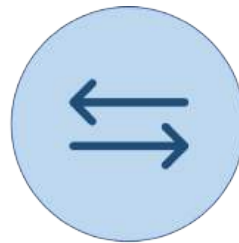
1. **ISO 31000:** The International Organization for Standardization (ISO), a globally recognized body, is the architect behind the ISO 31000 framework. This framework sets out guidelines and principles for creating a comprehensive risk management process. One of the standout principles of ISO 31000 is its emphasis on a tailored approach. This means that risk management strategies and practices should be customized based on an organization's unique environment. The "external context" refers to the broader social, cultural, political, and economic environment in which the organization operates, while the "internal context" pertains to the organization's culture, structure, governance, and other internal factors. Given its versatility, ISO 31000 finds its application across a myriad of sectors, from manufacturing and services to public sectors.



Tailored
Approach



External and
Internal Context



Versatile Across
Sectors

2. **COSO Enterprise Risk Management (ERM) Framework:** The Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) developed the ERM framework. COSO is a joint initiative of five major professional associations dedicated to improving organizational performance and governance. The COSO ERM framework is built on the idea of aligning risk appetite with strategy. It focuses on enhancing risk response decisions and aims to reduce operational surprises and losses. By providing a detailed structure for risk management, it touches upon aspects like risk governance, organizational culture, and data-driven decision-making. Given its robust structure and emphasis on financial transparency, the COSO ERM framework is a favorite in the financial sector, especially among publicly traded companies.



5 Professional
Associations



Enhance Risk
Responses



Reduce
Operational Loss

3. **NIST SP 800-37:** Originating from the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), a U.S. federal agency renowned for its work in IT and cybersecurity, the NIST SP 800-37 framework is a beacon in IT risk management. It zeroes in on security and privacy controls for federal information systems. The primary goal is to ensure data integrity, confidentiality, and availability, safeguarding against potential breaches and threats. Given its specialized focus on IT security, organizations, especially those collaborating with federal agencies or aiming to align with federal IT security standards, often turn to the NIST guidelines.



U.S. Federal
Agency



IT &
Cybersecurity



Security, Privacy,
Data Integrity

While these three frameworks are pillars in the realm of risk management, the field is vast, with other specialized frameworks like FAIR for cybersecurity risks and the Basel Accords for banking risks. As organizations chart their risk management journey, it's crucial to explore and select a framework that resonates with their specific needs and industry nuances.

9.4.2 Risk Identification

Risk identification stands as the cornerstone of the risk management process. It's the act of pinpointing and understanding the myriad threats that could hinder an organization's objectives. This step is crucial because, without a comprehensive grasp of potential risks, crafting effective management strategies becomes a challenge. Let's explore the intricacies of this process.

Brainstorming, Surveys, and Beyond: When embarking on the journey of risk identification, organizations often start with brainstorming sessions. These sessions, typically involving a diverse group from various departments, serve as a melting pot of ideas and experiences. The collective insights drawn from these discussions can shed light on risks that might otherwise remain in the shadows. For those interested in a deeper dive into brainstorming and other techniques, Chapter 9 on Demand Forecasting provides additional details, especially on leveraging historical data for demand forecasting and the same concepts can be used for risk identification. For a more structured approach, organizations might turn to surveys. By circulating questionnaires among employees, stakeholders, or even customers, they can amass a wealth of knowledge about perceived risks. Beyond these methods, in-depth interviews and industry report reviews can also be instrumental in unearthing potential threats.

The Dual Nature of Risks – Internal and External: Risks are omnipresent, lurking both within and outside an organization's boundaries. Internally, risks like employee fraud pose a threat to financial stability and reputation. IT outages, often unforeseen, can disrupt operations, especially in our technology-driven age. Product defects, financial mismanagement, and workplace accidents further exemplify the myriad challenges organizations might face from within.

Externally, the landscape is equally daunting. Economic downturns can squeeze revenues, while regulatory changes can usher in operational hurdles or increased costs. Natural disasters, a force majeure, can wreak havoc on operations and supply chains. The business world is also rife with competitive threats, with innovations or new market entrants potentially eroding an established firm's market share. Lastly, the intricate web of global supply chains means that disruptions to a single supplier can have cascading effects.



Diving Deeper with FMEA: To navigate this complex landscape of risks, organizations often employ structured methodologies like the Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA). FMEA delves deep into

potential failures, be it in a product or a process, and assesses their potential impacts. By systematically evaluating how something might fail and the repercussions of such failures, organizations can prioritize risks. This is where the concept of Risk Priority Number (RPN), introduced in Section 5.2, comes into play. By quantifying risks, FMEA ensures that organizations address the most pressing threats first, fostering a proactive rather than reactive approach to risk management.

9.4.3 Measuring Risk

Once the potential risks have been identified, the next pivotal step in the risk management process is to measure or quantify these risks. This quantification provides a structured way to prioritize and address risks based on their potential impact on the organization. The primary tool for this quantification, as introduced in Section 5.2.1, is the Risk Priority Number (RPN). The RPN is a numerical representation derived by multiplying three key components: the probability of the risk occurring, the degree of its potential impact, and the ease (or difficulty) of its detection. Each of these components is rated on a scale from 1 to 10, with the resulting RPN providing a comprehensive score for each risk.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=281#oembed-1>

By calculating the RPN for every identified risk, organizations can create a ranked list. This list, when sorted in descending order, places the risks with the highest RPN values at the top. These top-ranked risks are the ones that demand immediate attention, as they represent the most significant potential threats to the organization.

In essence, measuring risk using the RPN methodology ensures that organizations focus their resources and efforts on the most pressing risks, enabling them to proactively manage and mitigate potential disruptions.

9.4.4 Risk Tactics

Once risks have been identified and measured, the next step is to determine the most appropriate tactic to manage each one. There are four primary risk management tactics that organizations can employ: Elimination, Mitigation, Transfer, and Acceptance. Each tactic has its own set of implications, both in terms of the cost of the risk and the cost of managing it.

1. **Elimination:** This tactic involves taking steps to completely remove the risk. It's the most definitive approach but can also be the most costly in terms of resources and effort. For instance, if a manufacturing process has a step that consistently introduces defects, eliminating that step or replacing

it with a different method would be an example of this tactic.

2. **Mitigation:** Mitigation doesn't remove the risk entirely but reduces its impact or likelihood. For example, regular maintenance checks on machinery can reduce the risk of unexpected breakdowns. Training employees on cybersecurity best practices can mitigate the risk of data breaches.
3. **Transfer:** This tactic involves shifting the responsibility or burden of the risk to another party. Common examples include insurance policies or outsourcing certain operations. If a company is concerned about the risk of shipping delays, they might use multiple shipping providers to transfer some of that risk.
4. **Acceptance:** Sometimes, the best approach is to simply accept the risk, especially if the cost of managing it outweighs the potential impact. This is often the case for very low-probability risks or those with minimal potential impact. For instance, a business might accept the risk of a temporary power outage if they operate in an area with a stable power grid.

As we transition from elimination to acceptance, the cost of the risk tends to increase, but the cost of managing the risk decreases. This balance is crucial in determining the most appropriate tactic for each risk.

Referring back to the sorted list from Section 5.4.3, risks at the top, with high RPNs, are inherently more problematic and demand immediate attention. Given their potential impact, organizations should prioritize these risks and, where possible, aim for elimination or at least mitigation. Conversely, risks at the bottom of the list, with lower RPNs, might not warrant significant resources for management. In such cases, acceptance or transfer might be the more pragmatic approach. By aligning risk tactics with the RPN rankings, organizations can ensure a strategic and cost-effective approach to risk management.

9.4.5 Overall Example: Risk Management in Action

To illustrate the risk management process in a real-world context, let's consider the case of a hypothetical electronics manufacturing company, ElectroTech Inc.



Risk Identification: During a brainstorming session, ElectroTech’s team identified several potential risks. Some of these included:

- Supply chain disruptions due to geopolitical tensions.
- Machinery breakdown leading to production halts.
- Cyberattacks compromising proprietary designs.
- Regulatory changes affecting export procedures.

Measuring Risk: Using the RPN methodology, ElectroTech quantified each risk. The risk of machinery breakdown, for instance, had a high probability of occurrence but a moderate impact and was relatively easy to detect. This gave it an RPN value that placed it near the top of their list. On the other hand, regulatory changes had a lower probability but a high impact and were harder to detect, placing it further down the list.

Risk	Probability of Risk (1-10)	Degree of Impact (1-10)	Ease of Detection (1-10)	RPN (Calculated)
Machinery breakdown	8	7	9	504
Cyberattacks	7	8	6	336
Supply chain disruptions	6	8	5	240
Regulatory changes affecting exports	4	9	3	108

In this table, the risks are sorted based on their RPN values, with the highest RPN at the top. The machinery

breakdown risk, with an RPN of 504, is deemed the most critical, followed by cyberattacks, supply chain disruptions, and regulatory changes. This prioritization helps ElectroTech focus its resources and strategies on the most pressing risks first.

Risk Tactics: For the machinery breakdown risk, ElectroTech decided on mitigation. They implemented a rigorous maintenance schedule and invested in training for their technicians. For the cyberattack risk, they chose a combination of mitigation (enhanced cybersecurity measures) and transfer (cyber liability insurance). Given the lower RPN of the regulatory changes risk, they opted for acceptance but kept a close eye on international trade news to stay informed.

A few months later, ElectroTech faced a machinery malfunction. However, thanks to their proactive risk management, the issue was quickly detected and resolved with minimal production downtime. Their cybersecurity measures also successfully thwarted an attempted breach, and the insurance provided an added layer of financial protection.

ElectroTech's experience underscores the importance of a systematic approach to risk management. By identifying, measuring, and tactically addressing risks, the company not only safeguarded its operations but also gained a competitive edge in the market. Their proactive measures ensured business continuity, bolstered stakeholder confidence, and reinforced their reputation as a reliable electronics manufacturer.

9.5 CHAPTER 9 ASSESSMENT

Piyush Shah; Elias (Lee) Kirche; and Iana Shaheen

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section 9.1: Introduction

- **Question:** Why is proactive risk management crucial in global supply chains, and how can it provide a competitive advantage?

2. Section 9.2: The Concept of Risk

- **Question:** What are the three fundamental concepts associated with risk, and how do they influence risk management decisions?

3. Section 9.3: Balancing the Cost of Risk and the Cost of Managing Risk

- **Question:** Why is it important for businesses to balance the cost of risk with the cost of managing risk?

4. Section 9.4: Risk Management Process

- **Question:** What is the Risk Priority Number (RPN), and how does it help organizations prioritize risks?

5. Section 9.4.1: Various Risk Management Frameworks

- **Question:** How does the ISO 31000 framework guide organizations in managing risks?

Situational Questions:

Situation 1: Imagine you are a supply chain manager for a company that heavily relies on a single supplier for a critical component. Recently, geopolitical tensions have raised concerns about the stability of this supply chain. How would you apply the risk management process to address this potential risk, and which tactic (Elimination, Mitigation, Transfer, Acceptance) would you prioritize? Justify your decision based on the risk's RPN and your analysis.

Situation 2: Your company has identified the risk of cyberattacks as one of the top concerns in its risk management assessment. You are tasked with developing a strategy to manage this risk. Using the concepts from this chapter, propose a risk management plan that balances the cost of managing the risk with the potential impact of a cyberattack. Which risk tactic would you recommend, and why?

Chapter 9 Study Guide



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=283#h5p-14>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the complex journey of product and service delivery, a product must navigate through a myriad of resources before it reaches its final form. Consider a service example: a restaurant where dishes must pass through procurement of ingredients, preparation, cooking, and finally serving. In traditional business operations, there is a significant effort placed on planning and optimizing the capacity at every one of these resources. This involves meticulously calculating the maximum output each resource can deliver, ensuring that every part of the process is operating at peak efficiency to avoid delays and maximize productivity.

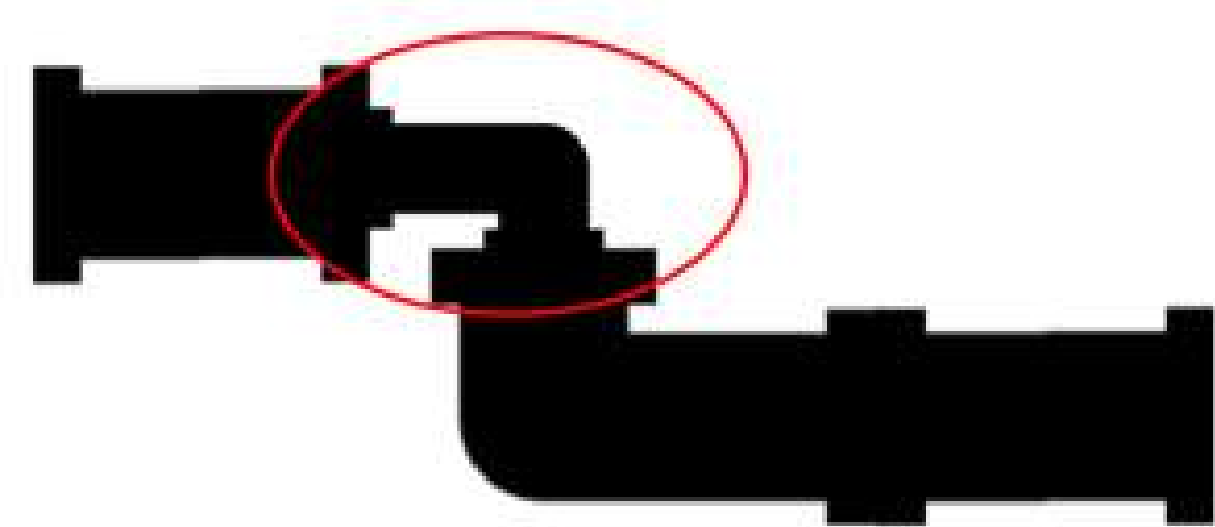


Figure 1: The bottleneck principle: The section of the pipe inside the oval will control the flow.

Theory of Constraints (TOC) presents a paradigm shift from traditional operational methodologies. TOC posits that the output of any system is fundamentally limited by its most constrained resource, or bottleneck. According to this theory, in any system, there are only a few elements that truly dictate its overall throughput. By identifying and focusing efforts on these critical bottlenecks, it becomes possible to control the entire system with greater efficiency and simplicity. Unlike the conventional approach that advocates for optimizing every resource, TOC concentrates on enhancing the performance of those few critical constraints.

In the context of our restaurant example, should a specific kitchen station emerge as the bottleneck by struggling to keep pace with demand, traditional strategies might aim to improve every stage of the service process. However, TOC would suggest a targeted approach, emphasizing optimization of this particular bottleneck. Instead of broad investments in speeding up table service or streamlining ingredient procurement,

the emphasis would be on increasing the efficiency of the constrained kitchen station. Through this focused strategy, TOC significantly reduces the complexity involved in operations management, prioritizing impactful interventions that boost overall system productivity.

Dr. Eliyahu Goldratt introduced the concept of the Theory of Constraints (TOC) in his seminal work, “The Goal: A Process of Ongoing Improvement”. At the heart of TOC is the principle that the primary objective of any business should be to enhance the flow of its operations, a concept Goldratt describes as ‘throughput’. The book delineates straightforward, yet profoundly effective tools for increasing throughput, providing a blueprint for operational excellence.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=420#oembed-1>

Goldratt begins with the proposition of five focusing steps to implement TOC effectively. These steps are designed to systematically identify and address the bottlenecks that constrain a system’s performance. Following this, he introduces the ‘**drum-buffer-rope**’ (DBR) concept, a sophisticated method to ensure that processes remain within control by synchronizing operations with the system’s constraints. Lastly, Goldratt presents specific metrics that businesses can utilize to guide their improvement efforts, ensuring that they focus on initiatives that genuinely enhance throughput. In this chapter, we delve into these three pivotal tools offered by Goldratt.

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

Syllabus

[Walton College Supply Chain Management Programs Top Ranked Again](#)¹

1. Perry, M., & Toms, J. (2024, June 27). *Walton College supply chain management programs top ranked again*. University of Arkansas News. <https://news.uark.edu/articles/70670/walton-college-supply-chain-management-programs-top-ranked-again>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In this section, we explore the **Five Focusing Steps**, a cornerstone methodology of the Theory of Constraints (TOC) designed to systematically improve organizational performance. The essence of this methodology lies in identifying and addressing the most significant limiting factor (referred to as a “constraint”) that stands in the way of achieving a goal. By concentrating efforts on this constraint, businesses can significantly enhance their overall throughput and operational efficiency. The steps are a pragmatic guide to navigating complex systems and making impactful changes where they matter most.

1. Identify the Constraint: The starting point in this methodology is to pinpoint the constraint within the process. A constraint is essentially any resource whose capacity is equal to or less than the demand placed upon it. The output capacity of the entire system is, therefore, dictated by this bottleneck. An example can be found in the analogy of a series of pipes with varying diameters; the flow through this system is limited by the pipe with the smallest diameter. Often, a higher Work in Process (WIP) inventory preceding a resource signals its role as a constraint, indicating that the input flow exceeds its processing capacity. Constraints are not always physical; they can also manifest as policies or practices that hinder the system’s ability to meet demand, such as a policy requiring full truckloads for shipping, which might lead to inefficiencies or lost sales.
2. Exploit the Constraint: After identifying the constraint, the next step is to maximize its utilization. This involves ensuring a consistent supply of work to the constraint to prevent any downtime and optimizing its operation to reduce inefficiencies, such as minimizing setup times and avoiding disruptions. It’s critical that the constraint only processes work that contributes directly to meeting demand, avoiding waste on low-quality or unnecessary production.
3. Subordinate Everything to the Constraint: Once the constraint operates at its maximum capacity, the entire system’s rhythm must adjust to match this pace. This implies slowing down or adjusting other parts of the process to ensure they are in sync with the constraint, preventing the accumulation of excess WIP at other points in the system. This approach challenges the conventional wisdom that seeks to maximize the utilization of all resources, highlighting that only the constraint’s full exploitation directly contributes to increased throughput.
4. Elevate the Constraint: If the constraint’s capacity still limits the system despite optimization efforts, the next move is to increase its capacity. This could involve investing in additional resources, implementing process improvements, or finding alternative ways to accomplish necessary tasks. For example, in a healthcare setting where doctors are the constraint, solutions might include hiring more staff or employing technology to streamline patient interactions, thereby elevating the constraint’s capacity.
5. Do Not Let Inertia Creep In: The dynamic nature of operations means that once a constraint is

resolved, another will inevitably emerge. Therefore, it is essential to continually monitor the system, ready to return to the first step to identify and address new constraints. This cyclical process ensures ongoing improvement and adaptation, fostering a culture of continuous optimization and agility within the organization.

Five Focusing steps



By adhering to these Five Focusing Steps, businesses can navigate the complexities of their operations with clarity and precision, systematically enhancing their capability to meet goals and respond to changing demands.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain the following concepts or terms:

- Key definitions: supply chain, supply chain management, supply, demand
- Overview of the SCOR model (and relate to our curriculum/class titles)
- Global and local nature of SCM
- Why SCM is important for businesses

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[What is Supply Chain Management?](#)¹

[What is Supply Chain Management?](#)²

-
1. Supply Chain Secrets. (2019, January 30). *What is supply chain management?- With examples* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/eUsUzLOvrvo?si=R7kuewrSYY9y4MbO>
 2. BYU Supply Chain. (2014, January 5). *What is supply chain management?* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/AwemFfdD6VI?si=jB7J-apoMBJK2VPw>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Transitioning from the Five Focusing Steps, we now address the method for managing and controlling the flow within a system: the **drum-buffer-rope method**, devised by Goldratt. This method is particularly useful in environments where numerous tasks or components must be processed, such as in an insurance company dealing with a multitude of quotes and policies, or a manufacturing facility where raw materials are transformed into finished products. Here, the goal is to balance the flow by ensuring all resources are synchronized with the pace of the bottleneck.

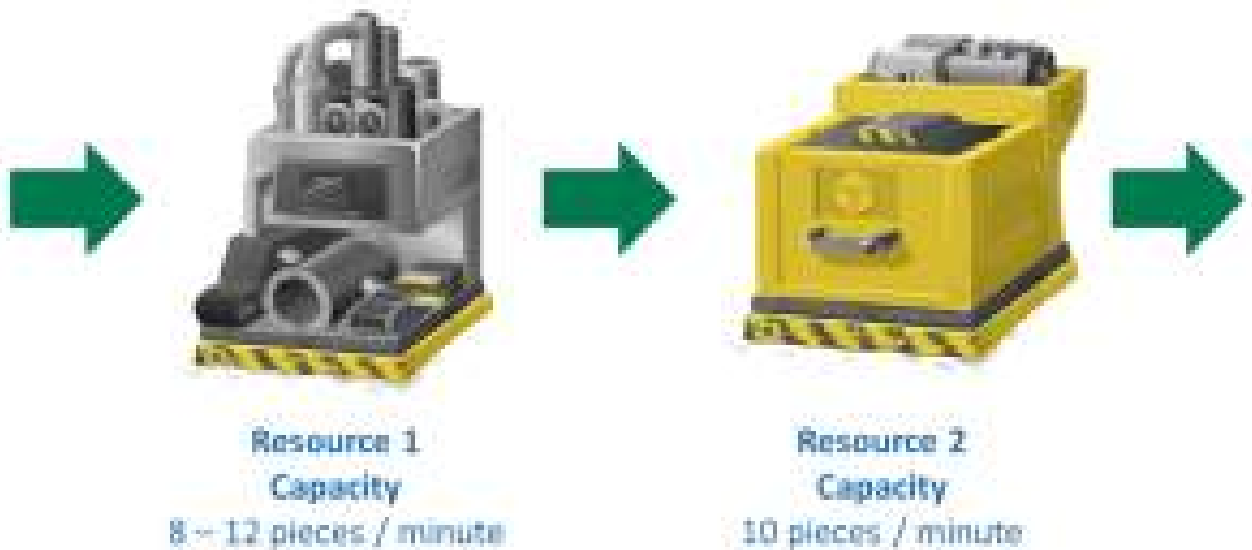
Drum, buffer, rope approach



The drum represents the rhythm dictated by the bottleneck's capacity, which, in turn, sets the pace for the entire process. The buffer is strategically placed inventory ahead of the bottleneck, ensuring it is never starved for work. This is critical because any idle time at the bottleneck equates to lost time across the entire process. The rope is the communication link that connects the bottleneck to upstream resources, controlling their output to match the rate of the bottleneck, thus maintaining a stable level of buffer inventory.

This method incorporates the concepts of statistical fluctuations and dependent events. Statistical fluctuations acknowledge that there is inherent variability in the time each resource takes to complete a task. For instance, an executive performing a 3-way match to pay suppliers might take 20 minutes for a straightforward case, but

several hours if discrepancies arise. When resources are sequentially dependent, these variations can lead to excess WIP or idle time.



Consider the two resources illustrated in the accompanying diagram. Resource 1 has a variable capacity, fluctuating between 8 to 12 pieces per minute, whereas Resource 2 consistently processes exactly 10 pieces per minute. At the commencement of operations, should Resource 1 produce merely 8 pieces, Resource 2 will be underutilized, awaiting the shortfall. In the following cycle, if Resource 1 outputs 12 pieces, Resource 2, constrained by its capacity, will process only 10, thus incrementing the Work in Process (WIP) upstream. This example typifies how statistical fluctuations can cause excessive WIP or idle time, underscoring the crucial need for a mechanism to balance the flow in response to variability, as previously discussed.

Even in this simplified scenario with two resources of equal average capacity—a theoretically balanced facility—we witness idle time and WIP accumulation due to statistical fluctuations and dependent events. These can give rise to ‘floating bottlenecks,’ where different resources become the constraint at various times because of random fluctuations. TOC advises against attempting to balance the capacity of each resource. Instead, it advocates for balancing the flow of the entire facility by aligning it with the pace set by the bottleneck. The drum-buffer-rope method is designed precisely to achieve this balance, synchronizing the facility’s flow with the throughput of the bottleneck.

Dr. Kiranjot Kaur and Iuliia Kau

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain the following concepts or terms:

1. Analyze the role of distribution logistics in value chain.
2. Explain the terms Inbound and Outbound Logistics and their components.
3. Outline the steps in the logistics cycle.
4. Assess the role of logistics service providers in this cycle.

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[What is Logistics Management? Meaning, Importance, Basic Functions & Strategies- AIM UK](#)¹

[Logistics– our local food blinds spot: Michael Rozyne at TEDxManhattan](#)²

-
1. AIMS Education, UK. (2016, July 16). *What is logistics management? Meaning, importance, basic functions & strategies- AIMS UK* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/4-QU7WiVxh8?si=54ad7qi7C0PDXyAQ>
 2. TEDx Talks. (2014, March 20). *Logistics– our local food blind spot: Michael Rozyne at TEDxManhattan* [Video]. YouTube. https://youtu.be/BDO_UiEh0eY?si=JJvEJgEsdW8BXRLf



Introduction

Managing distribution is one of the integral parts of global value chain. Be it the distribution of raw material or finished goods, organizations try to effectively perform these activities as the former ensures company's success in the market. Distribution further can be categorized as Inbound Logistics and Outbound Logistics. Inbound Logistics work closely to suppliers whereas Outbound Logistics work close to consumers. These together form a logistic cycle that connects suppliers to customers. With this in mind, let's try to look deeper into the concept of distribution logistics and understanding how different components of inbound and outbound logistics work. Also, we will try to build the logistic cycle and analyze the role of logistic service providers in it.

Assessing What You Already Know

As you answer the following questions, reflect upon what you already know about how company's work.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=60#h5p-3>

Interactive activity unavailable in this format

[Text-based alternative](#) to interactive activity available in Chapter 2.6.

Overall Activity Feedback While answering the above questions, you got a chance to analyze what a company receives and sells to their consumers. The products a company receives are a part of 'Inbound Logistics' and the goods that a company sells directly to consumers or retail stores is a part of 'Outbound Logistics'. The process of managing Inbound and Outbound Logistics together is called 'Distribution Logistics'.

Media Attributions and References

EpicTop10.com. (2021, August 21). *Distribution chain* [Graphic]. Flickr. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/182229932@N07/48592750752>. CC BY 2.0.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

While the five focusing steps and the drum-buffer-rope approach equip businesses with strategies to improve, maintain, and control process flow, **throughput accounting** offers a means to evaluate the effectiveness of these improvements. For organizations contemplating various enhancements, throughput accounting yields metrics that assist in prioritizing such projects, acting as an alternative to traditional cost accounting practices. Its focus rests on sales and the costs that are genuinely variable with production levels.

To illustrate, take the case of an employee earning a wage of \$15 per hour. This wage is fixed irrespective of the number of units produced, and hence, in throughput accounting, would not be considered a variable cost. The three fundamental metrics defined by TOC are:

- **Throughput (T):** This metric represents the rate at which the system generates ‘goal units’, or in financial terms, the rate at which money is entering the system. Calculated as sales (S) minus total variable costs (TVC), throughput only occurs upon the sale of the process output. TVC could include the cost of raw materials and sales commissions, among others.
- **Investment (I):** Investment encompasses all the money tied up within the system, including both assets and inventories.
- **Operating Expense (OE):** This is the expenditure the system incurs to create goal units, covering costs such as payroll, maintenance, depreciation, utilities, and taxes, but not the cost of raw materials, as these are part of TVC.

The overarching aim for any business should be to maximize T while minimizing I and OE. TOC thus offers universal metrics for decision-making, encapsulated in the formulas for Net Profit ($NP = T - OE$) and Return on Investment ($ROI = (T - OE)/I$), aiding businesses in assessing the value of potential investments and improvements.

Consider a company debating whether to invest in automated robotic systems for non-bottleneck operations. These robots, despite modernizing the production line, would not elevate T, which is constrained by the system’s bottleneck. With an increased I due to the capital invested in robots and an escalated OE over time from higher depreciation costs, the NP and ROI would likely decrease. According to TOC, such an investment should be avoided.

Contrastingly, traditional cost accounting is preoccupied with local costs and efficiencies, which might lead to the high utilization of robots to defray their cost across more units, ostensibly reducing the cost per unit produced. This cost-centric mindset encourages full utilization of all resources. However, throughput

accounting challenges this view, holding that the primary business goal is to generate money both now and in the future. It contends that production increases at non-bottlenecks merely inflate WIP without raising final throughput. Consequently, TOC maintains that a non-bottleneck should be considered 'utilized' only when aiding the bottleneck in generating throughput. If robots produce items that the bottleneck does not immediately require, they may be active but not effectively utilized, according to throughput accounting principles.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain the following concepts:

- Basics of demand management & importance to organization success
- Basics of forecasting, challenges with forecasting accuracy
- Overview of different forecasting techniques (compare and contrast)
- Basic principles and steps of S&OP process
- Identify different types of inventory and different inventory management approaches
- Overview EOQ as an approach to inventory decision making

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[What's behind the empty grocery shelves](#)¹

1. Taylor, D., Pritchard, A., Duhan, D., & Mishra, S. (2020, August 10). *What's behind the empty grocery shelves*. Supply Chain Management Review. https://www.scmr.com/article/whats_behind_the_empty_grocery_shelves

Angela Reid-Regier and Bryan Snage

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Define procurement and its purpose
- Key procurement objectives
- Explain procurement roles and activities
- Analyze the key procurement procedures and processes
- Evaluate the key steps carried out in managing the procurement process

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[The Art of Negotiation | Maria Ploumaki](#)¹

1. TEDx Talks. (2015, April 20). *The art of negotiation* | Maria Ploumaki | TEDxYouth@Zurich [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/pjIPgJ1wBdM?si=qGRPfsmUW3T8Dric>



What do you know about the procurement process?



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=55#h5p-1>

Procurement in the Supply Chain World

The purpose of this book is to equip the learner with knowledge about the key aspects of procurement and supply management. The chapters are intended to provide an overview and definitions of supply management and procurement. Additionally, key policies, procedures, processes, and requirements for effective and efficient implementation are presented. The effective implementation of procurement activities is a critical function in the overall supply chain process. This chapter further describes the identification of requirements, identification, and qualification of suppliers, supplier bidding and negotiation, approval for purchases, and supplier performance monitoring and performance measurement.

Purchasing and Procurement

The terms procurement and purchasing are often used interchangeably; however, they have important similarities and differences between them. This certification track employs the following definitions for each term:

- **Procurement:** Procurement is the management of all processes involved in obtaining the goods and services necessary for manufacturing products and providing services to customers. Procurement focuses on sourcing activities, negotiation with suppliers, and the strategic selection of goods and services that enable an organization to maximize value from a select group of key supplier partners.
- **Purchasing:** Purchasing is a function within the procurement process that is largely transactional and associated with how goods and services are ordered. Purchasing involves receiving and processing purchase requisitions (requirements) and converting them to purchase orders (POs) (awards to suppliers).

A Procurement Example

Procurement professionals interact with a wide array of internal and external organizations; they work with suppliers, other functions in the supply chain, and other functions within the company, such as marketing and engineering. An example of a cereal manufacturing and supply chain process and the key role procurement plays to purchase grain and other raw materials, along with packaging and labelling products needed to make breakfast cereal, the finished product in this example.

In addition, to the raw materials, the company also purchases paperboard from a paper manufacturer and labels from a label manufacturer. In turn, the paper manufacturer purchases trees to make the paper, and the label manufacturer purchases semi-finished stock to make the labels. After making the cereal and packaging it, the cereal manufacturer sends the cereal to the distributor, which then ships the product to the grocery store at which the end customers purchase their cereal. Throughout this sample supply chain, the purchasing of goods and services takes place between various entities.

The example shows how materials and products move from one entity to another while information (e.g., specification, quantities, and desired receiving date) also flows between the various entities. This information flow is important because it is needed to ensure the right products are delivered at the right place, at the right time, and at the right price.

The Importance of Procurement

The procurement function plays a critical role in supporting the ongoing functioning of a firm by ensuring a continuous flow of materials, products, and services to support the firm's operations while continually seeking opportunities to reduce costs, minimize supply risk, and maintain expected quality levels. The importance of the procurement department can be seen by the key inputs it provides firms, including:

- The raw materials and intermediate goods and services needed in the production of goods and services.
- Finished goods and services required for resale or for operational purposes.
- Capital goods and consumables are needed for the business.

These inputs are critical to a business. The procurement department plays a key role in obtaining these inputs

at appropriate levels of cost, quality, and on-time delivery to ensure the continuity of inputs from suppliers. As noted previously, the procurement function plays a vital role in the supply chain; the following list describes several major benefits of effectively managing procurement.

- **Cost reduction:** Procurement represents an excellent opportunity for saving money because organizations can spend up to 50% or more of their revenues on raw materials, work in process, finished goods, spare parts, services, and other goods needed to keep operations going. Significant savings can be achieved by applying effective procurement techniques.
- **Quality improvement:** Procurement directly impacts the quality of the overall products sold by companies, because it is responsible for purchasing raw materials and other unfinished or finished goods. The quality of raw and other materials used in producing goods almost always affects the quality of the end products.
- **Product enhancement:** Procurement can also improve products and process designs by helping introduce new technologies into companies' product and service offerings. For example, procurement can work with internal and external engineering personnel and suppliers to improve product reliability and performance while also reducing costs.

The 5 Procurement Functions

The main objective of the procurement function is purchasing materials and services at the lowest total cost possible while ensuring the required quality levels and meeting the needs of internal and external customers. Much of this effort entails identifying and negotiating with suppliers to reduce the costs of purchased products and services; however, procurement departments must also consider other items that add to the total cost of procurement, including transportation costs, payment terms, return policies, and warranties.

The five key objectives for a procurement department are: supporting operational requirements, working with other functional groups, partnering with suppliers, supporting organizational goals and objectives, and developing sourcing strategies.

1) Supporting Operational Requirements

Procurement supports the day-to-day operational requirements of a firm by acquiring raw materials, components, subassemblies, finished goods, maintenance, repair items, and services. Procurement aids supply chain elements like transportation and distribution centres (DCs) by ensuring that the end customers receive the replacement parts or finished products they need. Additionally, procurement supports the departments involved in developing new plants or products, installing and commissioning new machinery, and providing

replacement parts by ensuring that parts, replacement parts, and machinery are available as needed in the required quantities, at the required quality, and at an appropriate cost.

2) Working with Other Functional Groups

Procurement plays a vital role in ensuring continuity of supply, reducing costs, sourcing from qualified suppliers, and ensuring that the quality of goods and services is maintained. However, procurement cannot accomplish these tasks without a close working relationship with several other functions within a firm, including top management, operations, engineering, marketing, quality assurance, and finance. Procurement works with top management to ensure that the procurement strategy is aligned with the overall organizational strategy and objectives. Procurement has a working relationship with the following functions within a firm shown in the list below.

- Operations
 - Make vs Buy
 - Insight into Capacity, Materials, Service Needs
 - Requirements in Quality, Cost, Cycle Times
- Engineering
 - Insight into Specifications and Requirements
 - Support in Value Analysis Exercises
 - Insight into Evolving Technologies
- Sales & Marketing
 - Insight into New Product Development
 - Support in Total Cost Analysis
 - Sales Forecasting
- Quality Assurance
 - Suppliers perform as expected
 - Quality training
 - Corrective action planning
 - Supplier quality planning
- Finance
 - Material re-work costs
 - The total cost of an item
 - Making or buying products
 - Capital acquisition decisions

3) Partnering with Suppliers

Partnerships and effective supplier management have become increasingly important to improve firms' Supply Chain Management (SCM) competitiveness. For instance, forming partnerships, or strategic alliances, with suppliers allows them to focus on providing quality products and services. This comes about while working closely with key suppliers to develop long-term partnerships based on trust. Additionally, close buyer-supplier relationships offer numerous technical, financial, and strategic advantages, such as opportunities to work together to re-engineer products to lower costs while maintaining functionality. Many companies have adopted a strategy of using a smaller number of suppliers for key products and services rather than working with many suppliers. This strategy is adopted to allow companies to focus their efforts on improving performance and reducing costs with fewer, better suppliers.

Typically, a partnership with suppliers is required to ensure an adequate supply of quality materials overtime at an optimal total acquired cost. A strategic alliance is defined as a purposive relationship between two or more independent firms that involves exchanging, sharing, or co-developing resources and capabilities to achieve mutually relevant benefits (Kale & Singh, 2009). However, once formed, these strategic alliances must be developed through effective relationship management. For example, a company may provide warehouse layout and design services to multiple companies and may work together with a firm that provides the actual storage and handling equipment that support new warehouse designs.

Global competition has grown, and companies have developed supply chains that rely heavily on external suppliers. One well-known example is Apple, which outsources product and component manufacturing. This emphasis on concentrating on core competencies has seen a dramatic rise in outsourcing to, and reliance on, external suppliers to provide not only materials and products but also services (e.g., IT support and design services). As more emphasis is placed on the use of external suppliers, including global suppliers, procurement departments' roles must also involve close support and management of these suppliers. The procurement function has a vital responsibility to meet the needs of both internal and external customers by choosing products and services with specific criteria. Products and services must come from the best sources of supply and be made to the correct specifications, have the desired levels of quality at a reasonable cost, and be made and delivered in the correct quantities. Products and services must be delivered at the right time and to the satisfaction of internal and external customers.

4) Supporting Organizational Goals and Objectives

In order for a company to grow and remain profitable, procurement can help increase revenues and reduce costs and expenses. Using effective procurement strategies, organizations can position themselves to be competitive on both the quality and pricing of their products and services. By helping to reduce the costs of materials and services, procurement thus improves corporate profit margins and return on assets. Additionally, procurement plays an essential role in ensuring the quality of the goods and services needed by an organization. Organizational goals and objectives can be described under four main categories: survival,

growth, finances, and environment. However, procurement goals and objectives are typically expressed using other terms like quality and function, delivery, quantity, price, terms and conditions, and services. A critical first step in developing organizations' strategies is to develop strategic goals, in which procurement plays a major role. The next step is to translate these goals into specific procurement objectives. According to Monczka, Trent, and Handfield (2005), procurement functions must ultimately support the strategic goals and objectives of the entire organization, including ensuring overall profitability and adequate return on investment for organizations' shareholders.

5) Developing Sourcing Strategies

Many firms face the challenge of remaining competitive in the face of highly competitive world markets. A firm's ability to effectively develop and execute strategic plans is a major factor in generating future earnings and can even be critical to the firm's survival. Organizations must take in more than what they spend on operating costs over the long term if they want to grow and remain profitable. Increasing revenues, decreasing costs, or a mixture of both can accomplish this key goal. Procurement plays an important role in helping accomplish both objectives.

Through effective procurement strategies, organizations can be competitive in the quality and prices of their products and services. For example, reducing the costs of materials and services is an area in which procurement plays a vital role and thus helps to improve corporate profit margins. In many cases, procured goods and services provide a major area of opportunity for reducing costs and improving return on assets. Procurement departments must develop sourcing strategies to support the overall organizational strategy; they aim to ensure the survival and competitiveness of the whole organization. A sourcing strategy is the expression of the goals and objectives for selecting the best sources of supply and optimizing the procurement spend for an organization, which are tied to the overall corporate strategy. For example, a commodity sourcing strategy might develop a specific approach for a category or group of raw materials that maximize quality and minimize cost.

Procurement Roles and Activities

The procurement function seeks to obtain the highest quality of goods and services at the lowest possible costs at the right time and place. To achieve this goal, various roles and activities are performed at different levels of management within the procurement function. Procurement provides an ongoing analysis of price and cost trends. The cost of purchased goods often represents the most significant component of companies' costs, so procurement functions must analyze the cost of sourcing products and services to ensure they are obtained at the lowest possible cost. Procurement roles and activities consist of the following functions:

- Procurement assists internal departments in defining and documenting material specifications to

communicate to suppliers.

- Procurement estimates the future supply needs of organizations, which are then communicated to suppliers.
- Procurement ensures that sourced goods and services meet minimum quality standards in order to meet buyers' expectations at an acceptable cost.
- Procurement regularly reports on material lead times and supplier performance.
- Procurement draws up contracts and negotiates mutually acceptable terms with suppliers. Procurement conducts market research to identify new suppliers to meet customers' needs. Procurement expedites and authorized premiums for the delivery of shipments, where necessary, to ensure that production needs are met and deliver appropriate customer order fulfillment.
- Procurement finds and develops best-in-class suppliers. The success of procurement depends on its ability to align supply-based decisions with organizations' strategic priorities and to identify or develop suppliers, analyze their capabilities, select the most appropriate options, and work with those suppliers to deliver continuous improvement.
- Procurement ensures the uninterrupted flow of materials, supplies, and services required to operate organizations. This prevents stock-outs or late deliveries of materials, components, and services (which can be extremely costly in terms of lost production), reduced revenue or profit, and a decline in customer goodwill.

Types of Buying Organizations

Organizations procure goods and services for different purposes. According to Fill and Fill (2005), here are the primary forms of organization that procure goods and services:

- **Commercial organizations:** Commercial organizations consist of industrial distributors, original equipment manufacturers (OEMs), users, and retailers. They procure goods as raw materials, components, and finished products for resale. Additionally, the miscellaneous materials and services needed to support running an organization need to be procured. Support items may range from office supplies and real estate to lawn services and health insurance policies.
- **Governments:** Governments are the biggest procurement customers. They often use procurement to meet small business (e.g., women-owned, veteran-owned, Native American-owned, etc.) objectives, spending many billions annually as a result. Governments' procurement budget is spent on a wide range of activities, from public hospitals and schools to the organization of the departments themselves.
- **Institutions:** These include private universities, hospitals, and schools. Institutions buy, for example, textbooks, classroom furniture, medical equipment, audiovisual equipment, and computers.
- **Public organizations:** Public organizations include railways and nuclear power plants that make

purchases for operational and production purposes.

Types of Products and Services Purchased

Procurement personnel are responsible for purchasing many different products and services, depending on the nature of their industry and the nature of their organization. These are examples of different goods and services procurement is responsible for procuring:

- **Raw materials:** These include products that have not been processed or have undergone only a small degree of processing. They are the basic materials in the production process and become part of final manufactured products. Examples include mined minerals, coal, and cotton.
- **Semi-finished goods:** They are also known as manufactured products because they have been partially assembled; however, they need further assembly and processing before they can be sold. These products are visible in final products and include elements such as steel and rolled wire.
- **Capital equipment:** Capital items are usually the most expensive purchases; they include large pieces of equipment used in production processes, such as power generating equipment and buildings.
- **Original Equipment Manufacture (OEMs') component parts:** OEMs are products that are purchased for resale or assembled into final products with no further processing. An example of an OEM is the alternator in a motor engine.
- **Maintenance, repair, operating materials:** Maintenance, repair, and operating materials (MROs) are not directly required for the production process but are important for the continued operation of organizations, such as office and cleaning supplies and other consumables.
- **Finished goods:** Finished goods require no further processing. They are bought for resale or for use within organizations, such as stock bought for resale by retail organizations.
- **Accessory equipment:** Accessory equipment includes products used to facilitate production, such as personal computers, hand tools, desktop printers, and toolboxes.
- **Services:** According to Dwyer and Tanner (2009), services include transportation, advertising, banking, and labour services.
- **Major subcontracted items:** These include high-cost items used in finished products, such as automobile engines and aircraft engines.

Procurement Process Overview

The procurement process contains steps ranging from working to understanding firms' needs through ongoing evaluations of supplier performances. These steps are:

1. **Identifying the Need:** A need or requirement may arise from any function but is most often developed through the demand planning process. A need may be raw materials for production purposes or office

furniture for administrative departments. User functions sometimes fail to identify needs promptly, which can result in urgent requirements and create challenges for procurement personnel; these challenges can include the need to expedite the supply of goods and the additional costs associated with paying a premium to expedite orders.

2. **Describing the Product or Service Needed:** Requirements are communicated to the procurement function along with the appropriate documents, such as a purchasing requisition. The information contained in the requisition includes the date, originating department, account to be charged, complete descriptions and quantities of materials or services required, date when materials or services are needed, special instructions for shipping or service delivery, and the name of the authorized person initiating the request. As part of the procurement process, procurement professionals work with the person initiating the request to confirm that material and service specifications have been captured correctly. In many cases, engineering drawings and other documents accompany the requisition to describe complex and non-standard items accurately.
3. **Searching for Potential Suppliers:** When appropriate suppliers are not available from a pre-approved list, procurement personnel assume the responsibility for finding other potential suppliers. This search can take place using catalogues, websites, professional organizations, and personal contacts.
4. **Evaluating and Selecting Suppliers:** The critical task of evaluating potential suppliers is accomplished by a multi-function team that conducts a site visit to evaluate a wide range of capabilities, including management, manufacturing planning, process control, quality, and overall workload assessments. While procurement takes the lead, other functions support the evaluation process to ensure a supplier can actually meet the anticipated requirements with smaller standard-item and procurement and catalogue items bought through a published price list, the procurement professional may be able to perform an effective evaluation without assistance.
5. **Request for Price and Request for Quote Processes:** This stage occurs when purchase requisitions are received by purchasing personnel and they initiate a request for price or request for quote (RFQ). Requests for price are initiated and sent to suppliers to obtain pricing for simple, lower-cost items while RFQs involve more complex and expensive items and are sent to suppliers to solicit specifications, pricing, delivery, and other requested information.
6. **Order Placement:** After the request for price and RFQ responses are received, purchasing can place a PO. However, the purchasing buyer and supplier may have completed a negotiating process that included a final agreement on price, delivery arrangements, product requirements, and quality requirements before the buyer actually issues a PO.
7. **Evaluating Performance:** After a supplier has been awarded a PO, it is continually evaluated to determine if its products satisfy the order details stipulated in the PO. Suppliers that provide acceptable products may receive additional orders in the future, but poor supplier performance may lead to removal from the approval database and a lack of future POs. Some procurement departments use supplier scorecards to evaluate supplier performances on quality, delivery timeliness, cost containment,

and responsiveness.

Key Takeaways

Procurement is the management of all processes involved in obtaining the goods and services necessary for manufacturing products and providing customer services. Procurement focuses on sourcing activities, negotiations with suppliers, and the strategic selection of goods and services that enable an organization to achieve the best value from a select group of key supplier partners. Procurement functions must have close working relationships with other functions, including production, engineering, and sales and marketing functions because those areas use the products and services that procurement obtains. Organizations of different types are involved in procuring goods and services for different purposes, including commercial and public organizations, governments, and institutions. Stages in the procurement process include receiving requirements for purchase, describing the materials needed, defining and approving suppliers, soliciting suppliers using requests for price and RFQs, placing POs, and evaluating supplier performance.

Review Questions



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=55#h5p-2>

References

- Dwyer, F. R., & Tanner, F. T. (2009). *Business marketing: Connecting strategy, relationships, and learning* (4th ed.). New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- Fill, C., & Fill, K. E. (2005). *Business-to-business marketing: Relationships, systems and communications*. Harlow, UK: Pearson Education Limited.
- Fottrell, Q., & Scheck, J. (2009, January 8). Dell moving Irish operations to Poland. *The Wall Street Journal*. <http://www.wsj.com/articles/SB123141025524864021>
- Kale, P., & Singh, H. (2009). *Managing strategic alliances: What do we know now, and where do we go from here?* Academy of Management Perspectives.
- Monczka, D., Trent, R., & Handfield, R. (2005). *Purchasing and supply chain management* (3rd ed.). New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- ProPhotoStock. (2014, January 5). *World technology and business* [Image]. Deviantart.

<https://www.deviantart.com/prophotostock/art/World-Technology-and-Business-424996906>. Licensed for reuse under [CC BY 3.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/).

Creative Commons Attribution

This chapter contains material adapted from *Supply Management and Procurement Certification Track*. LINCS in Supply Chain Management Consortium. March 2017. Version: v2.26.
www.LINCSeEducation.org.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Conceptual Questions:

Section 11.1: Introduction

- **Question:** According to the Theory of Constraints (TOC), what fundamentally limits the output of any system?

Section 11.2: The Five Focusing Steps

- **Question:** What is the first step in the Five Focusing Steps of the Theory of Constraints, and what does it involve?
- **Question:** What does the second step, “Exploit the Constraint,” specifically aim to achieve?
- **Question:** What is the purpose of the third step, “Subordinate Everything to the Constraint”?
- **Question:** What actions are taken during the “Elevate the Constraint” step?
- **Question:** What is the significance of the final step, “Do Not Let Inertia Creep In,” in the Theory of Constraints?

Section 11.3: The Drum-Buffer-Rope Method

- **Question:** In the Drum-Buffer-Rope method, what does the “drum” represent?
- **Question:** What role does the “buffer” play in the Drum-Buffer-Rope method?
- **Question:** How does the “rope” function within the Drum-Buffer-Rope method?

Section 11.4: Throughput Accounting

- **Question:** What is “Throughput” (T) in the context of throughput accounting?
- **Question:** How is “Operating Expense” (OE) defined in throughput accounting?

Situational Questions:

Situation 1: You manage a factory where the painting department has been identified as a bottleneck. Using the Five Focusing Steps, explain how you would approach improving the throughput of the entire factory.

Situation 2: In a call center, you notice that the call-handling team frequently has idle time due to inconsistent call volumes, while the team responsible for complex customer issues is overwhelmed. Describe how the Drum-Buffer-Rope method could be applied to balance the workload between these teams.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Describe the concept of a transformation process and its application to goods and services.
- Outline and compare the types of production strategies and planning approaches
- Identify and differentiate between the primary assembly processes and production methods used for goods creation
- Outline and compare the various production process layouts
- Importance to industrial packaging as the handoff between manufacturing and logistics
- Cover the concept of process improvement and its benefits

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[Module 3: Make It: Manufacturing and Operations- ASU's W.P. Carey School](#)¹

[Starbucks Coffee Growing, Processing and Roasting](#)²

1. W.P. Carey School of Business. (2010, April 15.) *Module 3: Make it: Manufacturing and operations- ASU's W.P. Carey School* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/ncli94xodm8?si=d1AzmjkbjgCbsshd>

2. sbxfs2010. (2011, January 31). *Starbucks coffee growing, processing and roasting* [Video]. YouTube. https://youtu.be/bNcx_E1x3D0?si=IP6hlUoPE3pwwMGH

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Until the 1990s, business executives predominantly viewed sourcing or purchasing as a straightforward, transactional task, primarily focused on the procurement of materials at the lowest possible cost. This period was marked by a narrow perspective of the sourcing function, where its role was largely confined to cost minimization. Sourcing executives were often stereotyped as tough negotiators, whose principal skill lay in extracting significant discounts from suppliers. Under this framework, the sourcing function was relegated to a marginal role within businesses, with little recognition of its potential strategic contribution. The emphasis was squarely on the efficient execution of purchases, with the broader implications of sourcing decisions on the company's strategic positioning largely overlooked. This approach mirrored the prevailing business attitudes of the time, where cost efficiency was often the paramount, if not the only, consideration in procurement decisions.



However, this view has evolved appreciably. Modern businesses recognize the need for the purchasing function to transcend short-term cost reductions. The contemporary approach to purchasing encompasses driving long-term, sustainable material availability and forming supply-side partnerships. Material innovation has become an integral part of the purchasing function's objectives. Several factors have contributed to this shift:

- **Increased Expenditure on Purchasing:** Manufacturing firms allocate between 40% to 80% of their total cost of goods sold to purchasing components and services, a trend that is also rising in service companies. This indicates that the purchasing function now handles a larger portion of costs,

significantly influencing business profitability.

- In the automotive industry, for instance, companies like General Motors and Toyota allocate a significant portion of their total cost of goods sold to purchasing. This includes not just raw materials like steel and rubber but also advanced electronic components and software services. This trend is mirrored in the IT services sector, where companies such as IBM and Accenture increasingly spend on purchasing software licenses, cloud services, and specialized consulting services. These expenditures significantly impact the overall profitability of these businesses, highlighting the strategic importance of the purchasing function.
- **Innovation and Market Opportunities:** The ability of purchasing to aid in product innovation by choosing appropriate suppliers and nurturing the right relationships has become a key driver for demand and revenue generation.
 - A prime example can be seen in the electronics industry. Companies like Apple and Samsung leverage their purchasing function to drive product innovation. By strategically sourcing novel materials and components, such as advanced microchips or new display technologies, from a network of global suppliers, they can introduce groundbreaking features in their products. This not only aids in setting their products apart in a competitive market but also plays a crucial role in defining new market trends and customer demands.
- **Changing Supplier Dynamics:** The growing size and influence of suppliers have rendered the traditional approach of exerting pressure for lower prices less effective.
 - The pharmaceutical industry provides a clear illustration of this shift. Pharmaceutical giants, previously dominant in their supplier relationships, now face a scenario where suppliers of active pharmaceutical ingredients (APIs) have grown in size and bargaining power. This change is particularly noticeable with suppliers from regions like India and China, where a concentration of API manufacturers has led to these suppliers having greater influence in price and supply negotiations. The traditional tactic of pressuring these suppliers for lower costs is increasingly less viable, necessitating a more collaborative and strategic approach in supplier relationships.

These developments suggest the necessity for a strategic redesign of the purchasing function. Strategic sourcing is about aligning sourcing decisions with long-term business objectives. This approach has elevated the role of the Chief Purchasing Officer (CPO) to a top management position, often involving participation in board-level meetings and a deep understanding of business strategy. This strategic alignment allows the CPO to craft purchasing strategies that not only consider cost reduction but also contribute to innovation, lead time reduction, and marketing strategies based on supply constraints.

This expanded role of sourcing necessitates a departure from the conventional negotiator role to a more holistic facilitator of business objectives. In this chapter, we delve into this evolved role of sourcing, discussing key aspects like:

- **What to Buy:** Decisions regarding in-house execution versus outsourcing. For instance, one bank might choose to employ its own sales executives, while another might opt for contractual sales executives from a human resource supplier.
- **How to Buy:** Formulating distinct material categories and developing tailored buying policies for these categories. This could mean intense negotiation for some products and leveraging supplier relationships for others.
- **Who to Buy From:** Determining the ideal supplier profile and the optimal number of suppliers to engage with. For instance, it might be ideal to buy some goods from a small supplier while others from a large supplier.

1.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The late 20th century marked a significant shift in global supply chain management, with a pronounced trend towards offshoring in Asia, particularly in China. This strategic realignment was driven by cost-focused approaches, leading many manufacturers from the United States and the European Union to relocate their production facilities to Asian countries. Starting in the 1990s, the offshoring movement was largely directed towards China, leveraging the country's economic landscape to achieve significant cost savings and operational efficiencies.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=318#oembed-1>

7.4.1 Advantages of Offshoring to China

The decision to offshore manufacturing to China came with several distinct advantages, aligning with the primary goal of cost reduction and operational efficiency:

- **Large Labor Pool:** China offered a vast labor pool, providing manufacturers with a diverse range of skilled and unskilled workers. This abundance of labor was a key factor in China's appeal as an offshoring destination.
- **State-of-the-Art Facilities:** Chinese provinces, keen to attract foreign investment, often provided modern manufacturing facilities equipped with the latest technologies.
- **Competitive Labor Costs:** Labor costs in China were substantially lower than in Western countries, offering a cost advantage, particularly in labor-intensive manufacturing processes.
- **Smoother Operational Workflows:** The differences in labor laws and practices in China often translated to fewer complexities in managing labor, leading to more efficient operations.
- **Access to Expanding Markets:** Offshoring to China also opened doors to the burgeoning Chinese and wider Asian markets, offering new opportunities for business expansion and revenue growth.

These advantages made China a central hub in global manufacturing and supply chain strategies, underlining the significance of cost and operational efficiencies in strategic sourcing decisions.

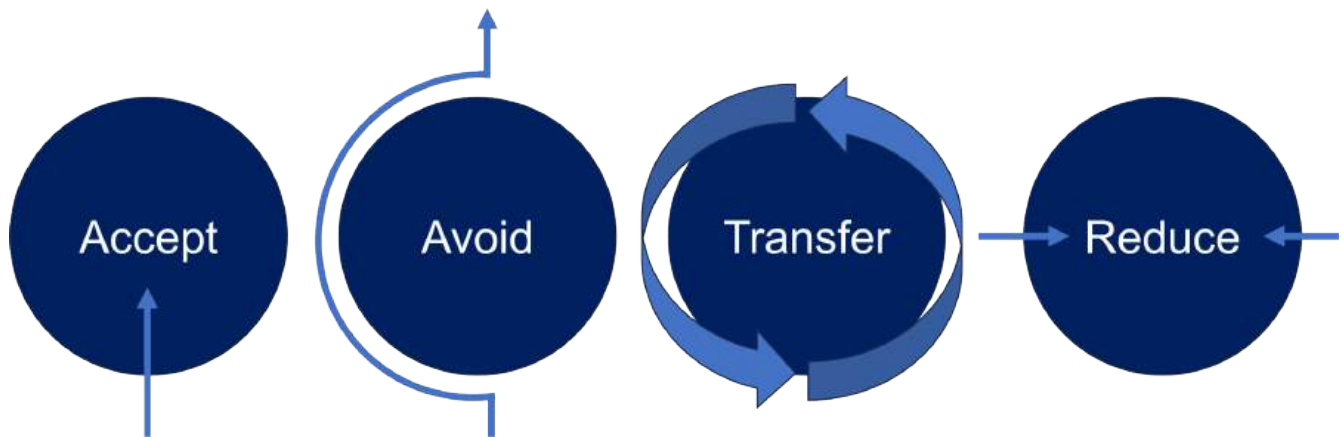
7.4.2 Challenges of Offshoring to China

Despite the advantages, offshoring to China presented several challenges that evolved over time:

- **Rising Labor Costs:** Over the years, labor costs in China have increased significantly. This rise eroded one of the key benefits of offshoring to China, making it less cost-effective compared to other Asian countries or even regions like Mexico.
- **U.S.-China Trade Tensions:** Escalating trade tensions between the United States and China, particularly evident in the trade war involving tariffs and trade barriers, created uncertainties and increased costs for companies reliant on Chinese manufacturing.
- **COVID-19 Pandemic Impact:** The outbreak of the COVID-19 pandemic further exacerbated the vulnerabilities of relying heavily on Chinese supply chains. Lockdowns and transportation restrictions led to significant delays and logistical challenges, highlighting the risks of long-distance, centralized supply chains.

These challenges prompted a strategic reevaluation of offshoring, with companies increasingly looking for alternative locations and approaches to balance cost efficiency with supply chain resilience and risk management.

7.4.3 Sourcing Strategies for Risk Mitigation



In response to the highlighted challenges, it became evident to businesses that an excessive reliance on China for manufacturing posed significant risks. This realization spurred the adoption of various strategies for managing and mitigating these risks:

1. **Risk Elimination:** Some companies chose to eliminate risk by moving a substantial part of their production from China to alternate countries. A notable example is Samsung, which set up a massive

facility in Vietnam, employing over 100,000 workers. Samsung's significant investment in Vietnam, totaling billions of dollars, underscores a strategic shift away from reliance on Chinese manufacturing.

2. **Risk Mitigation:** Other companies opted for risk mitigation by diversifying their production locations. For instance, Apple began setting up operations in India, partially moving away from its China-centric production model. This approach aims to reduce dependence on a single country while still maintaining global manufacturing capabilities.

A key form of risk management strategy adopted by American companies is nearshoring. This approach involves relocating manufacturing facilities closer to the United States, particularly to neighboring countries like Mexico. Nearshoring offers several benefits, including reduced transportation costs, shorter lead times, and greater control over the supply chain.

Integral to this nearshoring trend is the maquiladora system in Mexico. These are factories that import materials duty-free and tariff-free for assembly, then export the assembled products. The maquiladora system provides significant cost advantages and operational flexibility, making it an attractive option for U.S. manufacturers seeking to balance cost efficiency with increased supply chain resilience.

2.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Discuss the strategic value-adding role distribution plays in the supply chain
- Differences between warehousing, distribution centers, fulfillment centers
- Order management and order fulfillment
- Network design strategies
- Outline the primary fulfillment processes and support functions in distribution center (DC) operations

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[23.2 Types of distribution channels](#)¹

1. Business Learning Presentation. (2019, February 26.) 23.2 Types of distribution channels [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/fvLGcdp7FbA?si=QN3tEiLXsREErxxA>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

As we have explored in this chapter, purchasing has evolved significantly from a focus solely on cost reduction to assuming a strategic role within organizations. This strategic dimension of purchasing involves critical management for effective business performance, encompassing aspects like risk management, supply chain resilience, and global sourcing strategies.



The importance of purchasing in the modern business landscape is further underscored by the emergence of the Chief Purchasing Officer (CPO) role as a pivotal element of corporate strategy. The CPO's responsibilities, deeply intertwined with the company's overall strategy, highlight the elevated attention top management now devotes to purchasing functions. This shift reflects the recognition that effective purchasing strategies are crucial for the competitive positioning and operational success of businesses in a complex and rapidly changing global marketplace.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

In the aftermath of World War II, Japan faced significant resource constraints, compelling them to innovate and devise efficient production methods. At the forefront of this transformation was Toyota, which pioneered a revolutionary approach to manufacturing known as the Toyota Production System (TPS), now commonly referred to as **Lean Systems**. At its core, Lean Systems focus on minimizing waste across all aspects of production, fostering a culture of continuous improvement and efficiency.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=435#oembed-1>

Embracing Lean Systems necessitates a paradigm shift in mindset, where every employee becomes actively engaged in identifying and eliminating waste. Unlike traditional manufacturing methods that often compartmentalize roles and responsibilities, Lean Systems encourage a holistic view of the production process, empowering individuals at all levels to contribute to efficiency gains.

Several techniques underpin the Lean philosophy, each serving as a cornerstone for waste elimination. These techniques include **Just-in-Time (JIT)** production, which aims to synchronize production with customer demand, thereby reducing excess inventory and associated costs. Additionally, methods such as **Total Quality Management (TQM)** emphasize continuous quality improvement, ensuring defects are addressed at their source rather than allowing them to propagate downstream. By implementing these and other Lean techniques, organizations can streamline operations, enhance productivity, and ultimately deliver greater value to customers.

A lean manufacturing facility embodies these principles through its organized, efficient layout and processes. Workstations are often configured to minimize unnecessary movement, supporting a seamless flow of materials and information. Visual management tools, like Kanban boards, are prominently displayed, enabling real-time tracking of production status and facilitating quick adjustments to meet changing demands. The commitment

to minimizing waste is palpable, with efforts to reduce defects, overproduction, and waiting times integrated into every aspect of the operation. This environment not only improves operational efficiency but also fosters a collaborative culture, where continuous improvement is a shared responsibility.

Similarly, the application of lean principles extends beyond manufacturing to service sectors, including healthcare, where their impact is both transformative and measurable. In healthcare settings, lean methodologies have led to significant reductions in patient wait times for appointments and procedures, enhancing patient satisfaction and operational efficiency. Moreover, the streamlined processes and elimination of inefficiencies have resulted in improved staff morale and job satisfaction, contributing to a more positive work environment. The increased efficiency has also allowed for higher patient throughput, enabling facilities to accommodate more patients effectively. These advancements demonstrate the adaptability and effectiveness of lean principles in improving service delivery, efficiency, and satisfaction in sectors outside of traditional manufacturing, showcasing their broad utility and potential for positive change.

3.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Outline the importance of information to supply chain management
- Explain information requirements in the supply chain
- Identify and describe the technological innovations that are influencing supply chain management, especially digital like AI, ML, BL, IoT, etc.

Slides

Embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[5 Must Have Supply Chain Technologies](#)¹

[Retail 2020|5 Technologies that will change the way you shop](#)²

-
1. Cerasis. (2019, August 26). *5 must have supply chain technologies* [Video]. YouTube. https://youtu.be/7XNj9TQ0758?si=_tP1Tl5hc8uDCTB3
 2. Lifelong Learners. (2017, December 4). *Retail 2020 | 5 Technologies that will change the way you shop* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/iRvaWHk3A8k?si=kKVDsIv2fEY2wY7c>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Lean philosophy fundamentally centers on minimizing waste and delivering exactly what the customer desires, marking a significant departure from traditional manufacturing and service practices. Unlike traditional firms, where physical and operational constraints dictate batch sizes and limit customization, the lean methodology seeks to eliminate these barriers. This approach enables organizations to meet customer needs more effectively and with greater efficiency. By focusing on value from the customer's perspective, lean organizations streamline processes and eliminate non-value-adding activities, ensuring a leaner operation that benefits both the company and its customers.

- **Overproduction:** Traditional firms produce in large batches to optimize for manufacturing efficiencies, leading to excess products that may not meet immediate customer demand. This results in overproduction, where goods remain unsold, tying up capital and space. In contrast, Lean systems design production to match the exact customer demand, significantly reducing or eliminating overproduction by utilizing smaller batch sizes, which align more closely with customer needs.
- **Waiting:** In non-lean systems, large batch sizes create work-in-progress (WIP) that leads to longer lead times and more waiting, as products must go through each stage of the production process before the next batch can begin. Lean methodologies reduce batch sizes, resulting in lower lead times and less waiting, as smaller batches move more quickly through the production process, reducing idle time.
- **Transport:** Non-lean firms often rely on global sourcing to reduce purchase prices, which, while economically appealing, increases lead times and reduces flexibility due to the long distances materials must travel. Toyota and other lean organizations prefer to co-locate suppliers in close proximity, minimizing material transport times and enhancing flexibility. This approach, combined with an optimized internal layout, ensures minimal movement within the firm, reducing the waste associated with transport.
- **Overprocessing:** Traditional firms focus heavily on inspection and rework to ensure quality, leading to unnecessary processing. Lean methodologies, as practiced by Toyota, emphasize mistake-proofing and getting it right the first time to avoid the need for additional processing. This shift towards quality control at the source eliminates the waste of overprocessing, ensuring that resources are used efficiently.
- **Excess Inventory:** In traditional setups, the emphasis on large batch sizes leads to excess inventory, tying up capital and occupying valuable space. Lean approaches advocate for just-in-time (JIT) production, which aims to have the right amount of materials, at the right place, at the right time, thereby significantly reducing the levels of inventory required and minimizing the waste associated with excess stock.

- **Unnecessary Motion:** Non-lean environments often have poorly organized workspaces, leading to employees spending time searching for tools or moving between distant areas. Lean principles promote the organization of the workspace to ensure that everything has its place and is within easy reach, minimizing unnecessary motion and improving efficiency.
- **Defects:** The traditional focus on inspection at the end of the production process often results in a high rate of defects, necessitating rework or scrapping defective products. Lean systems incorporate quality control throughout the production process, with an emphasis on preventing mistakes before they occur. This approach to quality management significantly reduces the incidence of defects, thereby eliminating the waste of resources on rework or scrapping.

It's essential to understand that these wastes are intricately linked with the overarching goal of waste elimination, which is at the heart of lean philosophy. This focus on eliminating waste is not arbitrary but is strategically aimed at enhancing organizational flexibility, agility, and the capability to deliver precisely what the customer desires. Techniques such as batch size reduction play a pivotal role in this context, allowing firms to adapt more quickly to changes in customer demand, reduce lead times, and minimize holding costs. Additionally, the emphasis on quality control from the start (doing it right the first time) and the efficient organization of workspaces are all geared towards creating a more streamlined, efficient operation that can respond with greater agility to the market's needs. These strategies collectively enable a lean organization to be more responsive and adaptable, characteristics that are increasingly valuable in today's dynamic market environments.

To bring these concepts to life, let's visualize the seven wastes in the context of a lean service example: a fast-food restaurant. In this service environment, wastes can manifest in various forms:

- **Overproduction:** Cooking more food than is ordered, leading to waste.
- **Waiting:** Customers waiting in line or for their order due to inefficient service processes.
- **Transport:** Unnecessary movement of ingredients or supplies from storage to the kitchen.
- **Overprocessing:** Complicated ordering processes that require unnecessary steps for both customers and staff.
- **Excess Inventory:** Stocking more ingredients than necessary, risking spoilage.
- **Unnecessary Motion:** Staff moving inefficiently within the kitchen or between the kitchen and the counter, wasting time and energy.
- **Defects:** Incorrect orders that need to be remade, wasting resources and time.

By identifying and addressing these wastes, the restaurant can significantly enhance its operational efficiency and customer service. Reducing batch sizes (e.g., cooking food to order) minimizes waste and ensures fresher

meals. Streamlining the ordering process and kitchen layout reduces waiting times and unnecessary motion, improving customer satisfaction and staff efficiency. Adopting a JIT approach to inventory management reduces spoilage and waste. Quality control measures, like training staff to get orders right the first time, minimize the need for remakes. Through these improvements, the restaurant becomes more agile and flexible, capable of delivering exactly what customers want with minimal waste and higher satisfaction. This example illustrates how the principles of lean management can be applied in service settings to reduce waste and improve performance, demonstrating the versatility and effectiveness of lean methodologies across different sectors.

This philosophy of waste elimination is supported by three core components: respect for people, partnerships and collaboration, and continuous improvement, each contributing to a holistic approach that enhances overall performance.



Respect for
People



Partnerships &
Collaboration



Continuous
Improvement

Respect for People is fundamental in lean philosophy, emphasizing the recognition of each employee's potential to contribute to the organization's improvement. This respect is demonstrated through active listening, valuing employee feedback, and encouraging participation in decision-making processes. Toyota, a pioneer in implementing lean principles, operationalizes this respect by empowering its workforce to identify inefficiencies and suggest improvements. Employees are trained to understand the value of their work from a lean perspective, enabling them to see beyond their immediate tasks and grasp the impact on the overall process. This empowerment is complemented by a supportive environment that values teamwork and individual contributions equally, fostering a culture where innovation is not just welcomed but expected. Workforce engagement is further enhanced through systematic problem-solving training, equipping employees with the tools to address challenges creatively and effectively.

Partnerships and Collaboration highlights the emphasis on building and maintaining strong, cooperative

relationships that extend beyond organizational boundaries. Toyota epitomizes this principle through its approach to supplier relationships, characterized by mutual trust and long-term commitments. Unlike traditional firms that may engage in competitive bidding to minimize costs, Toyota often follows a single vendor concept for many components and materials. This strategy fosters a deeper collaboration, where suppliers are seen as integral partners in the production process, involved in joint efforts to improve quality and efficiency.

Continuous Improvement, or Kaizen is the driving force of lean philosophy, advocating for regular, incremental enhancements across all processes and products. Toyota champions this principle through a bottom-up approach, where change initiatives are primarily employee-driven rather than dictated from the top down. This method recognizes that those who perform the tasks are often best positioned to identify areas for improvement and innovatesolutions. Employees are encouraged to constantly question the status quo and seek ways to eliminate waste, enhance quality, and increase efficiency.

Adhering to these principles allows lean organizations to maintain a dynamic and efficient operation. This comprehensive approach not only curtails waste and boosts operational efficiency but also ensures the delivery of high-quality products and services, meeting the evolving needs of customers.

4.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Define sustainability and its importance in supply chain management
- Explain the triple bottom line approach and its application in supply chains
- Assess current sustainability practices within various industries
- Identify key sustainability metrics and how they are measured in supply chains
- Design and propose sustainable supply chain strategies

Slides

embed slides here

Readings and Videos

Watch or Listen to the Following Media Clip



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=40#oembed-1>

What is Sustainability¹

Introduction

Global climate change, intense competition, social and environmental responsibility forces the global value chain to vigorously act and use the world's resources more efficiently, commit to sustainable practices and be competitive nowadays. Three aspects should be included in the sustainable value chain to gain beneficial economic, social, and environmental results. First, many businesses put a lot of effort into demonstrating environmental and social responsibilities. The global value chain uses many global resources, money, human resources, and unnecessary sources. The total environmental impact shown in figure 1 below, where only greenhouse gas emissions from the most significant companies worldwide accounted for 31 percent out of 100 percent (Trucost & GreenBiz, 2018). All companies should start measuring social, environmental and economic impact from the beginning to the end of the product's life cycle of their services and good; otherwise, the planet will deplete. View graph [Distribution of natural capital impacts among companies worldwide in 2016, by issue](#). [[Chart description](#)].

Video: Sustainable Supply Chains Explained (3:34)



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=40#oembed-2>

Media 8.2²

-
1. OCED. (2013, May 27). *Global value chains: The production revolution of the 21st century* [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ktx2_Dzy3tM
 2. TED. (2020, February 14). How supply chain transparency can help the planet | Markus Mutz [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ygxh6KR4BPk>

Video: Sustainability of Supply Chains in the Age of Information | Tom Pathuis. (15:35)



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=40#oembed-3>

Media 8.3³

3. TEDx Talks. (2015, May 5). Sustainability of supply chains in the age of information | Tom Pathuis | TEDxYouth@Maastricht [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zKOkEEmtIlo>

Video: How Supply Chain Transparency can Help the Planet | Markus Mutz (13:29)



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=40#oembed-4>

Media 8.4⁴

Assessing What You Already Know

As you answer the following questions, reflect upon what you already know about how companies work.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=40#h5p-4>

Interactive activity unavailable in this format

[Text-based alternative](#) to interactive activity available in Chapter 8.8.

4. UCLA. (2021, April 13). What is sustainability [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zx04Kl8y4dE>

Overall Activity Feedback

While answering the above questions, you got a chance to analyze what it means to be a sustainable company, the main dimensions of suitability in the global value chain, and the circular economy definition. The sustainable value chain focuses on global issues such as human rights, global warming, melting ice caps, etc. The sustainable value chain is related to the core of the whole business, from the strategy to developing products and relationships.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Building upon the foundational philosophies of lean that Toyota and similar organizations champion, the practical application of these philosophies is realized through various lean techniques. These techniques are instrumental in operationalizing the principles of minimizing waste, respecting people, fostering partnerships, and encouraging continuous improvement. We will explore some of these key techniques here:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=440#oembed-1>

12.3.1 JIT (Just-In-Time) / Single Piece Flow

Just-In-Time (JIT) manufacturing, also known as single piece flow, is a cornerstone of lean techniques, aiming to dramatically reduce waste and enhance efficiency by producing only what is needed, when it is needed, and in the quantities required. This approach minimizes inventory levels, reduces storage costs, and cuts down on waste associated with overproduction. Toyota's implementation of JIT is legendary, synchronizing its manufacturing processes so tightly with demand that parts arrive at the production line precisely at the moment they are needed. This technique not only streamlines operations but also supports a more agile response to market changes.

Building upon the foundational philosophies of lean that Toyota and similar organizations champion, the practical application of these philosophies is realized through various lean techniques. These techniques are instrumental in operationalizing the principles of minimizing waste, respecting people, fostering partnerships, and encouraging continuous improvement. We will explore some of these key techniques here:

12.3.2 Kanban / Pull System

Kanban, or the pull system, complements JIT by regulating the flow of materials and information through visual signals. This technique enables workers to see at a glance what needs to be produced, in what quantity, and when, thereby ensuring a smooth and continuous workflow. In Toyota's factories, Kanban cards are used

to signal the need for parts replenishment, effectively pulling inventory through the production system based on actual consumption rather than forecasted demand. This method significantly reduces excess inventory and encourages a more efficient use of resources.

12.3.3 TPM (Total Productive Maintenance)

Total Productive Maintenance (TPM) focuses on proactive and preventive maintenance to maximize the operational efficiency of equipment. By involving operators in routine maintenance tasks, TPM fosters a sense of ownership and responsibility for the machinery. Toyota's adoption of TPM has led to remarkable improvements in equipment reliability and uptime, directly contributing to overall productivity and reducing downtime-related losses. This technique emphasizes the importance of equipment in lean systems and ensures that machinery is always in optimal condition for production.

12.3.4 Five-S

The 5S technique stands for Sort, Set in order, Shine, Standardize, and Sustain. It is a systematic approach to workplace organization and cleanliness, which directly impacts safety, efficiency, and worker morale. Toyota's workplaces exemplify the 5S principles, with everything in its right place and a place for everything, ensuring that workers do not waste time searching for tools or materials. This organized environment is conducive to higher productivity and a safer, more pleasant workspace.

12.3.5 TQM (Total Quality Management)

Total Quality Management (TQM) is an all-encompassing approach to long-term success through customer satisfaction. In a TQM effort, all members of an organization participate in improving processes, products, services, and the culture in which they work. Toyota's commitment to quality is evident in its meticulous design and production processes, where quality checks are integrated at multiple stages. This technique ensures that defects are identified and corrected at the earliest possible stage, reducing waste and enhancing customer trust and satisfaction.

12.3.6 SMED (Single-Minute Exchange of Die)

SMED, or Single-Minute Exchange of Die, is a methodology designed to reduce the time it takes to change from one production run to another. This rapid changeover is crucial in enabling JIT production by minimizing downtime and increasing flexibility in manufacturing. Toyota's implementation of SMED has dramatically reduced setup times, allowing for smaller batch sizes and more varied production without sacrificing efficiency. This technique is vital for responding quickly to customer demands and maintaining a steady flow through the production process.

Through the implementation of these lean techniques, Toyota and other lean practitioners put their philosophies into action, creating highly efficient, adaptable, and waste-minimized operations. These techniques not only support the foundational lean principles but also demonstrate how continuous improvement and respect for people lead to tangible benefits in manufacturing and beyond.

5.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Strategic importance of Supply Chain Management (SCM)
- Identify different strategies, such as omni-channel

Slides

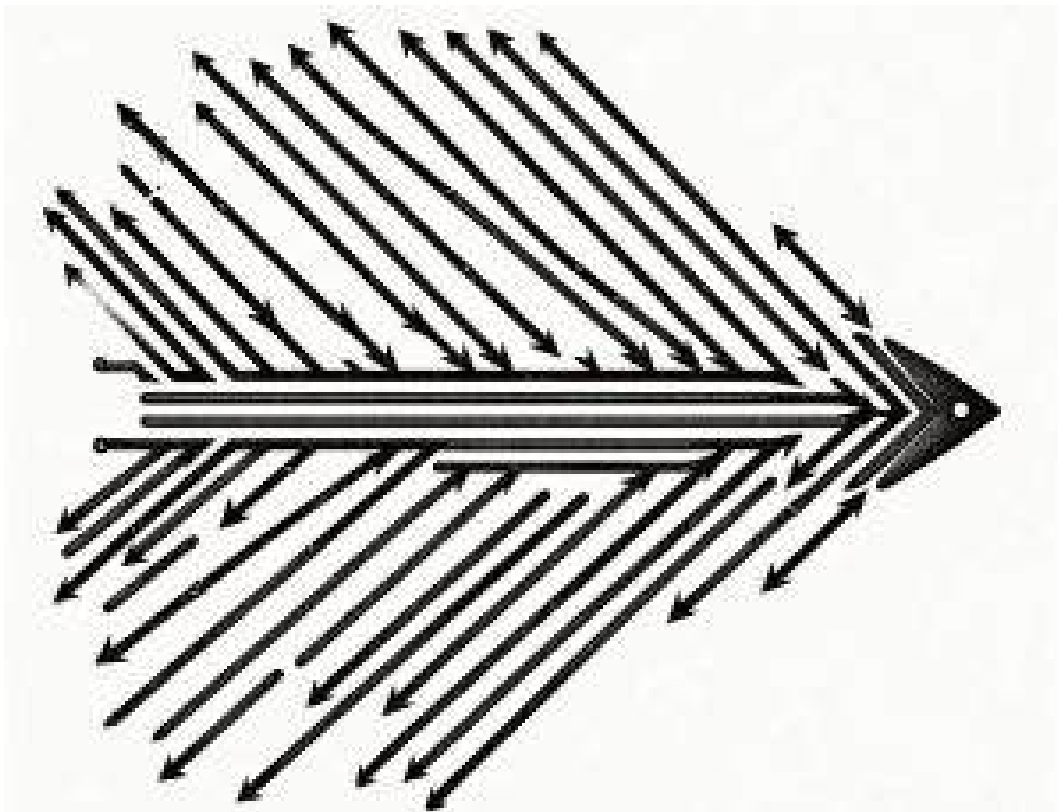
embed slides here

Readings and Videos

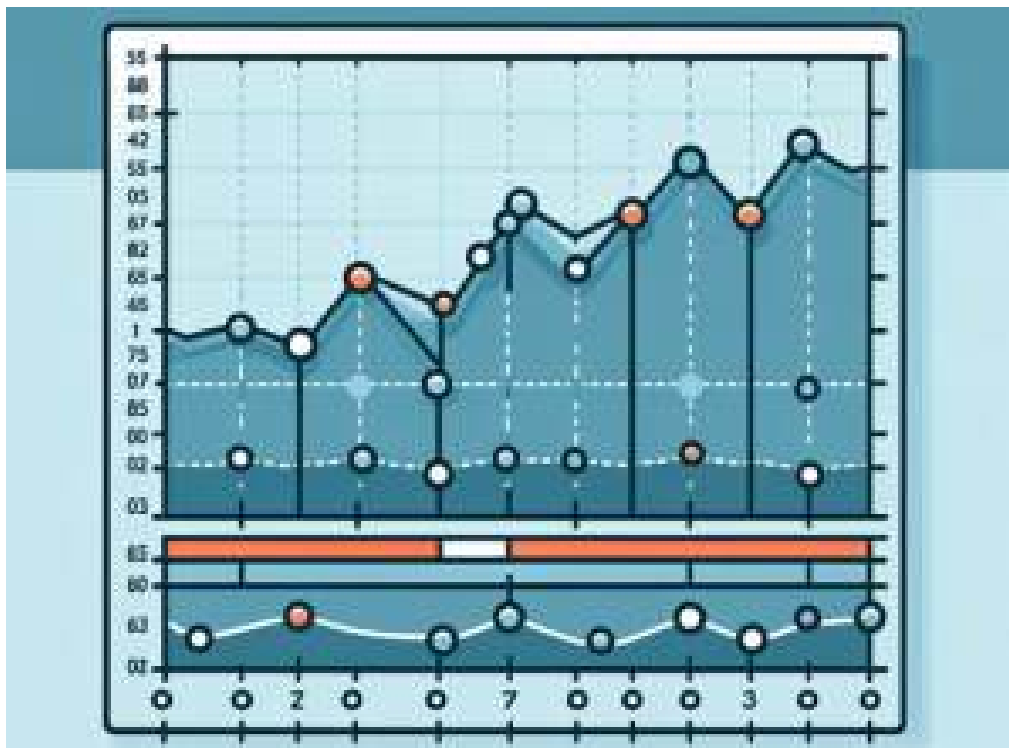
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Transitioning from the exploration of lean techniques that operationalize lean philosophy in manufacturing and service industries, we now turn our attention to the instruments that further enhance our capability to ensure quality and continuous improvement. These instruments, known as the Seven Quality Tools, serve as essential mechanisms for identifying, analyzing, and resolving quality-related issues. Whether aiming to minimize waste, streamline processes, or enhance product and service quality, these tools offer a systematic approach to tackling challenges and fostering a culture of excellence. In this section, we delve into each of these tools, elucidating their functions and applications in the continuous quest for quality enhancement.

1. Cause-and-Effect Diagram (Ishikawa or Fishbone Diagram)

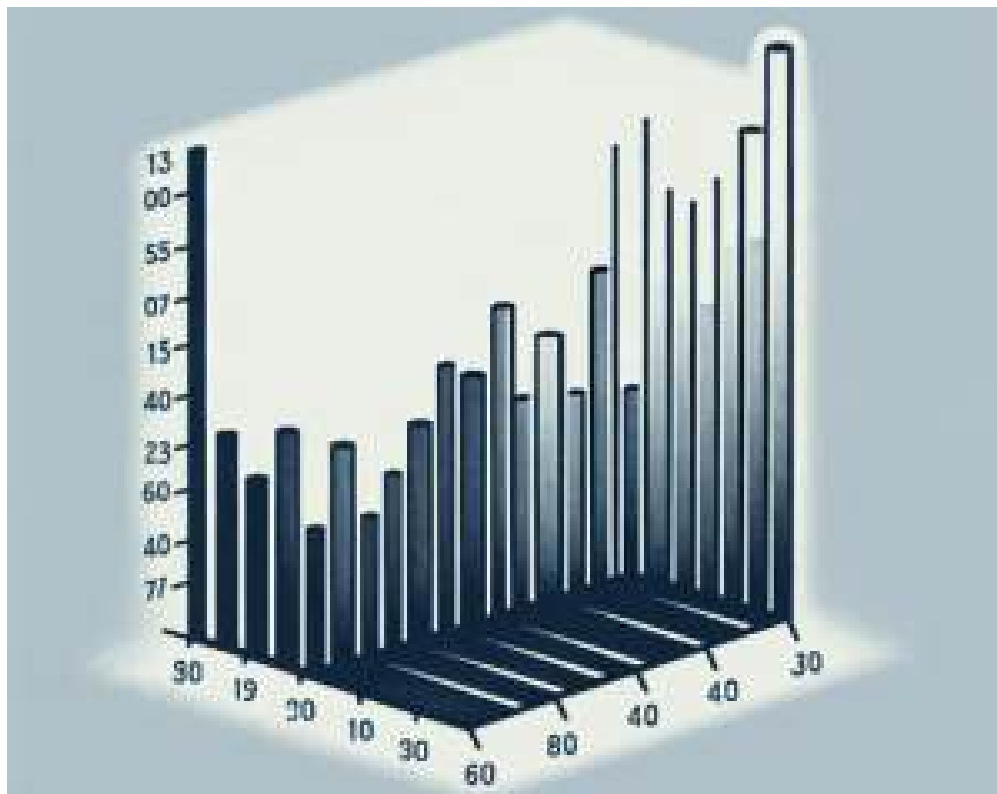


The Cause-and-Effect Diagram, also known as the Ishikawa or Fishbone Diagram, is used to identify the root causes of a problem. The diagram visually maps out the main causes and their sub-causes that contribute to an issue, resembling the skeleton of a fish. This tool is particularly useful in brainstorming sessions to categorize potential causes of problems and identify areas for further investigation.



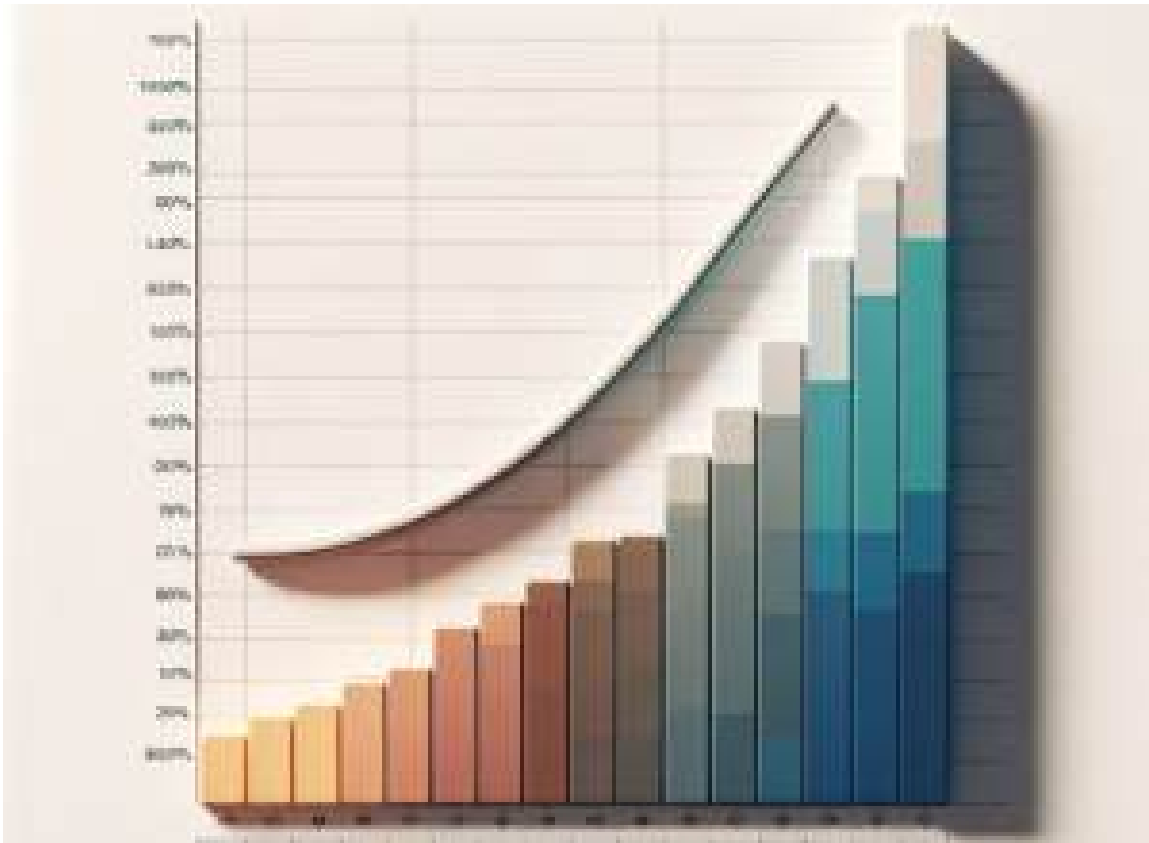
Control Charts are used to monitor processes to determine whether they are in a state of statistical control. By plotting the values of a process over time and comparing them to predetermined control limits, organizations can identify trends, shifts, or any variation that might indicate a problem. Control charts are essential for maintaining and improving process stability.

4. Histogram



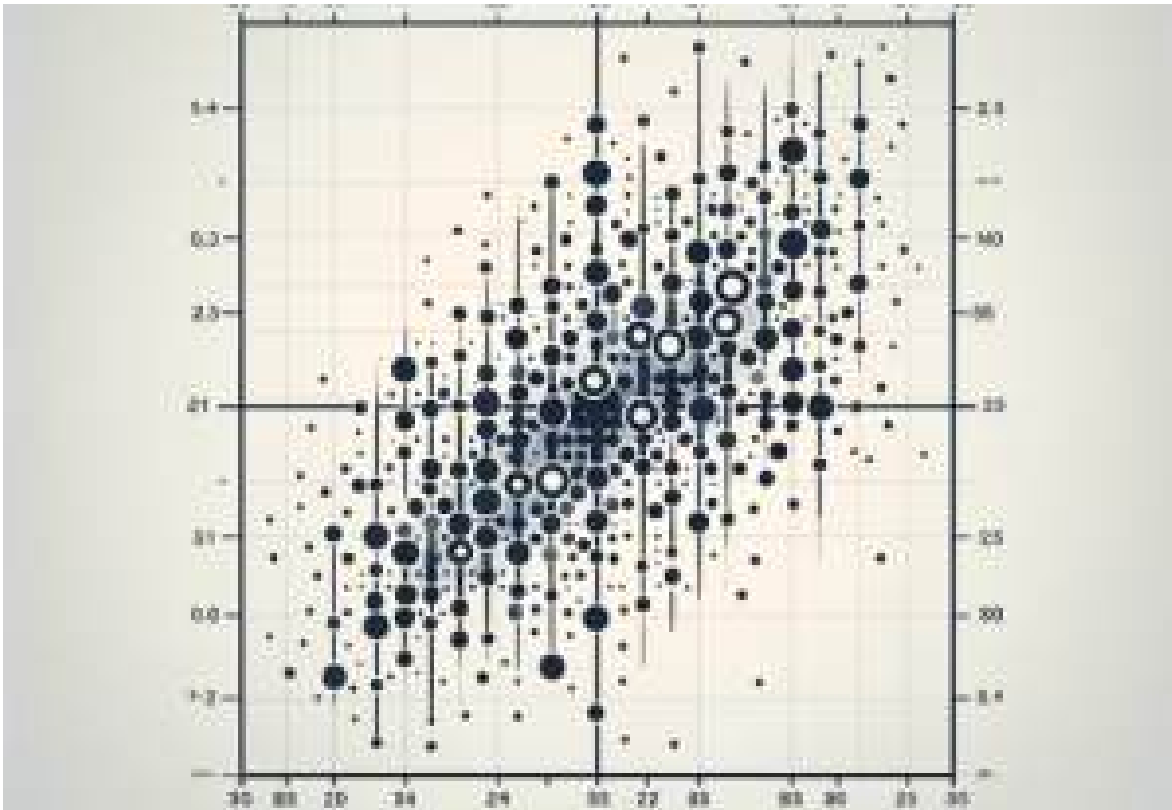
A Histogram is a graphical representation of the distribution of numerical data. It is an estimate of the probability distribution of a continuous variable and is used to visualize the frequency of data points within specified ranges. Histograms are useful for identifying the shape of the distribution, which can indicate whether a process is behaving as expected.

5. Pareto Chart



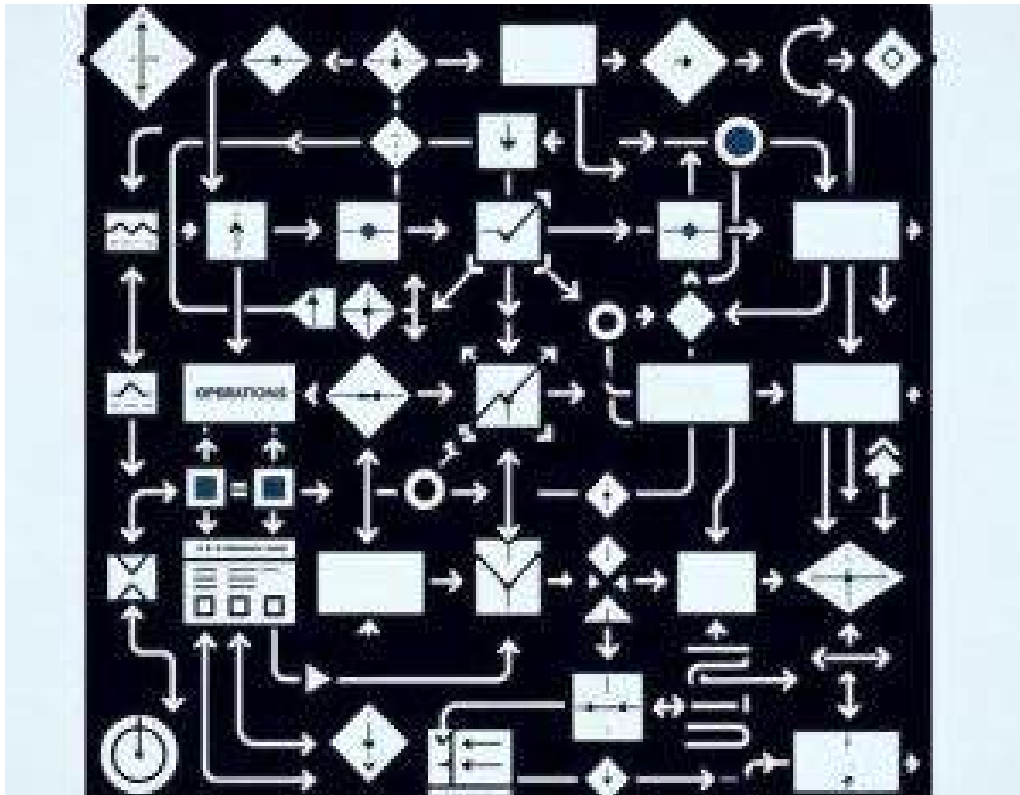
The Pareto Chart is a bar graph that represents the frequency or impact of problems or causes in a process. The chart is based on the Pareto Principle, which states that a small number of causes are often responsible for a large portion of the effect. It helps in identifying the most significant factors contributing to a problem and prioritizing efforts to tackle them.

6. Scatter Diagram



The Scatter Diagram, or scatter plot, is used to identify the possible relationship between two variables. By plotting pairs of numerical data, with one variable on each axis, one can visually see if a correlation exists between them. This tool is invaluable for hypothesis testing and for determining if changes in one variable might be causing changes in another.

7. Flowchart



A Flowchart is a graphical representation of a process, showing the steps as boxes of various kinds, and their order by connecting them with arrows. This tool is used to understand a process thoroughly by identifying sequences, decision points, and potential bottlenecks. Flowcharts are essential for process analysis, redesign, and for making processes clearer to understand for all stakeholders.

6.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Define global supply chain management and its importance in today's interconnected world
- Explain the key components and functions of global supply chains
- Assess various strategies for global supply chain management, including outsourcing, offshoring, and nearshoring
- Identify key performance indicators for evaluating global supply chain efficiency and effectiveness

Slides

embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[International Trade and Supply Chains](#)¹

1. IMF. (2013, November 25). *International trade and supply chains* [Video]. YouTube. https://youtu.be/Bblo8_B32Co?si=aNP3J-eQy12Y2v96

Video: What Makes a Great Supplier Relationship? (10:03)



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=44#oembed-1>

Media 3.5²

Suppliers' relationships are vital for successful performing businesses. Supplier relationship management is increasingly essential for companies. Supplier relationship' value created by reducing costs, improving efficiency, and getting quality products for the same price. These benefits impact the financial results of any organization. Advantages are beneficial if the relationship with suppliers is long-term developed. To create advantages for the organization, companies and suppliers have to invest money, time, patience, resources, and willingness to communicate to find the best solution for all parties. All stakeholders involved in the process include employees, suppliers, and buyers. Increasing the complexity of changing product lines, service delivery, value, and customer satisfaction all points to becoming a function of the global value chain. Relationships between business, suppliers, and customers are increasingly important and robust, improving overall business and the global value chain. Ongoing valuable relationships can increase the popularity of quality products and the organization's efficiency and effectiveness, determined by a business model, supply chain, customers, and suppliers.

Quality products have to be delivered on time to provide excellent service and delivery goods. By having solid and long-term relationships with suppliers, vendors will prioritize my orders and provide quality goods ahead of time. In addition, suppliers will ensure that the company will get the best products quickly without returning poor-quality goods. The next value is excellent support from suppliers with whom you have a solid relationship. For example, if the company gets damaged products or delayed shipments, suppliers will help you solve this issue as soon as possible.

Moreover, if the company delivers quality products without defects, customer satisfaction indicators will

increase because customers will continue to enjoy doing business. More vital brand awareness comes from excellent customer satisfaction factors. In addition, the production or manufacturing industry depends on suppliers. If the raw material is delivered late, the company will face risks and losses. Losses such as stopping production or rejecting finished products.

Check Your Understanding

Explain how supplier relationships adds value in global value chain.

Answer the question(s) below to see how well you understand the topics covered above. You can retake it an unlimited number of times.

Use this quiz to check your understanding and decide whether to (1) study the previous section further or (2) move on to the next section.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=44#h5p-5>

Interactive activity unavailable in this format

[Text-based alternative.](#) to interactive activity available in Chapter 3.7

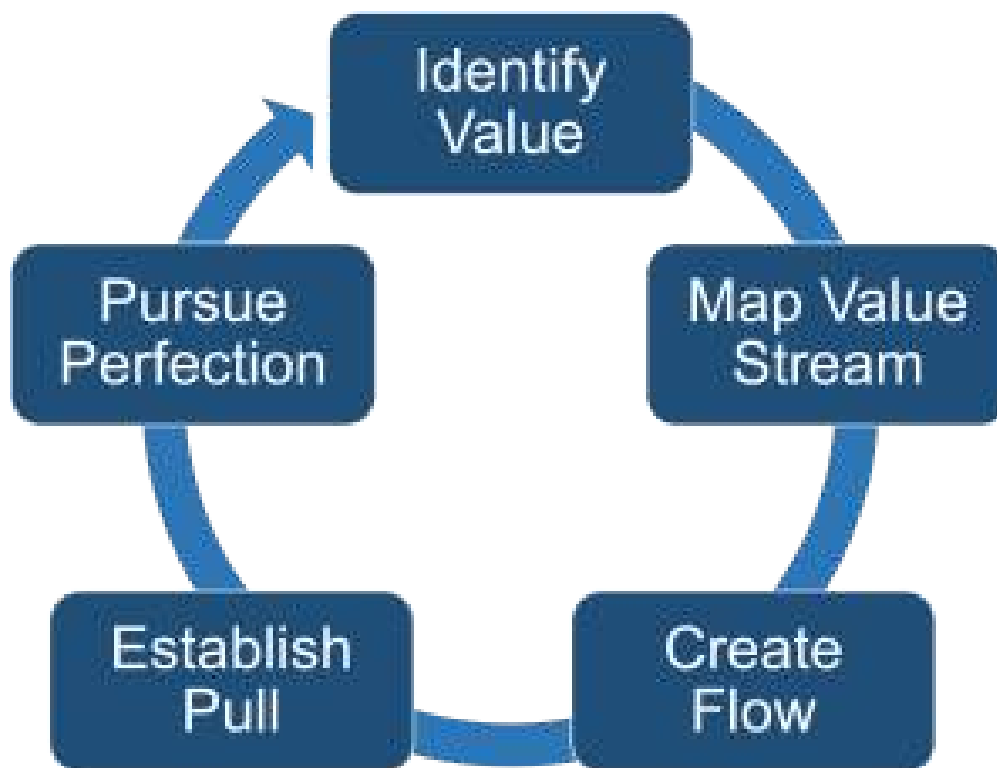
Overall Activity Feedback

It is important to know that supplier relationship management is increasingly essential for companies. Also, supplier relationship' value is created by reducing costs, improving efficiency, and getting quality products for the same price. These benefits impact the financial results of any organization. Advantages are beneficial if the relationship with suppliers is long-term developed. To create advantages for the organization, companies and suppliers have to invest money, time, patience, resources, and willingness to communicate to find the best solution for all parties. If the company delivers quality products without defects, customer satisfaction indicators will increase because customers will continue to enjoy doing business.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Implementing lean within any organization, whether in manufacturing or the service sector, requires a disciplined and structured approach to ensure both effective transition and sustainable improvements. A recognized methodology for deploying lean principles involves a series of interconnected steps that together form a comprehensive roadmap for organizations aspiring to embrace lean practices. This section elucidates these steps, with an emphasis on **Value Stream Mapping (VSM)**, and provides examples from manufacturing and service contexts, illustrating the application of these principles.

12.5.1 The Five Steps of Lean Implementation



- **Identifying Value** is the foundational step in lean implementation, necessitating a deep understanding of what constitutes value from the customer's perspective. It involves discerning which activities add value—as deemed by the customer—and which do not. This discernment is crucial for focusing efforts on what truly matters to the customer, ensuring that the organization's outputs align with customer

expectations and willingness to pay.

- **Mapping the Value Stream** is the process of visually depicting all the actions required to bring a product or service from concept to delivery to the customer. Through Value Stream Mapping, organizations chart both the flow of materials and the information that drives the process, identifying and highlighting waste in its various forms—be it overproduction, waiting, unnecessary transport, overprocessing, excess inventory, unnecessary movements, or defects. This comprehensive mapping serves not only to diagnose inefficiencies but also to envision an optimized future state where value flows smoothly to the customer.
- Once waste is identified and a future state is envisioned, the next phase, **Creating Flow**, focuses on ensuring that the steps in delivering value to the customer proceed smoothly and without interruption. This may involve reorganizing work sequences, enhancing cross-functional collaboration, or adopting new technologies to ensure a seamless flow of value.
- In the **Establish Pull** phase, the shift is towards producing only what is needed when it is needed, based on actual customer demand, rather than on forecasts. This pull-based approach helps in minimizing waste associated with overproduction and excess inventory, aligning production or service delivery more closely with real-time demand.
- The journey of lean transformation is ongoing, as highlighted in the phase of **Pursuing Perfection**. This perpetual cycle of evaluation and improvement encourages organizations to continuously seek ways to eliminate waste, improve processes, and enhance value delivered to customers. It fosters an organizational culture dedicated to excellence and constant evolution.

It's pivotal to understand that these five steps of lean implementation are not linear but rather operate in a continuous loop. There is no definitive endpoint in the journey toward lean; each cycle of improvement opens new avenues for further enhancements, embedding a culture of continuous improvement within the organization. This iterative process ensures that lean principles become deeply ingrained in the organizational fabric, driving long-term sustainability and adaptability.

12.5.2 Examples of Lean Implementation

In the manufacturing realm, consider a company that embarks on this lean journey by first identifying what their customers truly value in their products. Through value stream mapping, they uncover inefficiencies in their production line that lead to delays and overproduction. By reorganizing their production processes to create a smoother flow and adopting a pull system that aligns production with actual customer orders, they significantly reduce waste and improve delivery times. Pursuing perfection becomes an ongoing endeavor, with the organization continually seeking ways to refine and improve its processes.

Similarly, in the service sector, a hospital may apply these lean steps to enhance patient care. By understanding patient value as timely and effective treatment, the hospital uses value stream mapping to identify bottlenecks in patient flow. Implementing changes to ensure a smoother flow of patients through the facility, and establishing pull mechanisms that align resources with patient needs, the hospital improves both efficiency and patient satisfaction. The pursuit of perfection is relentless, with ongoing efforts to refine processes and eliminate waste.

12.5.3 Culture Change: The Essence of Lean

Crucially, lean implementation transcends the mere adoption of tools and techniques; it signifies a profound shift in organizational culture. This cultural transformation, underpinned by a commitment to continuous improvement and waste elimination, is the cornerstone of lean. It requires engagement and alignment at all levels of the organization, fostering an environment where every employee is empowered to contribute to the lean journey. This paradigm shift ensures that lean principles are not only implemented but are sustained and evolved over time, securing long-term success and adaptability in a changing market landscape.

Through these steps and the ongoing cycle of improvement, lean offers a powerful framework for organizations to enhance efficiency, reduce waste, and most importantly, deliver greater value to customers.

7.

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter, you should be able to explain or define the following concepts:

- Define humanitarian logistics and its significance in crisis management
- Explain the differences between commercial supply chain management and humanitarian supply chain management
- Identify key performance indicators for evaluating the effectiveness of humanitarian supply chains
- Evaluate real-world case studies of humanitarian logistics operations

Slides

embed slides here

Readings and Videos

[Talking Supply Chain](#)¹

[When disaster strikes, the supply chain becomes the key to life](#)²

-
1. Straight, B. (2024, May 23). *Talking supply chain: Humanitarian supply chains provide a lifeline for many* [Podcast]. Supply Chain Management Review. https://www.scmr.com/podcast/humanitarian_supply_chains_provide_a_lifeline_for_many
 2. Straight, B. (2024, July 22). *When disaster strikes, the supply chain becomes the key to life*. Supply Chain Management Review. <https://www.scmr.com/article/when-disaster-strikes-the-supply-chain-becomes-the-key-to-life>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

As we conclude our exploration of Lean Supply Chains, it's evident that the principles and practices of lean are not confined to the realm of manufacturing alone but extend into every sector and process where value is created and delivered. The journey through lean philosophy, techniques, and tools illuminates a path toward operational excellence, sustainability, and customer satisfaction. The transformative potential of lean lies not just in its ability to streamline operations and reduce waste but also in its capacity to foster a culture of continuous improvement and respect for people at every level of an organization.

For students across all majors, understanding and applying lean principles can provide a competitive edge in today's dynamic and complex marketplace. Whether you're pursuing a career in manufacturing, healthcare, finance, or any other sector, the lean approach offers valuable insights into optimizing processes, enhancing quality, and driving innovation. The versatility and adaptability of lean make it an invaluable framework for addressing the challenges and opportunities of the 21st century.

Moreover, the journey of lean is a continuous one, with no final destination. It is a cycle of constant learning, improvement, and adaptation. This book has laid the foundation, but the true depth and impact of lean can only be fully realized through application, experimentation, and ongoing exploration. I encourage you to delve deeper into the subjects that have intrigued you, seek out real-world examples of lean in action, and consider how you might apply these principles in your future career or endeavors.

Above all, remember that lean is more than a set of tools or methodologies; it is a mindset, a way of thinking that prioritizes value, respect for people, and continuous improvement. Embracing this mindset can lead to not only professional success but also personal growth and fulfillment. As you move forward, let the principles of lean guide you in creating value, solving problems, and making a positive impact in whatever field you choose to pursue.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Conceptual Questions:

Section 12.1: Introduction

- **Question:** What is the core focus of Lean Systems as developed by Toyota?

Section 12.2: Philosophy

- **Question:** What are the seven forms of waste (“Muda”) identified by Lean philosophy?

Section 12.3: Lean Techniques

- **Question:** What is the purpose of Just-In-Time (JIT) manufacturing in Lean Systems?

Section 12.4: Seven Quality Tools

- **Question:** How is a Cause-and-Effect Diagram (Ishikawa or Fishbone Diagram) used in Lean Systems?

Section 12.5: Lean Implementation

- **Question:** What is the purpose of Value Stream Mapping (VSM) in Lean implementation?

Section 12.6: Conclusions

- **Question:** How does Lean philosophy extend beyond manufacturing into other sectors?

Situational Questions:

Situation: Imagine you are a manager at a manufacturing company that has recently adopted Lean techniques. You notice that your team is consistently overproducing parts, leading to excess inventory and wasted resources. Which Lean principle should you apply to address this issue, and what specific action would you take?

Situation: You are overseeing a healthcare facility that has been experiencing long patient wait times for appointments and procedures. How would you use Lean techniques to improve this situation, and what would be the expected outcome?

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Business operations have grown increasingly complex due to the global distribution of customers, suppliers, and products, each interacting under a variety of legal systems and transacting in multiple currencies. This complexity arises not merely from the volume of transactions or the diversity of operational environments, but also from the intricacies of managing multi-faceted business relationships and regulatory compliance across different geographical locations.

Managing this complexity presents significant challenges. Organizations must navigate not only the logistics of supply chain operations but also the varied regulatory requirements and market dynamics of different regions. The difficulty lies in synchronizing these diverse elements to maintain efficiency and ensure the smooth flow of goods and information. Mismanagement can lead to delays, increased costs, and diminished service quality, affecting overall business competitiveness.

Consider the case of Ikea, the world's largest furniture retailer. Their success relies on a massive global supply chain, sourcing materials from various countries and manufacturing products in dozens more. Ikea faces a multitude of challenges: navigating complex logistics across vast distances, complying with diverse environmental regulations (e.g., wood sourcing restrictions), and adapting product offerings to suit regional tastes and furniture styles. Synchronizing these diverse elements is a constant struggle. For example, a delay in receiving a key component from one supplier in Southeast Asia can hold up production in a European factory, impacting deliveries and customer satisfaction. Similarly, regulations restricting certain materials in one region might require Ikea to source alternatives or redesign products, adding complexity and cost.

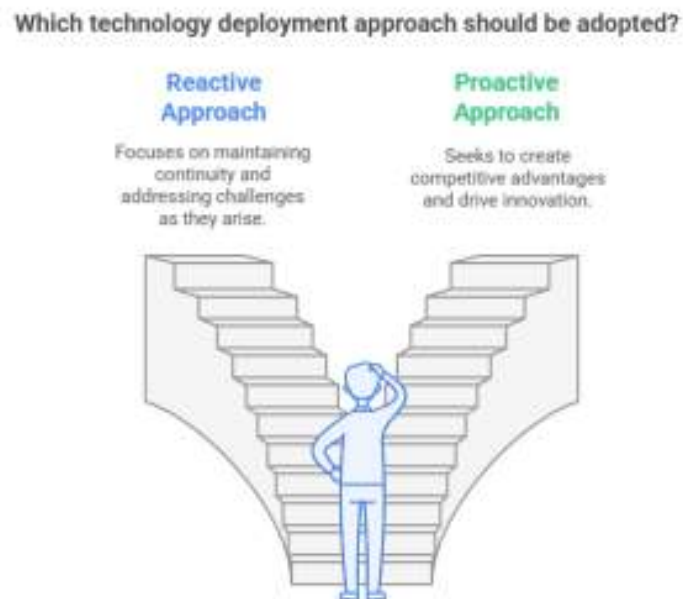
In response to these challenges, technology becomes indispensable. **Advanced information technology (IT) systems** provide the tools necessary to integrate and manage business processes across the global supply chain. These technologies enable real-time data collection and analysis, improving decision-making and responsiveness. By leveraging IT, businesses can anticipate and mitigate disruptions, streamline operations, and enhance customer satisfaction.

There are two primary approaches to deploying technology in business operations: **reactive** and **proactive**. A **reactive** approach focuses on countering challenges that arise due to operational complexity, inefficiencies, or external disruptions. It is aimed at maintaining business continuity, reducing risks, and improving resilience. Reactive technology adoption often includes solutions that enhance visibility, improve compliance, or address inefficiencies in supply chain operations. For example, many companies implement **track-and-trace systems** to comply with evolving regulations or respond to quality and safety concerns. Similarly, businesses might adopt **automated inventory management** to prevent stockouts after facing frequent supply disruptions.

In contrast, a **proactive** approach to technology adoption is about seeking new markets, creating competitive advantages, or fundamentally improving business capabilities. Rather than simply solving existing problems, proactive adoption leverages technology to open new opportunities and drive innovation. For

instance, companies integrating **predictive analytics for demand forecasting** are not just solving inventory issues but are actively improving their ability to anticipate customer needs and optimize production schedules. Similarly, **autonomous warehouse robotics** are not just addressing labor shortages but are enabling businesses to scale operations at lower costs and with higher efficiency.

A common but often debated approach in technological adoption is “**paving the cow path.**” This term refers to the practice of applying new technology to existing processes without rethinking whether those processes should change. In other words, rather than redesigning workflows to take full advantage of new capabilities, organizations automate inefficient legacy processes. A classic example is paper-based purchase orders being digitized into PDFs instead of adopting an integrated procurement system that could streamline approvals and automate supplier communication. Similarly, companies implementing **AI-powered customer support bots** that replicate the same long wait times and rigid scripts of call centers fail to unlock the full potential of AI in personalizing customer interactions.



An alternative to paving the cow path is **business process reengineering (BPR)**, which involves a fundamental redesign of workflows to maximize efficiency and innovation. Instead of merely applying technology to existing inefficiencies, BPR asks whether those processes should exist in their current form at all. For example, rather than using AI to speed up traditional supply chain documentation, some companies eliminate unnecessary paperwork entirely by adopting **blockchain-based smart contracts**, which automate transactions securely and transparently. Similarly, **cloud-based ERP systems** enable decentralized decision-making, allowing global teams to collaborate in real time instead of following hierarchical approval chains.

By distinguishing between reactive and proactive technology adoption and recognizing the trade-offs between **paving the cow path** and **business process reengineering**, companies can make more strategic

decisions about technology investments. Businesses that simply apply new tools to outdated processes may find themselves improving efficiency but not fundamentally advancing their capabilities. Those that take a more transformational approach—redesigning processes to align with modern technology—can unlock far greater long-term benefits in supply chain management.

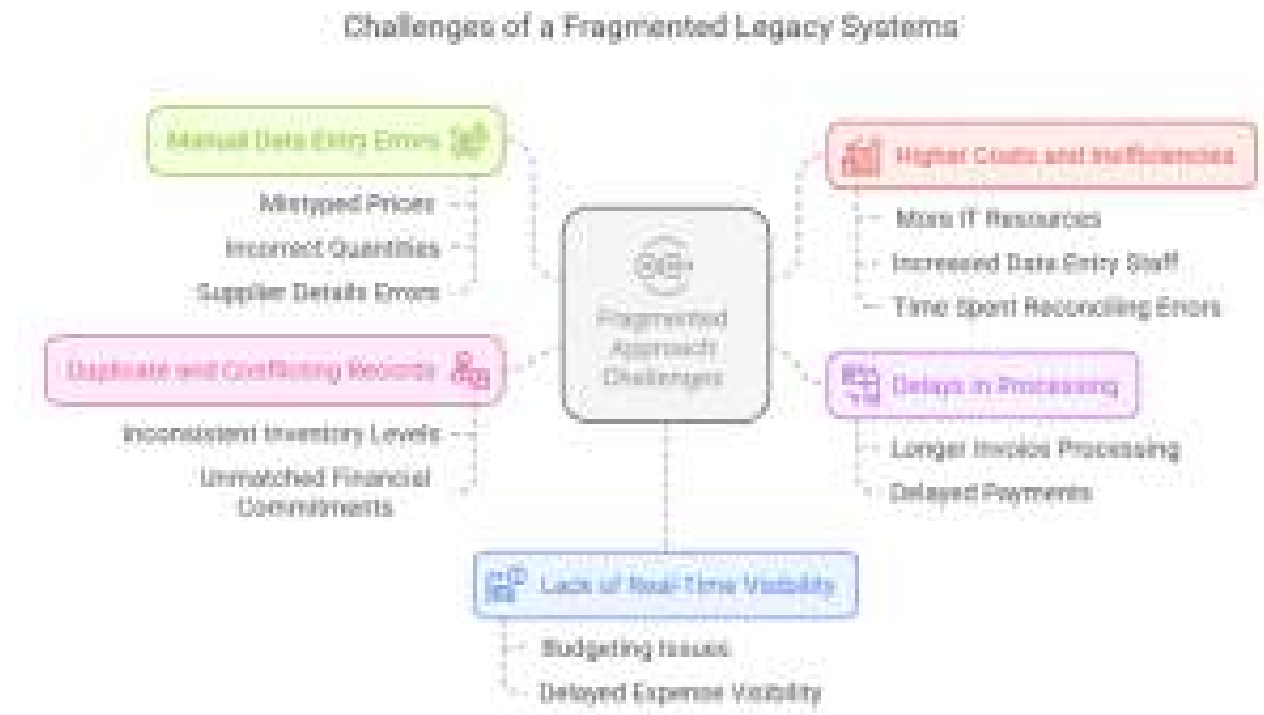
Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Traditionally, business systems were built with a focus on individual departmental efficiency rather than overall organizational integration. Each department had its own separate system to manage operations, meaning procurement, finance, warehousing, and sales all worked in isolation. Even outside the company, buyers and suppliers used their own independent systems, which often could not communicate with each other. While this structure worked in simpler business environments, it created major inefficiencies as supply chains became more complex and businesses needed **real-time collaboration** across departments and external partners.

To understand how operations worked in a **legacy system**, consider a basic procurement process between a supplier and a buyer. Suppose a company orders raw materials from a supplier. The supplier creates an invoice, which might be in paper format or in a digital format that the buyer's system cannot read. Since the buyer's procurement system cannot automatically process this invoice, an employee must manually enter the details into the company's system. Once the materials arrive, the receiving department needs to record the delivery and verify that the correct quantity was received. However, since the receiving department has its own separate system, it must generate a goods receipt document and send it to the accounts payable department for payment processing. Again, because accounts payable uses a different system, the data must be entered manually once more before the payment can be approved.

This fragmented approach leads to several key challenges:

1. **Manual Data Entry Errors** – Every time information is re-entered manually, there is a risk of mistyping prices, quantities, or supplier details, leading to incorrect payments or mismatched records.
2. **Delays in Processing** – Since information does not flow automatically between departments, invoices, receipts, and payments take longer to be processed, causing delays in financial settlements and supplier relationships.
3. **Duplicate and Conflicting Records** – Without a centralized database, different departments may have inconsistent data, making it difficult to track inventory levels, financial commitments, and supplier transactions accurately.
4. **Lack of Real-Time Visibility** – Managers and decision-makers cannot access up-to-date information because records exist in separate systems. For example, procurement might place an order, but finance might not immediately see the expense, leading to budgeting issues.
5. **Higher Costs and Inefficiencies** – Maintaining multiple systems for different functions requires more IT resources, more employees for data entry, and more time spent reconciling errors, increasing overall business costs.



To solve these problems, businesses implement **Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems**, which replace multiple standalone systems with a **single integrated platform**. ERP ensures that all departments use the same data, eliminating the need for manual entry and allowing real-time information sharing across the organization. For example, in an ERP system, when a supplier sends an invoice, it can be automatically matched with the purchase order and goods receipt, enabling instant approval for payment without re-entering data. Similarly, when inventory is updated in the warehouse, procurement and finance can see the changes immediately, improving coordination and decision-making.

By eliminating the inefficiencies of legacy systems, ERP allows companies to **streamline operations, reduce costs, and improve accuracy**, making supply chain processes far more efficient and reliable.

15.2.1 ERP Modules

One of the key features of Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems is that they are built in separate functional units called **modules**. Instead of having a single massive program handling everything, an ERP system consists of individual modules, each designed for a specific business function. For example, there are modules for finance, human resources, supply chain management, customer relationship management, and production planning. These modules work independently but are also connected, meaning that data flows

smoothly across departments. This allows companies to integrate different business functions into a single system without needing multiple disconnected software solutions.

A major advantage of this modular structure is that companies can start small and expand gradually. Businesses do not have to install the entire ERP system at once; they can implement only the modules they need and add more as they grow. For instance, a small business might begin with just an accounting module to manage finances and later add an inventory management module when they expand operations. Similarly, a retail company might first adopt a sales and customer management module and later include a warehouse management module to track inventory in real time. This step-by-step approach makes ERP systems more flexible and cost-effective, allowing businesses to invest in technology based on their immediate needs while keeping future expansion in mind.

Firms face choices in how they assemble their ERP systems. They can opt for an **all-in-one solution** from a single vendor, which offers the convenience of a unified system with seamless integration across all modules. Alternatively, companies can select a **best-of-breed approach**, choosing specific modules from specialized providers that offer advanced functionality in particular areas. For example, a distribution company might purchase most of its ERP modules from one vendor but opt for a warehousing and distribution module from a different provider that offers superior features for inventory management and logistics. This approach allows the company to leverage specialized capabilities that are crucial for its core operations.

Each approach has its advantages and disadvantages. The all-in-one solution simplifies integration and vendor management, often resulting in lower overall system complexity and reduced IT overhead. However, it may not always deliver the best capability in each functional area. The best-of-breed approach, on the other hand, allows companies to capitalize on the most advanced technology available for specific modules but can introduce challenges related to integration, data consistency, and vendor management. These trade-offs must be carefully considered in light of the company's strategic needs and IT capabilities.

15.2.2 On-premise vs Cloud hosting

ERP systems can be deployed in two main environments: on-premise and in the cloud. **On-premise ERP systems** are hosted on the company's own servers and managed by its IT staff, giving the organization full control over the hardware and software. This setup is often preferred by companies that require high levels of customization or have specific data security requirements.

Cloud-based ERP systems, conversely, are hosted on the vendor's servers and accessed via the internet. This model offers several advantages, such as lower upfront costs, reduced need for internal IT maintenance, and greater scalability. However, it also presents potential downsides, including less control over data storage and dependency on the vendor for uptime and system performance. Companies must weigh these factors against

their operational priorities, budget constraints, and strategic IT goals when choosing between on-premise and cloud ERP solutions.



15.2.3 Benefits and challenges

Businesses adopt enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems for various strategic reasons, including expansion, cost reduction, and operational improvements. While the specific benefits realized can vary between companies, some universally acknowledged advantages include:

1. **Enhanced Operational Efficiency:** By automating daily tasks and streamlining business processes, ERP systems significantly reduce the effort required to manage day-to-day operations. This automation extends across the board—from inventory management to order processing and beyond—helping to eliminate manual errors and freeing up staff to focus on more strategic tasks.
2. **Improved Financial Reporting and Management:** ERP systems integrate all financial data into a single, centralized platform, providing powerful and precise real-time reporting capabilities. This integration allows for better financial planning and analysis, helping organizations to maintain detailed audits, manage budgets effectively, and improve financial performance through enhanced visibility into costs and revenues.
3. **Centralized Data Management:** With an ERP system, all critical data is stored in a single, secure database, allowing for improved data consistency and accessibility. Centralized data management ensures that every department accesses the same, up-to-date information, reducing discrepancies and fostering a unified approach to managing business operations.
4. **Better Decision Making:** Integrated data coupled with advanced analytical tools in ERP systems empower business leaders to make more informed decisions. Managers and executives can quickly access vital information, evaluate operational performance in real-time, and adjust strategies swiftly to meet market demands or internal operational needs.
5. **Increased Agility and Scalability:** ERP systems provide the flexibility to adapt to changing business

environments and scale operations up or down as necessary. Whether a company is expanding into new markets, introducing new products, or restructuring its operations, ERP systems can adjust to accommodate new business processes and additional users without disrupting existing workflows.

These benefits demonstrate why ERP systems are crucial for modern businesses looking to maintain competitiveness and streamline their operations in today's dynamic market environments. The adoption of ERP technology not only supports operational and financial improvements but also enhances strategic planning and execution across the enterprise.

However, the implementation of an ERP system is not without its challenges. Introducing an ERP system requires substantial organizational change management, and many companies may not be prepared for the level of transformation required. The initial cost of implementing an ERP system can also be a significant hurdle, particularly for small businesses. For example, the total cost for a small business to implement an ERP system can range from \$75,000 to \$750,000, depending on the complexity and scope of the deployment.

Additionally, ERP systems require skilled human resources for administration and management. These resources are often scarce and expensive, adding another layer of challenge in maintaining the system efficiently. The combination of high costs, the need for specialized skills, and the extensive change management required can make ERP implementation a daunting task for any organization, emphasizing the need for thorough planning and strategic consideration before undertaking such an initiative.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=514#oembed-1>

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Modern supply chains handle millions of products, shipments, and transactions daily, making it difficult to track and manage everything manually. Businesses need a way to **automatically capture, store, and process information about products, shipments, and assets** across their supply chain. This is where identification technologies come into play. These technologies help businesses **identify, track, and manage products efficiently**, ensuring that the right items are in the right place at the right time.

Identification technologies work by **assigning a unique code or label** to an item, allowing companies to scan and retrieve information quickly. For example, when a product arrives at a warehouse, scanning a barcode or RFID tag can instantly update inventory records instead of relying on manual counting and data entry. This reduces errors, improves speed, and ensures that supply chain operations run smoothly. Without identification technologies, businesses would struggle with **missing shipments, incorrect stock levels, delays in processing orders, and even fraud**.

Before adopting an identification technology, businesses must consider several key factors:

- **Cost:** Some technologies, like barcodes, are inexpensive to print and use, while others, like RFID, require costly hardware and software.
- **Accuracy and Reliability:** The technology should minimize errors—barcode scanners need a clear line of sight, while RFID can scan multiple items at once.
- **Ease of Use:** Employees must be able to operate scanners or readers efficiently to ensure smooth operations.
- **Security:** Identification technologies must prevent counterfeiting and unauthorized access, especially for high-value goods.
- **Scalability:** The system should work for both small businesses and large enterprises, handling a growing number of products and transactions as the company expands.

By choosing the right identification technology, companies can streamline inventory tracking, reduce errors, and improve overall supply chain efficiency. The following section explores some of the most widely used identification technologies in supply chain management.

Core Technologies:

Barcodes: The most widely used identification technology, barcodes consist of a series of lines and spaces representing product information. They were first popularized in grocery stores (like the iconic scan on

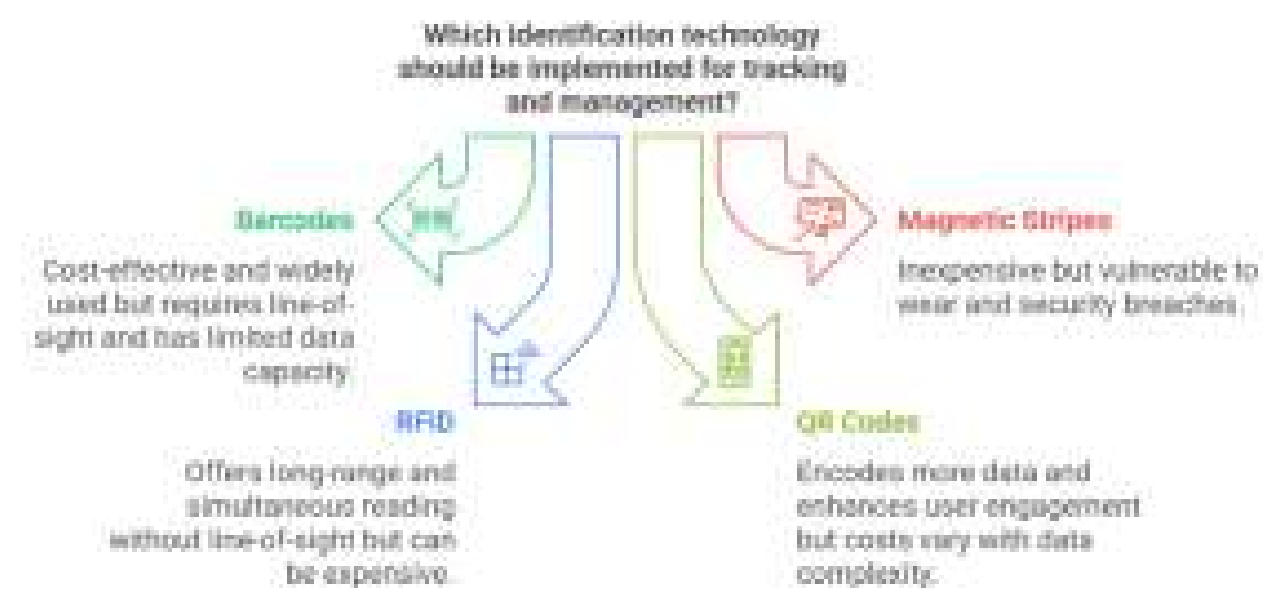
a pack of Wrigley's gum in 1974) to streamline checkout and inventory management. Standardization by GS1 ensures global recognition, allowing apps like price scanners on smartphones to identify products across borders. For instance, Amazon uses barcodes extensively in their warehouses. Each item received at an Amazon fulfillment center is scanned, allowing the company to track location, manage inventory levels, and ensure efficient order fulfillment. While cost-effective and versatile, barcodes require direct line-of-sight for scanning. Imagine a scenario where a box full of electronics is packed tightly, and the barcode on a specific item is obscured by another box. Scanning becomes impossible. Additionally, barcodes offer limited data capacity and are susceptible to damage or dirt. Furthermore, their effectiveness relies on accurate databases, which can add maintenance costs. However, the ease of reprinting barcodes also presents a security risk, as counterfeit products with replicated codes could potentially infiltrate the supply chain.

Magnetic Stripes: Commonly found on credit cards and access cards, magnetic stripes store data on a magnetic film. Swiping the card through a reader retrieves the information. Magnetic stripes are inexpensive but vulnerable to wear and tear, data corruption, and security breaches.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID): This technology uses radio waves to identify and track objects with attached tags. Tags can be passive (powered by the reader's signal) or active (with their own battery). Passive tags, used for applications like retail inventory tracking, are cheaper but have shorter reading ranges. Active tags, employed for high-value assets like pharmaceuticals or shipping containers, offer longer ranges but are more expensive. RFID offers the advantage of reading multiple tags simultaneously and without direct line-of-sight, overcoming the limitations of barcodes in cluttered environments. For example, clothing giant Zara utilizes RFID tags to track garments throughout their supply chain, from manufacturing to stores. This allows for better inventory management, reduced stockouts, and improved efficiency. However, RFID systems can be expensive to implement and susceptible to interference from metals or liquids.

QR Codes (Quick Response Codes): These two-dimensional barcodes encode significantly more data than traditional barcodes and can be scanned from any angle using smartphones. This characteristic makes them ideal for mobile payments, promotional tracking, and personal identification. The ability to scan QR codes with smartphones fosters interactive marketing and instant access applications, enhancing user engagement. QR codes are becoming increasingly popular in the food and beverage industry. For instance, Coca-Cola uses QR codes on their cans and bottles to link consumers to interactive marketing campaigns or provide nutritional information.

The cost of implementing these technologies varies. Barcodes are the most affordable, while RFID systems require a significant initial investment in tags and readers. QR codes fall somewhere in between, with the cost depending on the complexity of the data encoded.



In conclusion, identification technologies are fundamental tools for managing complex supply chains. Understanding their strengths and weaknesses allows businesses to select the most appropriate solution for their needs, ensuring efficient, secure, and transparent operations.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Conceptual Questions

1. Section 15.1 Introduction:

- **Question:** How do reactive and proactive approaches to deploying technology in supply chain management differ, and what impact do they have on business processes?

2. Section 15.2 Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP):

- **Question:** What are the key differences between all-in-one ERP solutions and best-of-breed ERP solutions?

3. Section 15.2.2 On-premise vs Cloud Hosting:

- **Question:** What are the primary considerations for a company when choosing between an on-premise ERP system and a cloud-based ERP system?

4. Section 15.3 Identification Technologies:

- **Question:** How do barcodes and RFID technologies differ in terms of application and limitations in supply chain management?

5. Section 15.4 Machine Learning and Artificial Intelligence in Supply Chain Management:

- **Question:** What are the primary benefits of using Machine Learning (ML) and Artificial Intelligence (AI) in supply chain management?

Situational Questions

1. **Situation:** A mid-sized manufacturing company is considering implementing an ERP system but is concerned about the initial cost and the complexity of managing the system. They are unsure whether to choose an on-premise or cloud-based solution. What factors should they consider, and what would you recommend?

2. **Situation:** A retail company is experiencing frequent stockouts and overstock situations due to inaccurate demand forecasting. They are considering using Machine Learning (ML) to improve their demand forecasting accuracy. How could ML help address their issues, and what challenges might they face in implementing it?

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

3.1.1 Definition of Quality

Quality, in the context of supply chain management, is a measure of excellence or a state of being free from defects, deficiencies, and significant variations. It is brought about by the strict and consistent commitment to certain standards that achieve uniformity of a product in order to satisfy specific customer or user requirements.

3.1.2 Importance of Quality in Supply Chain Management

Quality plays a pivotal role in supply chain management, influencing every step from procurement to customer service. High-quality processes and outputs reduce costs associated with rework, returns, and lost sales, thereby increasing profitability. Quality also builds trust and strengthens the relationship between different supply chain players, fostering collaboration, and efficient problem-solving.

3.1.3 Various Perspectives on Quality

Quality is subjective and can be viewed differently depending on the perspective:

- **Customer Perspective:** Customers view quality as conformance to their expectations. These expectations may be based on their previous experiences, recommendations, or advertised features and specifications.
- **Producer Perspective:** For producers, quality is often about specifications and process control. They define quality as a product or service free from defects and one that adheres strictly to the design specifications and standards.
- **Value-Based Perspective:** In a value-based perspective, quality is seen as 'getting what you pay for' and 'what a product or service is worth to the customer'. This concept balances quality with cost and a higher price might be justified if the customer perceives that the product has superior quality.

Of these three perspectives, the Customer Perspective is the most crucial in supply chain management as customer satisfaction directly influences a business's success. This will be the perspective we focus on in this chapter.

3.1.4 Understanding and Delivering on Customer-Defined Quality

In supply chain management, **the key objective is to meet or exceed customer-defined quality expectations.** Understanding these expectations is critical as it directly impacts every aspect of the supply chain – from the design, procurement, production, and distribution of goods to after-sales service. This customer-focused approach ensures that the delivered product or service aligns with the customer’s needs and preferences, thereby maximizing customer satisfaction and loyalty.



To ensure the consistent delivery of high-quality products or services, **Quality Assurance (QA)** and **Quality Control (QC)** systems are integral to supply chain management. QA focuses on the process and prevents defects by ensuring the process is designed and controlled correctly. QC, on the other hand, is product-oriented and involves checking final products for defects. Both play crucial roles in maintaining the desired level of quality in a supply chain, safeguarding the customer’s interests, and promoting efficiency and effectiveness.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Understanding the dimensions of quality, particularly how they differ between physical products and services, is crucial in supply chain management. Products are tangible and can be physically measured and tested against specified standards. However, services are intangible, variable, and directly interact with customers, leading to different dimensions of quality that incorporate customer interactions and expectations.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=221#oembed-1>

The Eight Dimensions of Product Quality:

- **Performance:** This relates to a product's primary operating characteristics. For example, in a smartphone, performance could be measured by its processing speed or battery life.
- **Features:** These are the secondary characteristics that supplement the product's performance. For example, a car might have features like a built-in GPS system, heated seats, or Bluetooth connectivity.
- **Reliability:** This dimension considers the probability of a product malfunctioning or failing within a specified period. For example, a high-quality refrigerator should work without any issues for several years.
- **Conformance:** This is the degree to which a product's design and operating characteristics meet established standards. For instance, a pharmaceutical manufacturer must conform to strict FDA standards in their drug formulation and production processes.
- **Durability:** This measures the product's life, including both the technical life (how long the product lasts before it breaks down) and the economic life (how long the product remains useful before it is replaced due to outdated technology or style). A well-made pair of shoes, for instance, can last many years with proper care.
- **Serviceability:** This involves the speed, courtesy, and competence of repair. For example, an automobile manufacturer might offer 24/7 customer service and have a reputation for quick and effective repairs.
- **Aesthetics:** This refers to how a product looks, feels, sounds, tastes, or smells. It's highly subjective and tied to personal preference. A product like perfume, for example, heavily relies on the aesthetics of its scent.
- **Perceived Quality:** This involves the customer's personal opinion of the product, which can be

influenced by brand name, advertising, and reputation. For instance, customers might perceive a handbag from a well-known luxury brand to be of high quality.

The Five Dimensions of Service Quality:

- **Tangibles:** These are the physical evidence of the service, such as the appearance of physical facilities, equipment, personnel, and communication materials. For example, a clean, well-furnished, and comfortable hotel room would score high on tangibles.
- **Reliability:** This is the ability to perform the promised service dependably and accurately, such as a courier delivering a package within the promised timeframe.
- **Responsiveness:** This is the willingness to help customers and provide prompt service. For example, a server in a restaurant noticing a customer's empty glass and refilling it demonstrates high responsiveness.
- **Assurance:** This is the knowledge and courtesy of employees and their ability to inspire trust and confidence. A financial advisor providing competent and understandable advice would score high on assurance.
- **Empathy:** This involves caring, individualized attention to customers. For example, a doctor taking the time to listen and understand a patient's concerns demonstrates high empathy.

These quality dimensions guide organizations in designing and managing their supply chain operations to meet customer expectations, whether they're delivering products, services, or a combination of both. Understanding the specific quality dimensions relevant to their offerings allows organizations to focus their quality management efforts effectively.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The Cost of Quality (CoQ) is a significant concept in supply chain management, providing a measure of the cost associated with producing a quality product or service. It is not merely the cost of ensuring good quality, but also the cost incurred from failing to meet quality standards. CoQ is divided into four key categories: Appraisal Costs, Prevention Costs, Internal Failure Costs, and External Failure Costs.

Appraisal Costs



Appraisal costs, also known as inspection costs, are the expenses associated with the process of identifying and managing defective products before they reach the customer. These costs can include the activities of quality audits, inspections, testing, and other forms of verification. The goal of these activities is to catch and address defects early in the process, preventing faulty products from reaching the market and damaging the company's reputation.

Prevention Costs



Prevention costs are incurred to avert the production of poor-quality products or services. These include costs associated with quality planning, training, preventive maintenance, and the implementation of systems and procedures that help avoid defects. The idea behind prevention costs is that investing in these activities will lead to fewer defects, reducing the costs associated with failures and inspections.

Internal Failure Costs



Internal failure costs arise when products fail to meet quality standards during the production process, but before the product reaches the customer. These costs include waste, scrap, rework or correction of defective products, and downtime caused by quality problems. Such failures not only lead to direct costs but also result in inefficiencies that can affect the entire supply chain.

External Failure Costs



External failure costs occur when products or services fail to meet quality standards after they have been delivered to the customer. These can be the most damaging costs and include warranties, replacements, complaints handling, returns, and the significant impact of customer dissatisfaction on a company's reputation.

In managing the cost of quality, supply chain managers should focus on striking the right balance between these categories. While it is important to invest in prevention and appraisal to avoid failure costs, these investments should be measured and controlled to ensure they do not become excessive and counterproductive. An optimal quality cost system minimizes the total cost of quality, leading to more efficient operations, improved customer satisfaction, and ultimately, a more successful supply chain.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

A Quality Management System (QMS) is a formalized system that documents processes, procedures, and responsibilities for achieving quality policies and objectives. A QMS helps coordinate and direct an organization's activities to meet customer and regulatory requirements and improve its effectiveness and efficiency continuously.

Purpose and Benefits of QMS

The primary purpose of a QMS is to consolidate quality-related processes in one system, ensuring consistency, visibility, and continual quality improvement. Some of the benefits of implementing a QMS include:

- **Increased Efficiency:** By following industry best practices and focusing on continuous improvement, a QMS helps reduce wastage.
- **Improved Customer Satisfaction:** With a focus on meeting customer requirements, a QMS aids in understanding client needs and ensures consistent, quality service.
- **Better Decision Making:** A robust QMS will provide valuable data and insights, aiding in informed decision-making.
- **Employee Engagement:** Defined roles and responsibilities, accountability of management, and effective training and development all contribute to higher employee morale and engagement.

Major Components of QMS

A QMS is built on a few key components:

- **Quality Objectives:** Clearly defined and measurable goals which align with the company's strategy and customer needs.
- **Process Approach:** All activities and resources are managed as processes, ensuring consistent outcomes.
- **System Approach:** Recognizing the interrelation of these processes as a system helps in achieving the organization's objectives.
- **Continuous Improvement:** The QMS is continuously evaluated and improved upon.

Examples of QMS

Here are some of the most popular and common QMSs used in businesses today:

- **ISO 9001:** This is a standard that sets out the criteria for a QMS. It is based on a number of quality management principles including a strong customer focus, involvement of top management, a process approach, and continual improvement.
- **Six Sigma:** This is a disciplined, statistical-based, data-driven approach and continuous improvement methodology for eliminating defects in a product, process, or service. It was developed by Motorola and includes five steps: define, measure, analyze, improve, and control.
- **Total Quality Management (TQM):** This is a management approach to long-term success through customer satisfaction. TQM requires the involvement of all members of an organization in improving processes, products, services, and the culture they work in.

While each of these systems has different approaches, they all share the common goal of managing and improving the quality of products or services provided. Effective implementation of a QMS can provide a significant competitive advantage in the supply chain industry.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Quality Assurance and Quality Control are two fundamental, yet distinct, components of a comprehensive quality management strategy to ensure the consistent delivery of high-quality products or services. They offer unique approaches to ensuring quality but work together to achieve the overall objective of delivering a high-quality product or service. Both play crucial roles in maintaining the desired level of quality in a supply chain, safeguarding the customer's interests, and promoting efficiency and effectiveness.

Quality Assurance (QA) is a proactive process that focuses on the process and prevents defects by ensuring the process is designed and controlled correctly. QA is about designing and implementing a system that ensures the product or service is produced under controlled conditions that lead to consistent quality. It is more process-oriented and geared towards preventing defects.

Quality Assurance in supply chain management is about developing and implementing a system that ensures all processes, from procurement of raw materials to production and delivery of the final product, meet the predefined quality standards. QA methods are used to improve the supply chain processes, minimize variability, reduce waste, and ensure that the final products meet the customer's expectations.

Quality Control (QC), on the other hand, is a reactive process that is product-oriented and involves checking final products for defects. It involves inspecting and testing the actual products or services to identify and correct any defects that have occurred. QC is more product-oriented and aims at identifying defects in the finished products before they reach the customer.

Quality Control is important in detecting and correcting problems that occur during the production process. QC activities, such as inspection and testing, help ensure that the final product or service meets the defined quality standards. By identifying and correcting defects before the product reaches the customer, QC contributes to customer satisfaction and maintains the organization's reputation.



In the context of supply chain management, both QA and QC are vital for maintaining and improving the quality of products or services.

Common Techniques Used in QA and QC

Several techniques are commonly employed in QA and QC, including:

- **Statistical Process Control (SPC):** This involves using statistical methods to monitor and control a process to ensure that it operates at its full potential.
- **Process Auditing and Reviewing:** Regular audits and reviews of the supply chain processes can help identify areas of improvement and ensure that the processes comply with the quality standards.
- **Inspections:** Regular inspections of raw materials, components, and final products can help detect defects early and prevent poor quality products from reaching the customer.
- **Testing:** This involves evaluating the performance of a product under certain conditions to ensure it meets the quality standards.

Understanding the role of QA and QC in supply chain management and effectively employing them in the quality management system helps ensure consistent quality, improve customer satisfaction, and enhance the efficiency of the supply chain processes.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

The adoption of Quality Management Principles is fundamental to the success of any organization and is particularly crucial within the field of Supply Chain Management. Each principle provides a framework for organizations to achieve ongoing success through a customer-focused approach. Here, we explore these principles within the context of Supply Chain Management:

- **Customer Focus:** The primary focus of any successful supply chain should be to meet customer requirements and strive to exceed customer expectations. By understanding current and future customer needs, an organization can align its processes to ensure timely delivery, the right quality, and optimal cost. A customer-centric supply chain fosters customer loyalty, expands the customer base, and builds an organization's reputation for quality.
- **Leadership:** Leadership sets the direction and establishes the organizational environment. In a supply chain context, leaders should ensure unity of purpose and create conditions where people are engaged in achieving the organization's quality objectives. Strong leadership can help the supply chain navigate through complexities, manage risk, and adapt to changing market conditions, driving the entire chain toward the common goal of quality.
- **Engagement of People:** People at all levels are the essence of an organization. In a supply chain, their full involvement enables their abilities to be used for the organization's benefit. Engaged and competent people can help improve processes, identify potential issues before they become problems, and innovate to meet changing customer needs. Employee engagement in the supply chain drives motivation, enhances collaboration, and ultimately, improves the quality of outcomes.
- **Process Approach:** A desired result is achieved more efficiently when activities and related resources are managed as a process. In supply chains, understanding activities as interconnected processes that transform inputs into outputs helps reduce inefficiencies and ensure consistent outcomes. It allows for easier identification and rectification of issues, ensuring the delivery of quality products or services.
- **Improvement:** Improvement is a perpetual organizational objective. In supply chains, the focus on continuous improvement can help reduce waste, optimize resources, and adapt to changing customer needs and market trends. Improvement initiatives can range from small, incremental changes to breakthroughs, but the constant is that they lead to better efficiency and effectiveness.
- **Evidence-based Decision-Making:** Decisions grounded in the analysis and evaluation of data are more likely to produce desired results. This principle is particularly relevant in supply chains, where vast amounts of data are generated. Analyzing this data can provide insights into trends, reveal potential issues, and uncover opportunities for improvement, thereby facilitating informed decision-making and

driving operational excellence.

- **Supplier + Customer Relationship Management:** An organization and its external providers are interdependent, and a mutually beneficial relationship enhances the ability to create value. In supply chains, building strong relationships with both suppliers and customers can lead to improved information flow, collaboration, and trust. Effective management of these relationships can ensure a more responsive and adaptable supply chain, contributing to overall quality.

Understanding and applying these Quality Management Principles in a supply chain context can provide organizations with a blueprint for continual improvement and customer satisfaction, enhancing their competitiveness and sustainability.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Here are some of the most common tools and techniques used to manage and monitor Quality in the Supply Chain.

Statistical Process Analysis

Statistical Process Analysis is a powerful tool used in the field of Supply Chain Management to measure, control, and improve the quality of processes. It allows organizations to make informed decisions and predictions based on data, improving overall efficiency and customer satisfaction. The following are some of the crucial statistical concepts in process analysis:

- **The Normal Distribution and Central Limit Theorem:** In Supply Chain Management, many processes naturally follow a Normal Distribution – a bell-shaped curve that represents a large number of random variables added together. This distribution is characterized by its mean (the peak) and standard deviation (the width of the curve). The Central Limit Theorem is particularly important as it states that when an adequately large sample size is taken, the sampling distribution of the mean will approach normality, regardless of the shape of the population distribution. This property allows us to make predictions and inferences about the process under observation.
- **Mean, Standard Deviation, Variance:** Mean is the average value in a dataset, providing a glance at where values tend to cluster. Standard deviation is a measure of the spread of data points from the mean, and variance is the square of the standard deviation. In the context of a supply chain, these measures can help identify variability in processes, for instance, in delivery times, product quality, or production costs. High variability might signal a need for process improvement or better supplier management.
- **Confidence Intervals:** Confidence intervals provide a range in which the true population parameter is likely to lie with a certain degree of confidence. In Supply Chain Management, these are used to estimate parameters such as average delivery time, defect rate, or customer satisfaction level. This statistical method is essential when trying to make decisions under uncertainty.
- **Applying Statistics to Make Predictions:** Supply Chain Management often involves forecasting demand, predicting lead times, or anticipating defects. By leveraging statistical tools, organizations can predict future outcomes based on historical data. Techniques such as regression analysis, time series analysis, and predictive modeling play an essential role in these forecasting activities.
- **The Importance and Selection of Sample Size for Statistical Significance:** The sample size plays a critical role in statistical analysis. A larger sample size reduces the effect of random variation, providing a better estimate of the true population parameter and increasing the likelihood of achieving statistical

significance in hypothesis testing. However, practical considerations, such as cost and time, also influence the decision on the sample size. In supply chain activities, like quality control or customer satisfaction surveys, determining an adequate sample size is crucial to make reliable decisions based on the data.

Statistical Process Analysis helps organizations maintain control over their processes, identify opportunities for improvement, and make informed, data-driven decisions in Supply Chain Management. By leveraging these statistical tools, supply chain managers can improve quality, reduce costs, and enhance customer satisfaction.

Process Capability ($C_p + C_{pk}$)

Process capability is a vital statistical measure used in Quality Management within the Supply Chain to assess the ability of a process to meet the specifications or customer requirements. It provides an objective measure of the inherent process variability and the potential for defects, making it an essential tool for continuous improvement.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://uark.pressbooks.pub/introscm/?p=237#oembed-1>

Process Capability is a statistical measure that quantifies how well a process can deliver the output within the required specification limits set by the customer. It considers the variability of the process and the centeredness between the process mean and the desired target. This measurement is significant as it allows organizations to predict the future performance of their process, identify the causes of variability, and determine areas for process improvement.

Process Capability (C_p) and How to Determine It

C_p is a measure of the process capability, assuming the process is centered within the specification limits. It's calculated by taking the difference between the Upper Specification Limit (USL) and Lower Specification Limit (LSL), divided by 6 times the standard deviation of the process.

$$\text{Formula: } C_p = \frac{USL - LSL}{6\sigma}$$

For example, if a supply chain process has a USL of 10, an LSL of 4, and a standard deviation of 1, the C_p would be $(10-4) / (6*1) = 1$. This means the spread of the process fits exactly within the specification limits.

Adjusted Process Capability (C_{pk}) and How to Determine It

C_{pk} is an adjusted process capability index that takes into account the shift of the process mean from the

center of the specification limits. It's calculated by determining the minimum value of the quantity $(USL - \mu) / (3\sigma)$ and the quantity $(\mu - LSL) / (3\sigma)$, where μ is the process mean.

$$\text{Formula: } C_p = \min\left[\frac{USL - \mu}{3\sigma}, \frac{\mu - LSL}{3\sigma}\right]$$

For example, if the process mean is 7, then the Cpk is $\min\left[\frac{(10 - 7)}{(3 * 1)}, \frac{(7 - 4)}{(3 * 1)}\right] = \min[1, 1] = 1$. This indicates that the process mean is exactly at the center of the specification limits.

Strategies and Tactics for Resolving Process Capability Issues

When a process is not capable (Cp or Cpk less than 1), actions are required to improve the capability. Here are the most common approaches to resolving this issue:

- **Process Centering:** If the process mean is not centered within the specification limits (Cp is high, but Cpk is low), efforts should be made to shift the process towards the center.
- **Process Improvement:** If the process variability is high (both Cp and Cpk are low), methods like Six Sigma, Lean Manufacturing, or Design of Experiments can be used to identify the root causes of variability and reduce them.
- **Adjusting Specification Limits:** In some cases, it might be possible to renegotiate the specification limits with the customers to make them more in line with the process capability.
- **Supplier Management:** In supply chain processes, supplier quality management can also help improve process capability by ensuring the quality of incoming materials.

By understanding and utilizing Cp and Cpk, supply chain managers can effectively control their processes, improve quality, reduce costs, and ensure customer satisfaction. Finally, it should be noted that while a Cp or Cpk of greater than 1 indicates that the process is capable, most companies strive for a value of at least 1.33 [4 sigmas] or higher to ensure that the process will consistently deliver the desired results. For critical requirements such as safety items, a value of greater than 1.5 is recommended.

Statistical Process Control

Statistical Process Control (SPC) is a method of quality control that employs statistical methods to monitor and control a process, ensuring that the process operates at its full potential. SPC is widely used within Supply Chain Management to improve process capability, reduce variability, and enhance customer satisfaction.

The purpose of SPC is to provide a statistical signal when assignable causes of variation are present. These are variations that are not inherent to the process and can be identified and eliminated. By identifying these signals, an organization can focus its efforts on process improvement, thereby reducing waste and improving product or service quality. SPC can be applied in any context where processes are repeatable and can be

measured, which includes virtually every aspect of Supply Chain Management, from manufacturing and logistics to procurement and customer service.

Examples of SPC in Business

In manufacturing, SPC can be used to monitor and control production processes. For instance, a company might use control charts to track the thickness of metal sheets, the weight of filled containers, or the delivery time of products. By identifying out-of-control conditions early, the company can take corrective action before defective products are produced, saving costs and protecting its reputation.



In service industries, SPC can also play a vital role. For example, a logistics company might use control charts to monitor package delivery times, aiming to identify and eliminate causes of delays. Similarly, a procurement department could use SPC to monitor supplier performance, ensuring that products and services meet specified quality criteria.

The Generic SPC Chart and Out-of-Control Patterns

A typical SPC chart, known as a control chart, includes a center line that represents the process mean, and

upper and lower control limits that represent the expected range of process variation. Data points are plotted over time, allowing for visual inspection of the process behavior.

Several patterns might suggest out-of-control conditions:

- **Point outside control limits:** A single point outside the control limits is a strong signal of an out-of-control condition.
- **Run of points on one side of the center line:** Several consecutive points on one side of the center line suggest a systematic bias in the process.
- **Trend:** Several consecutive points steadily increasing or decreasing indicate a trend.
- **Cycles:** Repeating patterns of points suggest cyclical effects, perhaps linked to operational conditions or external factors.
- **Instability:** High variation, erratic behavior, or sudden shifts in process level can indicate instability.

By using SPC charts and recognizing these patterns, supply chain managers can monitor their processes in real time, identify process issues before they escalate, and continuously improve process performance, leading to enhanced quality and customer satisfaction.

SPC for Variable Data: X-bar and R Charts

For variable data, two kinds of charts are typically used: X-bar and R-charts. An X-bar chart monitors the process mean over time, while an R chart (Range chart) monitors variability. The X-bar chart helps detect shifts in the process mean, while the R chart identifies changes in process dispersion. Both charts are usually used together as a change in the dispersion can affect the process mean and vice versa.

Steps and Formulas to Create an X-Bar Chart

An X-bar chart is created using the following steps:

- Collect several samples of data from your process.
The sample size (n) should be consistent for each sample.
- For each sample, calculate the average (X-bar). The formula is:

$$\bar{X} = \frac{(\sum X)}{n}$$

Where $\sum X$ is the sum of individual measurements within a sample.

- Plot these averages on the X-bar chart.
- Calculate the overall process average (the grand mean or X-double-bar) and draw a centerline at this value.
- Calculate the upper control limit (UCL) and lower control limit (LCL). These are typically set at 3 standard deviations above and below the centerline.

For an X-Bar chart, the formulae are:

$$UCL = \bar{\bar{X}} + A_2 \bar{R}$$

$$LCL = \bar{\bar{X}} - A_2 \bar{R}$$

Where A_2 is a factor depending on sample size, $\bar{\bar{X}}$ is the grand mean, and $\bar{R}$ is the average range.

Note: If the LCL_x is negative, it is set to zero, since you can't have a negative sample average.

Steps and Formulas to Create an R Chart

An R chart is created using the following steps:

- Calculate the range (R) of each sample. The range is the difference between the maximum and minimum values in the sample.
- Plot these ranges on the R chart.
- Calculate the average range (R-bar) and draw a centerline at this value.
- Calculate the upper control limit (UCL) and lower control limit (LCL). These are typically set at 3 standard deviations above and below the centerline.

For an R chart, the formulae are:

$$UCL_r = D_4 \bar{R}$$

$$LCL_r = D_3 \bar{R}$$

Where D_4 and D_3 are factors depending on the sample size.

Note: If the LCL_r is negative, it is set to zero, since you can't have a negative range.

X-bar and R Charts Example

Let's consider a specific scenario in which we're inspecting the weight of packaged products in a warehouse. We'll gather eight samples, each containing five observations, over an eight-hour shift:

Sample	Observation 1	Observation 2	Observation 3	Observation 4	Observation 5
Sample 1	20	22	21	23	22
Sample 2	21	23	22	24	22
Sample 3	23	22	24	23	24
Sample 4	24	23	22	25	24
Sample 5	25	24	26	25	24
Sample 6	26	24	25	27	25
Sample 7	25	27	26	24	26
Sample 8	24	26	25	27	26

Calculating X-bar and R Values for Each Sample

X-bar is the average of each sample, and R (Range) is the difference between the highest and lowest observations in the sample. Therefore, here are the calculated values:

Sample	X-bar	R
Sample 1	21.6	3
Sample 2	22.4	3
Sample 3	23.2	2
Sample 4	23.6	3
Sample 5	24.8	2
Sample 6	25.4	3
Sample 7	25.6	3
Sample 8	25.6	3

Calculating X-double-bar and R-bar Centerlines

X-double-bar is the average of all X-bars, and R-bar is the average of all R values. Therefore, here are the calculated values:

$$\bar{\bar{X}} = \frac{(21.6 + 22.4 + 23.2 + 23.6 + 24.8 + 25.4 + 25.6 + 25.6)}{8} = 24.1$$

$$\bar{R} = \frac{(3 + 3 + 2 + 3 + 2 + 3 + 3 + 3)}{8} = 2.75$$

Calculating UCL_x, LCL_x, UCL_r, and LCL_r Control Limits

The formulas for these are as follows:

$$UCL = \bar{\bar{X}} + A_2 \bar{R}, LCL = \bar{\bar{X}} - A_2 \bar{R}$$

$$UCL_r = D_4 \bar{R}, LCL_r = D_3 \bar{R}$$

Where A_2 , D_4 , and D_3 are constants that depend on the sample size. For a sample size of 5, $A_2 = 0.577$, $D_4 = 2.114$, and $D_3 = 0$.

Here are the calculations for our example:

$$UCL_x = 24.1 + 0.577 * 2.75 = 25.69; LCL_x = 24.1 - 0.577 * 2.75 = 22.51$$

$$UCL_r = 2.114 * 2.75 = 5.81; LCL_r = 0 * 2.75 = 0$$

Drawing the X-Bar and R-Charts

Interpreting the X-Bar and R-Charts

The X-bar chart shows the average weight for each sample. The points should be plotted around the center line ($\bar{\bar{X}}$) at 24.1, with upper and lower control limits at 25.69 and 22.51 respectively. If all points lie within these limits and no patterns are seen, it's evidence the process is in control regarding its central tendency.

The R chart shows the range of weights for each sample. The points should be plotted around the center line ($\bar{R}$) at 2.75, with upper and lower control limits at 5.81 and 0 respectively. If all points lie within these limits and no patterns are seen, it's evidence the process is in control regarding its dispersion.

Together, these charts provide a clear picture of process stability, both in terms of its average and variability. As a supply chain manager, this information is critical for identifying potential issues and implementing quality control measures.

Statistical Process Control (SPC) for Attribute Data: P Charts and C Charts

Unlike variable data, which are numerical and can be measured, attribute data are categorical and can be counted. In supply chain management, examples of attribute data could include the number of defective items in a shipment, the number of delayed deliveries in a month, or the number of customer complaints about a product.

SPC charts used for attribute data include P charts and C charts.

A P chart is used when we want to monitor the proportion of nonconforming units in different samples, where the sample size may vary. For example, we could use a P chart to track the proportion of defective items in daily shipments, where the number of items in each shipment varies.

A C chart, on the other hand, is used when we want to monitor the number of nonconformities in a constant-size sample. For example, we could use a C chart to track the number of defects found in every batch of 100 items inspected.

Creating a P Chart

To create a P chart, the following steps are undertaken:

- Calculate the proportion nonconforming (p) for each sample:

$$p = \frac{\text{number of nonconforming units}}{\text{sample size}}.$$

- Calculate the average proportion nonconforming (P-bar): $\bar{P} = \frac{\text{sum of all } p}{\text{number of samples}}$
- The control limits for a P chart are calculated as follows:
- Upper Control Limit (UCLp) = $\bar{P} + 3 * \sqrt{\frac{\bar{P}(1 - \bar{P})}{n}}$
- Lower Control Limit (LCLp) = $\bar{P} - 3 * \sqrt{\frac{\bar{P}(1 - \bar{P})}{n}}$
- n is the sample size
 - In the case that the sample size varies, n in the formula would be the average sample size.

Note: If the LCL_p is negative, it is set to zero, since you can't have a negative number of non-conformities.

Example: Creating and Interpreting a P chart

Consider a manufacturer that performs daily inspections for defective items, where due to variations in production, the sample size changes every day. The quality control team decides to use a P chart to monitor the proportion of defective items each day.

Here is a week of sample data:

- Day 1: 100 items inspected, 5 defective items found
- Day 2: 150 items inspected, 10 defective items found
- Day 3: 200 items inspected, 15 defective items found
- Day 4: 100 items inspected, 7 defective items found
- Day 5: 150 items inspected, 9 defective items found
- Day 6: 200 items inspected, 11 defective items found
- Day 7: 150 items inspected, 8 defective items found

Calculate the proportion nonconforming (p) for each sample

The proportion nonconforming is calculated as the number of defective items divided by the number of items inspected each day:

- Day 1: $p_1 = 5/100 = 0.05$
- Day 2: $p_2 = 10/150 = 0.067$
- Day 3: $p_3 = 15/200 = 0.075$
- Day 4: $p_4 = 7/100 = 0.07$
- Day 5: $p_5 = 9/150 = 0.06$
- Day 6: $p_6 = 11/200 = 0.055$
- Day 7: $p_7 = 8/150 = 0.053$

Calculate the average proportion of nonconforming (P-bar)

Step1: Calculate P-bar as the sum of all proportions divided by the number of samples:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{P} &= \frac{p_1 + p_2 + p_3 + p_4 + p_5 + p_6 + p_7}{7} \\ &= \frac{0.05 + 0.067 + 0.075 + 0.07 + 0.06 + 0.055 + 0.053}{7}\end{aligned}$$

Step 2: Calculate the average sample size (n-bar)

Since in this example we are with a P-chart where the sample size varies, the 'n' in the control limit formulas is replaced with the average sample size (n-bar).

To calculate the n-bar, we sum all sample sizes and divide by the number of samples as follows:

$$\bar{n} = \frac{100 + 150 + 200 + 100 + 150 + 200 + 150}{7} = 135.7$$

Determine the control limits

Next, we calculate the control limits. The formula for the control limits is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{– Upper Control Limit (UCL}_p) &= \bar{P} + 3 * \sqrt{\frac{\bar{P}(1 - \bar{P})}{n}} \\ &= 0.06 + 3 * \sqrt{\frac{(0.06)(1 - 0.06)}{135.7}} = 0.093 \\ \text{– Lower Control Limit (LCL}_p) &= \bar{P} - 3 * \sqrt{\frac{\bar{P}(1 - \bar{P})}{n}} \\ &= 0.06 - 3 * \sqrt{\frac{(0.06)(1 - 0.06)}{135.7}} = 0.027\end{aligned}$$

Creating and Interpreting the P Chart

To create the P chart, we plot the proportion nonconforming each day on the Y-axis, with the centerline at P-bar and the control limits at UCL_p and LCL_p. As with the C chart, we then examine the chart for any points outside the control limits or non-random patterns.

In this example, if all points fall within the control limits, it suggests the process is in control. However, a point outside the limits or a non-random pattern could indicate a special cause of variation. If such a point or pattern is found, it would require further investigation to identify and eliminate the special cause.

Creating a C Chart

For a C chart, the following steps are undertaken:

- Calculate the number of nonconformities (c) for each sample.
- Calculate the average number of nonconformities (C-bar): C-bar = sum of all c / number of samples.
- Determine the control limits as follows:
- Upper Control Limit (UCL_c) = $\bar{C} + 3 * \sqrt{\bar{C}}$

- Lower Control Limit (LCL_c) = $\bar{C} - 3 * \sqrt{\bar{C}}$

Note: If the LCL_c is negative, it is set to zero, since you can't have a negative number of non-conformities.

Example: Calculating, Creating, and Interpreting a C Chart

In the context of supply chain management, let's consider a distribution center that processes 1000 packages each day. The quality control team conducts daily inspections to detect damaged packages. They want to create a C chart to monitor the number of damaged packages each day.

Here's a week of sample data:

- Day 1: 15 damaged packages
- Day 2: 20 damaged packages
- Day 3: 16 damaged packages
- Day 4: 18 damaged packages
- Day 5: 17 damaged packages
- Day 6: 19 damaged packages
- Day 7: 21 damaged packages

Calculate the number of nonconformities (c) for each sample

In this case, the numbers of nonconformities are given above for each day.

Calculate the average number of nonconformities (C-bar)

To calculate C-bar, we add the number of damaged packages each day and divide by the number of days:

$$\bar{C} = \frac{(15 + 20 + 16 + 18 + 17 + 19 + 21)}{7} = 18$$

Determine the control limits

Next, we calculate the control limits:

- Upper Control Limit (UCL_c) = $\bar{C} + 3 * \sqrt{\bar{C}} = 18 + 3 * \sqrt{18} = 29.7$

- Lower Control Limit (LCL_c) = $\bar{C} - 3 * \sqrt{\bar{C}} = 18 - 3 * \sqrt{18} = 6.3$

Since the LCL_c is not negative, we leave it as is. If it were negative, we would set it to zero.

Creating and Interpreting the C Chart

To create the C chart, we plot the number of nonconformities each day on the Y-axis, with the centerline at C-bar and the control limits at UCL_c and LCL_c .

We then examine the chart for any points outside the control limits, which would suggest a special cause of variation to be investigated. If all points are within the control limits, the process is considered statistically stable. However, we would also watch for non-random patterns, such as trends or cycles, that could suggest potential problems.

In this example, all the points would fall within the control limits, indicating that the process is in control. The variation in the number of damaged packages each day appears to be due to common causes rather than

any special causes. The management can continue to monitor the chart daily to ensure the process remains in control.

The DMAIC Approach to Process Analysis and Improvement

DMAIC is a data-driven improvement cycle used for improving, optimizing, and stabilizing business processes and designs. The acronym stands for the five steps of DMAIC which are Define, Measure, Analyze, Improve, and Control.

Here is a breakdown of each of these steps, as well as the tools used in these steps:

1. **Define:** Set the context and objectives for your improvement project.
2. **Measure:** Quantify the problem.
3. **Analyze:** Identify the cause of the problem.
4. **Improve:** Implement and verify the solution.
5. **Control:** Maintain the solution.

This entire process forms a cohesive strategy for tackling quality issues in supply chain management.

Let's explore each of the DMAIC steps in detail with an example throughout to illustrate these concepts. We'll use the example of a supply chain manager trying to reduce late deliveries in a logistics company.

1. Define

In this initial stage, you're setting the scope, objectives, and deliverables for your project. You are defining what you hope to accomplish by outlining specific, measurable goals that align with both the project's critical-to-quality elements and business objectives.

Tools and Methods

- Project Charter: Sets the scope, objectives, and stakeholders.
- SIPOC (Suppliers, Inputs, Process, Outputs, Customers) Diagram: Provides a high-level view of the process and its context.

In our example, the supply chain manager wants to reduce late deliveries by 20% over the next quarter to improve customer satisfaction and reduce costs associated with delays.

2. Measure

This step involves gathering data to establish baseline performance levels. This data will be used later to show how much the implemented improvements have affected performance.

Tools and Methods

- Flowcharts: To document the current process.
- Data Collection Sheets: To gather and organize data.

In the example, the manager collects data on delivery times for the past three months, using it to calculate the current rate of late deliveries as a baseline.

3. Analyze

The collected data is analyzed to identify the root causes of the problem. The aim is to understand why the problem occurs and to point toward possible solutions.

Tools and Methods

- Root Cause Analysis: Using methods like the 5 Whys or Fishbone Diagrams.
- Pareto Charts: To identify the most frequent causes of delays.

In the example, analysis shows that 70% of late deliveries are due to delays in the packing process, specifically due to a lack of packing materials.

4. Improve

This phase involves generating, selecting, and implementing a solution. The improvements are then tested to verify their effectiveness in solving the identified problem.

Tools and Methods

- Pilot Programs: To test the effectiveness of the solution.
- A/B Testing: To compare the new process against the old one.

In the example, the manager decides to maintain a larger stock of packing materials and trains the packing staff on more efficient methods. A pilot program shows a 15% reduction in late deliveries.

5. Control

This final step aims to make the new process standard and maintain the gains achieved by the improvement. Processes are set up to ensure ongoing control and to alert the team to deviations in performance.

Tools and Methods

- Statistical Process Control (SPC) Charts: For ongoing monitoring.
- Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs): To document the new process.

In our example, the new packing methods are standardized, and training materials are updated. SPC is used to monitor ongoing performance, which confirms that the rate of late deliveries remains low.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Supplier Quality Management (SQM) refers to a holistic approach where supplier performance and quality measures are monitored and managed to improve the supply chain's overall effectiveness. It emphasizes not just cost, but quality and delivery performance, sustainability, and ethical sourcing.

Effective SQM is crucial as suppliers' performance directly impacts the quality of the final product or service, affecting customer satisfaction. A strong SQM process can minimize defects, reduce costs associated with rework and returns, shorten lead times, and improve overall supply chain responsiveness.

Strategies and Techniques for Supplier Quality Management:

Several strategies and techniques are used in SQM, including:



- Supplier Selection: Choosing suppliers based on their ability to meet quality, cost, delivery, and service requirements.
- Supplier Evaluation and Scorecards: Regularly assessing supplier performance using scorecards on key parameters such as on-time delivery, defect rates, and responsiveness.
- Supplier Development: Working with suppliers to improve their processes, such as through training, process improvements, and technology upgrades.

Supplier Qualification and Certification Process

Supplier qualification and certification is a process where potential suppliers are evaluated against defined standards to ensure they can meet the required quality, cost, delivery, and service requirements. The process

often involves assessments, audits, and evaluations of suppliers' capabilities, capacities, and performance history.

The certification process is crucial as it helps ensure that the supplier is capable of consistently meeting the quality standards. Techniques used include Request for Information (RFI) to gather initial data, onsite audits to verify capabilities, and performance evaluations for final selection.

Supplier Quality Audit Process:

A **Supplier Quality Audit** is a systematic, independent, and documented process for obtaining evidence to determine the extent to which the supplier's quality management systems meet the required standards. These audits are vital for identifying any gaps or opportunities for improvement in the supplier's quality systems.

Audit techniques include document reviews, personnel interviews, observation of activities, and sampling of products or processes. The results are often scored, and non-conformances are addressed through corrective action plans.

Supplier Incoming Inspection Process:

The **Supplier Incoming Inspection** process involves checking the quality of goods delivered by the supplier before they enter the production process. This is important as it ensures that only conforming materials are used in production, reducing the risk of defects, rework, and delays.

Inspection techniques can vary from a full inspection of all units to sampling inspection based on statistical principles. These inspections often include checks for correct quantity, physical damage, conformance to specifications, and necessary documentation.

Effective Supplier Quality Management, involving qualification, audits, and incoming inspections, is a vital component of overall quality management in the supply chain, directly affecting the end product's quality and customer satisfaction.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

Conceptual Questions:

1. Section I: Introduction to Quality

- **Question:** Why is understanding and delivering on customer-defined quality crucial in supply chain management?

2. Section II: Dimensions of Quality

- **Question:** What are the eight dimensions of product quality, and how do they guide supply chain management decisions?

3. Section III: Cost of Quality

- **Question:** What are the four categories of the Cost of Quality (CoQ), and how do they impact supply chain efficiency?

4. Section IV: Quality Management Systems (QMS)

- **Question:** What is the primary purpose of a Quality Management System (QMS), and how does it benefit supply chain operations?

5. Section V: Quality Assurance and Quality Control in SCM

- **Question:** How do Quality Assurance (QA) and Quality Control (QC) differ in their approach to maintaining product quality in supply chain management?

6. Section VI: Quality Management Principles

- **Question:** How does the principle of “Customer Focus” influence supply chain management decisions?

7. Section VII: Quality Tools and Techniques in Supply Chain

- **Question:** What role does Statistical Process Control (SPC) play in maintaining process stability and quality in supply chain management?

8. Section VII: Quality Tools and Techniques in Supply Chain

- **Question:** What are Process Capability (C_p and C_{pk}) metrics, and why are they important in supply chain quality management?

9. Section VII: Quality Tools and Techniques in Supply Chain

- **Question:** What is the DMAIC approach, and how is it used in supply chain process improvement?

10. Section VII: Supplier Quality Management

- **Question:** Why is Supplier Quality Management (SQM) critical to overall supply chain effectiveness?

Situational Questions:

1. Situation 1:

- **Question:** You are a supply chain manager at a company facing high costs due to frequent product defects discovered after products have been shipped to customers. Based on the concepts from this chapter, how would you redesign your quality management strategy to reduce these costs and improve product quality?

2. Situation 2:

- **Question:** Your organization is experiencing variability in the quality of raw materials supplied by different vendors, leading to inconsistent product quality. Using the principles and tools discussed in this chapter, what steps would you take to manage supplier quality more effectively and ensure consistent quality in your supply chain?

This is where you can add appendices or other back matter.

Piyush Shah and Elias (Lee) Kirche

This is where you can add appendices or other back matter.